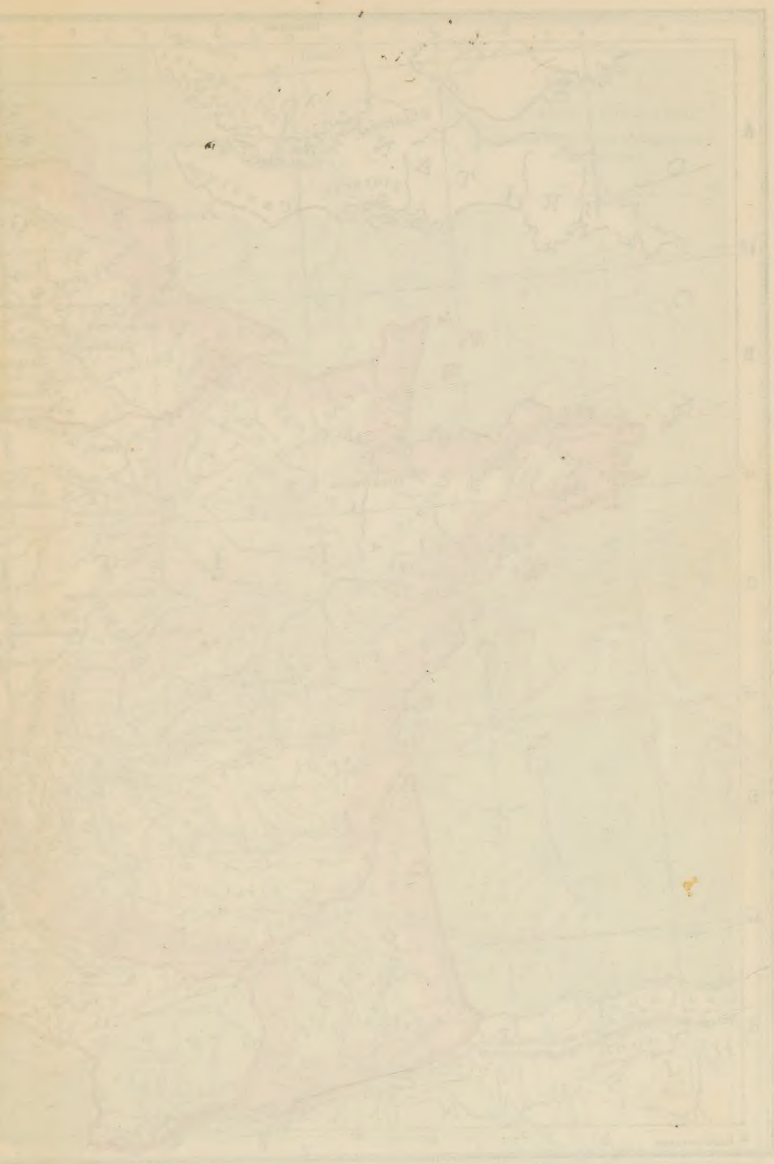




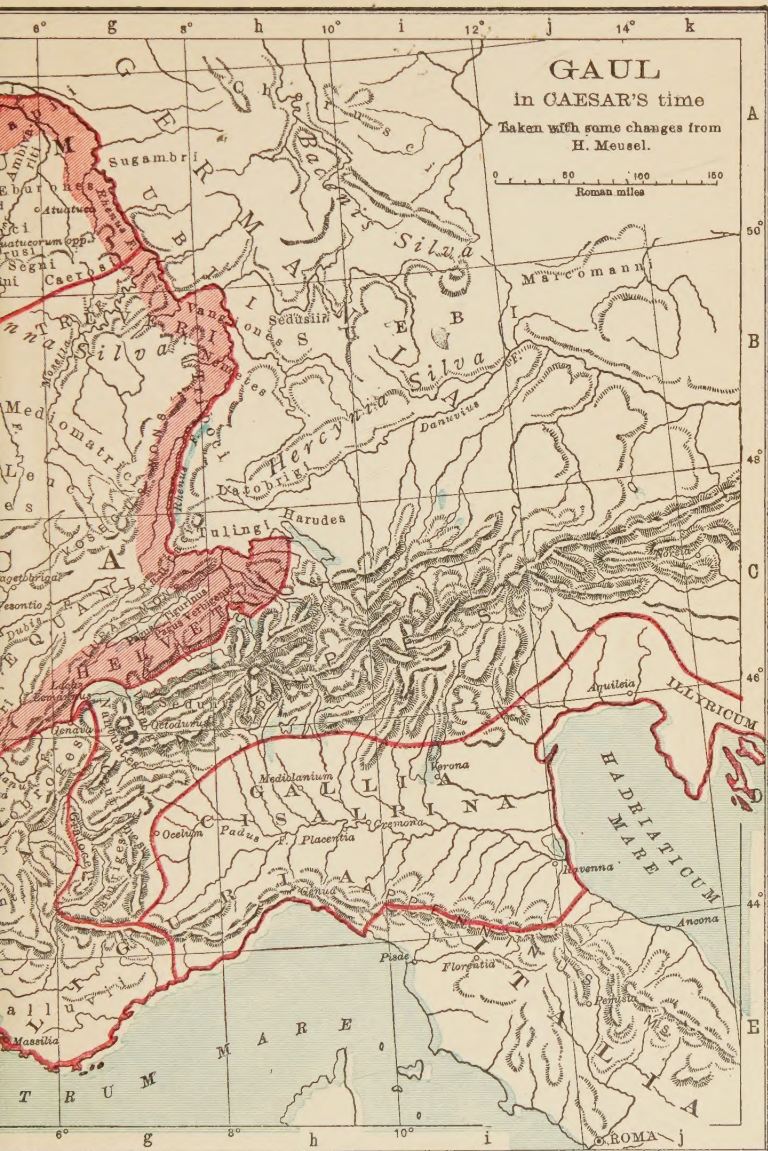
ST. MARY'S UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS

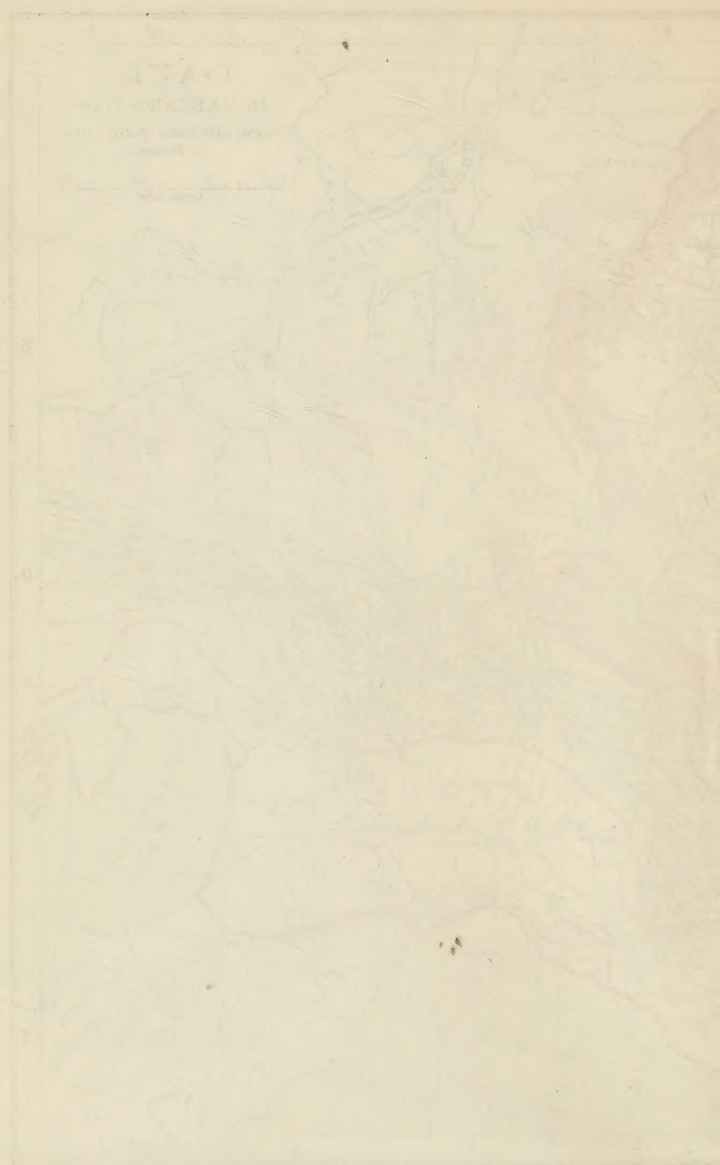





in CAESAR'S time

A horizontal scale bar with tick marks every 10 units. Major labels are at 0, 50, 100, and 150. The text "Roman miles" is centered below the bar.









Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY
AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

A REVISION OF THE EDITION BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph.D., AND J. T. EWING, M.A.

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO—NEW YORK

2079

COPYRIGHT, 1907
BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

78.1
G168

PREFACE

In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

"The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books."

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar's language or story.

THE STUDY OF CAESAR'S NARRATIVE. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that

a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

SYSTEM IN GRAMMAR REFERENCES. An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two

sets of references being given close together, that they may reinforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point may be clinched by review. And these references are made not only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class begins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I, these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions. Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are postponed to Book I, 30-54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed references; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

EXCLUSION OF NON-ESSENTIALS. Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped, much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

Beginning with Book II. The most dreaded portions of Caesar are his indirect discourse, and unfortunately the majority of the speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-

counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction, since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his preparatory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make the pupil's path easier by reading the second book before the first, or by omitting chapters 30-54 of the first book, in which chapters the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition everything possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans, without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1-29 should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic War. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kraner's. In the present edition Meusel's readings have been substituted for the most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A few doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of preparing the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray, a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the University of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the

preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER.



TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | PAGE |
|---|------|
| Preface | 1 |
| List of Maps and Illustrations | 8 |
| Introduction | 9 |
| I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns | 9 |
| II. Life of Caesar | 11 |
| III. Chronological Table | 17 |
| IV. Caesar as General | 18 |
| V. Caesar as Author | 19 |
| VI. The Gauls | 20 |
| VII. Caesar's Army | 23 |
| A Brief Bibliography | 38 |
| List of Abbreviations | 40 |
| Book I, 1-29 | 41 |
| Book I, 30-54 | 115 |
| Book II | 160 |
| Book III | 215 |
| Book IV | 252 |

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

| | PAGE |
|--|---------------------|
| General Map of Gaul | <i>Front Cover</i> |
| Caesar (Bust in British Museum) | <i>Frontispiece</i> |
| Pila | 24 |
| Gladius and Vagina | 24 |
| Roman Soldiers | <i>Facing</i> 27 |
| Plan of a Roman Camp | 29 |
| Camp on the Axona | 29 |
| Vallum and Fossa | 30 |
| Roman Officers and Gauls | <i>Facing</i> 31 |
| Gallic Wall | 33 |
| Storming a City | <i>Facing</i> 34 |
| Agger | 34 |
| Plutei | 34 |
| Musculus | 34 |
| Vinea | 35 |
| Catapulta | 35 |
| Prow of Galley | 36 |
| Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29 | <i>Facing</i> 42 |
| Fortifications on the Rhone | 70 |
| Battle with the Helvetii, first stage | 104 |
| Battle with the Helvetii, second stage | 108 |
| Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54 | <i>Facing</i> 117 |
| Battle with Ariovistus | 153 |
| Campaign Map for Book II | <i>Facing</i> 162 |
| Battle on the Axona | 177 |
| Battle on the Sabis | 191 |
| The Town of the Atuatuca | 207 |
| Campaign Map for Book III | <i>Facing</i> 217 |
| Galba's Camp | 219 |
| Operations against the Veneti | 232 |
| Campaign Map for Book IV | <i>Facing</i> 254 |
| Caesar's Bridge | 272 |
| Pile-driver | 273 |

INTRODUCTION

I. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE GALLIC CAMPAIGNS

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar's own story **1** of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

Effect on Rome. Rome was the governing nation of ancient **2** times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," *Prōvincia* (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.

Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3 Effect on Gaul. But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4 Effect on Caesar. In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.

II. LIFE OF CAESAR

Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was 5
born in the year¹ 102, B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Demo- 6
cratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to

¹ Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.

pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7 Weakness of Opposite Party. But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8 Revival of Caesar's Party. When Sulla died, in '78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in '70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.

9 Development of Caesar's Powers. During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test

of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

Caesar's First Military Command. But in spite of his ability 10 and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

Caesar's Consulship. Caesar now wanted the consulship, the 11 highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-

pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12 Caesar's Command in Gaul. In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. 2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. 10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.

13 Outbreak of Civil War. It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.

14 Weakness of the Constitutional Government. But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party

had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.

Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest 15 fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was 16 from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.

He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

- 17 Assassination of Caesar.** Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.

III. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

| B.C. | Caesar's Age. | | |
|------|---------------|--|----|
| 102 | | Birth of Caesar, July 12. Marius defeats the Teutoni. | 18 |
| 101 | 1 | Marius defeats the Cimbri. | |
| 87 | 15 | Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter. | |
| 86 | 16 | Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator. | |
| 83 | 19 | Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator. | |
| 82 | 20 | Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East. | |
| 80 | 22 | Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene. | |
| 78 | 24 | Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome. | |
| 76 | 26 | Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo. | |
| 74 | 28 | Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex. | |
| 70 | 32 | Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown. | |
| 68 | 34 | Caesar is Quaestor. | |
| 65 | 37 | Caesar is Curule Aedile. | |
| 63 | 39 | Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed. | |
| 62 | 40 | Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East. | |
| 61 | 41 | Caesar is Proprætor in Farther Spain. | |
| 60 | 42 | Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate" is formed. | |
| 59 | 43 | Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia. | |
| 58 | 44 | Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled. | |
| 57 | 45 | Caesar conquers the Belgæ. Recall of Cicero. | |
| 56 | 46 | Caesar's campaign in Brittany. | |
| 55 | 47 | Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time. | |
| 54 | 48 | Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia. | |
| 53 | 49 | The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain. | |
| 52 | 50 | General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey. | |
| 51 | 51 | Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul. | |
| 50 | 52 | The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate. | |
| 49 | 53 | Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator. | |
| 48 | 54 | Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War." | |
| 47 | 55 | Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government. | |
| 46 | 56 | The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus. | |
| 45 | 57 | The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda. | |
| 44 | 58 | Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th. | |

IV. CAESAR AS GENERAL

- 19** The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.
- 20** **Characteristics as General.** The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally element.
- 21** **Power over his Men.** Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw

to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. "He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no **22** less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. 23 Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose

he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

- 24 Caesar's Other Writings.** In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. THE GAULS

- 25 First Appearance of the Gauls in History.** Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.
- 26 First Decline of Gallic Power.** But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was

hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls **Prōvincia** (see 2).

Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion 27 of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar's 28 time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact 29 nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul

was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30 Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31 Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls

were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

VII. CAESAR'S ARMY

THE LEGIONS

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When **32** the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of **33** 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| century [centum , hundred] | = 100 men |
| 2 centuries = 1 maniples | = 200 men |
| 3 maniples = 1 cohort | = 600 men |
| 10 cohorts = 1 legion | = 6000 men |

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(Plate I)

34 Clothing. *a.* A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.

b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.

c. Shoes or sandals.

d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

35 Armor. *a.* A helmet of leather (*galea*) or metal (*cassis*).

b. A leather coat (*lōrica*), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.

c. A curved wooden shield (*scūtum*), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.

d. Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a foot-ball shin-guard, but made of metal.

Arms. *a.* A heavy wooden javelin (*pīlum*, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (*gladius*, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (*vāgina*) hung from a belt (*balteus*) which passed over the left

36



FIG. 1
PILA

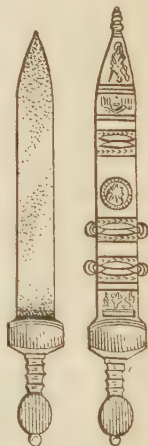


FIG. 2
GLADIUS AND
VAGINA

shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

Individual Baggage. Besides his personal belongings each soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (*sarcina*) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be *impediti*. If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then *expediti*. 37

OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS

Lēgātus. All governors of provinces were given several *lēgāti*, deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion. 38

Quaestor. The quaestors were financial officers, elected yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion. 39

Praefectus Fabrum. The chief of engineers had charge of such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of 40

ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41 Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42 Centuriō. The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the *primipilus*. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (*centuriōnēs primōrum ordinum*, or *primī ordinēs*), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

43 Aquila. Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (*aquila*), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a



1. funditor

2. levis armaturae milites

3. legionarii

4. vexillum

5. signiferi

6. aquilifer

7. tubicen

8. bucinator

ROMAN SOLDIERS

man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the **aquilifer** (Plate I, 6).

Signum. Each cohort had its own standard (**signum**), 44 carried by a **signifer** (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are **signa inferre**, **signa referre**, etc.

Musical Instruments. There were no bands, and the only 45 use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the **tuba**, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a **tubicen**, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION

The heavy baggage (**impedimenta**) consisted of tents, pro- 46 visions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (**iūmenta**). These were driven or led by the drivers (**mūliōnēs**) and camp servants (**calōnēs**), who were probably slaves.

AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

Infantry. The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), 47 which Caesar usually calls **auxilia**, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (**funditōrēs**) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (**sagittārii**) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them

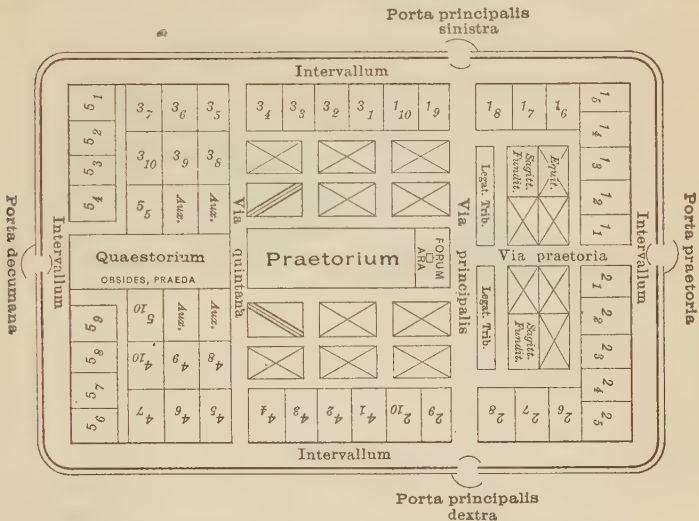
useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy's attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (*praefecti*). Their standard was a banner (*vexillum*, Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

- 48 Cavalry.** Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy's cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were *praefecti*, and their standards were *vexilla* (cf. 47).

THE CAMP

- 49** A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (*castra*) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.³⁴⁵
- 50 Location and Form of Camp.** Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar's camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple had always the same location. [Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.

Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 5). The size of the trench 51 (fossa) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven



1² First Legion
Second Cohort

This camp is for five legions with
cavalry and auxiliary troops

FIG. 3. PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP (Rüstow)

deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets, was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (vallum). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer

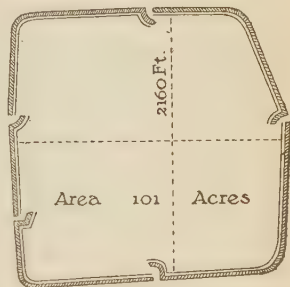


FIG. 4. CAMP ON THE AXONA

edge of the top stood a row of palisades (*valli*), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the

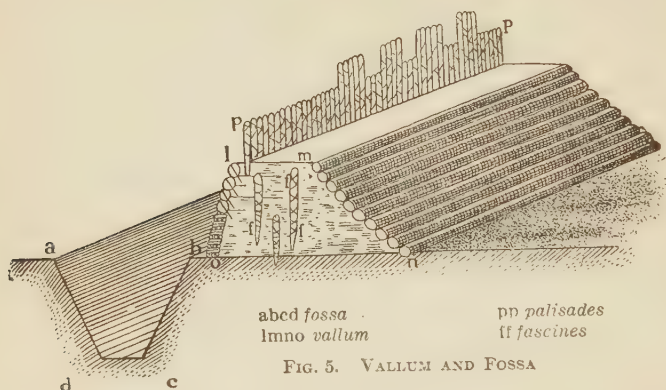


FIG. 5. VALLUM AND FOSSA

enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (*turrēs*) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52 Gates of Camp. Usually there was one gate (*porta*) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.



1. *imperator* 2. *legatus* 3. *centurio* 4. *lictor*
5. *Galic warrior* 6. *Galic standard bearer* 7. *Galic chief*

ROMAN OFFICERS AND GAULS

THE MARCH

Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry 53 and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

Length of March. The length of a day's march of course 54 varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (*magna itinera*, *maxima itinera*), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the 55 line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from

a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56 Line of Battle. The line of battle was commonly triple (*triplex aciēs*), though sometimes only double (*duplex aciēs*). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

57 Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (*orbis*), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS . . .

58 A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs

would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

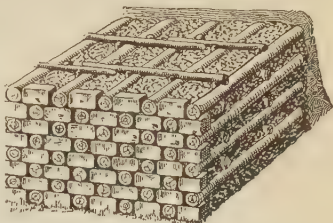


FIG. 6. SECTION OF GALLIC WALL

59

Blockade (obsidiō). A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentina). If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a *testūdō* (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (*crātēs*, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (*scālae*, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

Formal Siege (oppugnātiō). The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (*turris*). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across

it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was

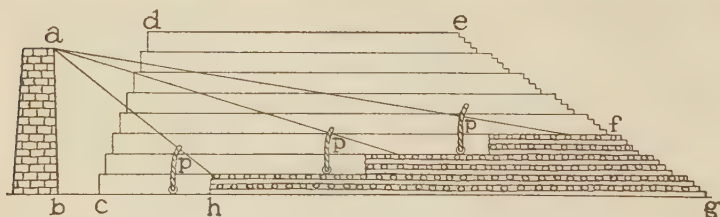


FIG. 7. SIDE VIEW OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION

a b, the enemy's wall. *f g h*, part already constructed. *c d e f h*, part to be constructed. *a b c d*, part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment. *p p p*, lines of plutei protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the plutei.

low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

- 62 **Means of Protecting the Besiegers.** In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall: hence they made use of several forms of protection.

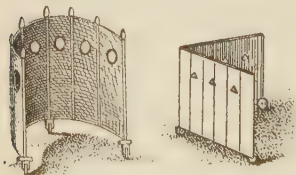


FIG. 8

immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

b. The **musculus** (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the

a. The **pluteus** (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working im-

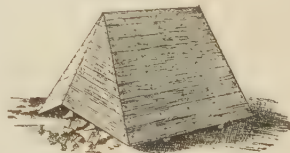
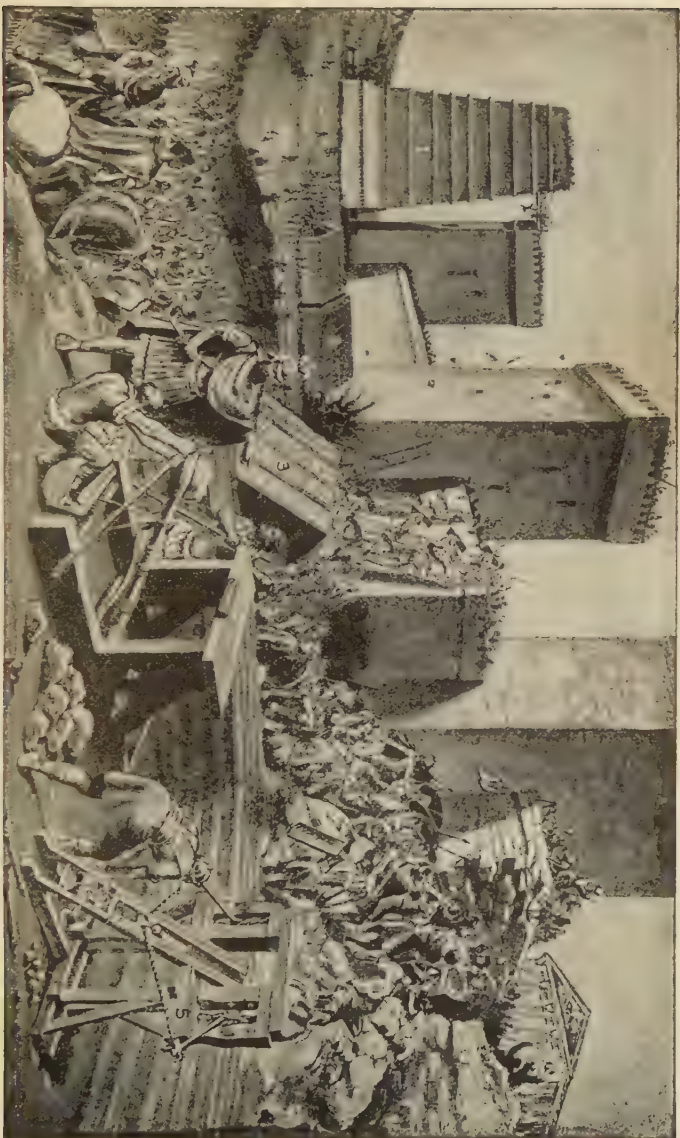


FIG. 9

PLATE III



1. *turris* 2. *testudo arietaria* 3. *testudo* 4. *onager* 5. *ballista*



shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The *testūdō arietāria* (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (*ariēs*), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The *vīnea* (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the *musculi*, *testūdīnēs*, or *plutei*.

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

The Artillery.—Caesar had with him engines of war, the **63** purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery.

They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name *tormenta* is derived from *torqueō*, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

a. The *ballista*

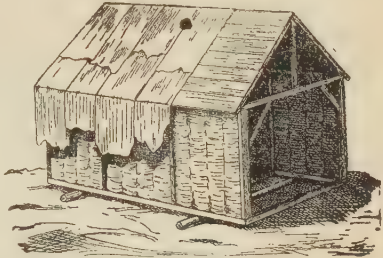


FIG. 10

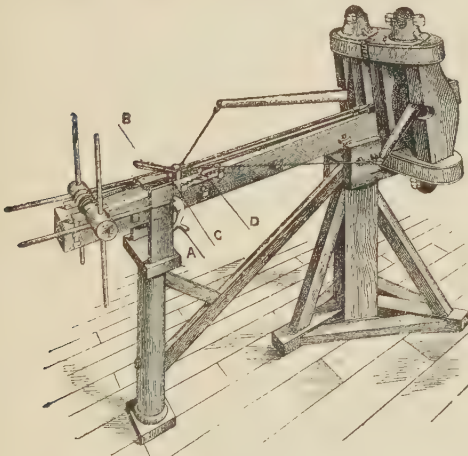


FIG. 11. CATAPULTA

(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal.

b. The catapult (*catapulta*) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (c) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (c) was withdrawn and the rear end

of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

c. The *scorpiō* was a small catapult.

d. The *onager* (Plate III, 4) threw stones, like the *ballista*, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legionaries, put tribunes and centurions in command of indi-

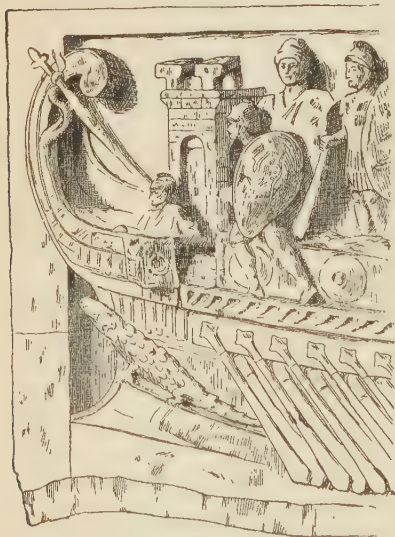


FIG. 12

vidual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called **nāvēs longae**, in distinction from the transports (**nāvēs onerariae**), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were armed with metal beaks (**rōstra**), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.

A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.

H. Meusel. (Berlin, 1894.) The critical edition is the best text edition of the Gallic War. No explanatory notes.

H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:

C. E. Moberly. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1878.)

A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)

St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.)

Usually good when it follows good authorities.

Caesar's Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. *Caesar*. (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.

W. Warde Fowler. *Julius Caesar*. (G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1892.) The best life of Caesar.

J. A. Froude. *Caesar: a Sketch*. Interesting, but grossly partisan and inaccurate.

T. Rice Holmes. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. (Macmillan

& Co., London, 1899.) The best discussion, in any language, of the military and geographical problems.

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar*. (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen*. (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.

Plutarch's Lives. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Anthony Trollope. *The Commentaries of Caesar*. (In the series, Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories:
Duruy. *History of Rome*.

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic*. This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar's campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire*.

Mommsen. *History of Rome*. The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

Miscellaneous

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army*. (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico*. (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg*. (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae*. (Gotha.)

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, **2**, 11 = Book III, chapter **2**, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. * indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.
abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb, adverbial.
card. = cardinal.
cf. = *cōnfer*, compare.
chap. = chapter.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
dem. = demonstrative.
dim. = diminutive.
distr. = distributive.
e.g. = *exempli grātiā*, for example.
encl. = enclitic.
etc. = *et cētera*, and so forth.
f. = feminine.
fig. = figure, figuratively.
freq. = frequentative.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
i.e. = *id est*, that is.
imp. = imperative.
impers. = impersonal.
impf. = imperfect.
incept. = inceptive.
ind. = indicative.
indecl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.

inf. = infinitive.
int. = introduction.
interrog. = interrogative.
intr. = intransitive.
irr. = irregular.
l., ll. = line, lines.
lit. = literally.
m. = masculine.
neg. = negative.
n., neut. = neuter.
n. (in grammatical references) = *note*.
nom. = nominative.
num. = numeral.
ord. = ordinal.
p., pp. = page, pages.
part. = participle.
pass. = passive.
pers. = personal.
pf. = perfect.
pl. = plural.
plupf. = pluperfect.
poss. = possessive.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
reflex. = reflexive.
rel. = relative.
sc. = *scilicet*, supply.
sing. = singular.
subj. = subjunctive.
sup. = superlative.
tr. = transitive.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of

the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. 30 we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. 31 we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In **II, 34** we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (*Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile, II, 439-453*) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.



Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29



C. IULI CAESARIS

BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam

1. Gallia, -ae, f., Gallia (gāl'i-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. *

sum, esse, fui (App 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with *gen.* in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with *dat. of possessor*, have. *

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl. as noun*, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl. as noun*, all possessions or goods. *

dividō, dividere, divisī, divisum, tr. divide, separate; *pf. part. as adj.*, divided. *

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc. (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon: (2) of time, till, into; for; on, at: (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs**, from day to day; **in fugam cōicere**, put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere**, meet with Caesar;

sumum in cruciātum venire, be severely punished. With *abl.* (1) of rest or motion within a place, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon: (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on: (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī**, over the Arar; **in eō**, in his case; **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in opere esse**, be engaged in the work. *

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. *

trēs, tria, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. *

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see *quis*), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of *dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, with comparatives, the; **quō . . . eō**, the . . . the. *

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnius (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. *

Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

1. Gallia: in translating, proper names should always be pronounced like English words. The pronunciation is always indicated in the vocabulary. The values of the vowel markings are shown in the table on p. 2 of the vocabulary at the end of the book.

omnis, "as a whole," shows that *Gallia* here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

divisa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.

quārum ūnam, "one of which (parts)." **ūnam:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. The grammar references should al-

* The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.

incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna

2. incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and *intr.* [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. *

Belgae, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius (App. 32), another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; *in pl.*, some . . . others. *

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wī-tā'nī), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. *

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59), *intensive pron.*, self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; *as adj.*, very; *in gen.*, his, her, its, or their own. *

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. 3.
3. Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better, the Celts. 1.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. *

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. *

appellō, 1, tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. *

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than **is**; this, this man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* **hōc**, on this account; in this respect; the (*with comparatives*); **hic . . . ille**, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. *

institūtum, -ī, n. [institūō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. 3.

4. lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment. 4.

inter, prep. with acc. (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between; (2) of time, during, within, for; (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with; (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, **as, inter sē differunt**, differ from one another; each other, one another, **as, co-**

ways be looked up and studied. In the notes on I, 1-29, for each of the most common principles of syntax grammar references are given three times, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

2. Belgae: it is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.

aliam, tertiam: sc. *partem incolunt*.

quī = ii quī: a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

ipsōrum linguā, "in their own language." **linguā:** case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. Celtae, Gallī: case? App. 95, a: G.-L. 205; 206: A. 283; 284: B. 167; 168, 2, b: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 393, 8.

linguā, institūtis, lēgibus, "in language, institutions, and laws." Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

4. Garumna flūmen: sc. *dividit*. **flūmen:** case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2, a: H. 393.

flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium 5 fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

hortātī inter sē, encouraging one another. *

sui, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron. of 3d person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; *inter sē*, see *inter* and App. 166. *

differō, differre, distuli, dilātum, tr. and intr. [*ferō*, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. 1.

ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in some compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā *tergō*, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab *millibus passuum duobus*, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. *

Garumna, -ae, m. (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. 3.

5. *flūmen*, -inis, n. [*fluō*, flow], river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, m. (Bef), the river Matrona (māt'rō-na), now the Marne. 1.

et, conj., and; also, too, even; et . . . et, both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wa-na), better, Seine. 1.

6. *fortis*, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. *

proptereā, adv. [*propter*, because of], on this account; *proptereā quod*, because. *

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of *quī*, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, inasmuch as; because; *quod sī*, but if; *proptereā quod*, because. *

cultus, -ūs, m. [*colō*, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2.

atque, ac (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. *

hūmānitās, -tātis, f. [*hūmānus*, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.

7. *prōvincia*, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. *

longē, adv. [*longus*, long], far, far away, distant; *longē latēque*, far and wide. *

absūm, *abesse*, *āfui*, intr. [*sum*, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. *

minimē, adv. [*minus*, least], least,

5. *Matrona . . . dīvidit*: the two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular: App. 180, d: G.-L. 285, 2: A. 317, d: B. 255, 3: H.-B. 331, 3: H. 392, 4.

hōrum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367;

372: A. 346, a, 2: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 442.

7. *prōvinciae*: see Int. 2, 26.

quod absunt: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

minimē saepe, "very seldom."

tôrēs saepe commeant atque ea quæ ad effēminandōs animōs
pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns
10 Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

very little; by no means, not at all. 4.

-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; **que . . . que, or que . . . et,** both . . . and. *

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward; (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, at, by, near: (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for: (4) with numerals, up to, about: (5) of time, up to, until; at, on: (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. *

is, ea, id gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quæ,** (the) things which; **eō, with comp., the; eō magis,** all the more; **eō . . . quō, with comparatives,** the . . . the. *

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercor, trade], merchant, trader. *

8. saepe, adv., often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepenumērō,** often, time and again, frequently; **comp. saepius,** oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. *

commeō, 1, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit. 1.

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. quæ . . . pertinent: notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

effēminō, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 1.

animus, -i, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animī causā,** for amusement; **in animō habēre,** intend. *

9. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; **eōdem pertinēre,** tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. *

importō, 1, tr. [in + portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. 3.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 122, b), next to. *

Germāni, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mā'ni), better, Germans. *

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; **in compounds, trāns or trā,** across, over, through. *

10. Rhēnus, -i, m. (ABCfgh), the river Rhenus (rē'nūs), better, the Rhine. *

cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. *

continenter, adv. [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. 3.

bellum, -i, n., war. *

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on,

ad effēminandōs animōs, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.

9. proximī Germānīs, "next to the Germans": case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384; B. 192, 1; H.-B. 362, III: H. 434, 2.

10. quibuscum: use and position of cum? App. 140; 60, b: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, b; 150, d: B. 222; 142, 4: H.-B. 418, a; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus

perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur *

11. dē, *prep. with abl.*, originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. *

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (*legal*) case, cause; **causam dicere**, to plead a case; **causā**, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. *

Helvētiūs, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyi), Helvetian; *as noun*, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. *

quoque, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [relinquō, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun*, remainder, rest. *

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

12. ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiē,

daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. *

proelium, -li, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere**, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. *

13. cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum primum**, as soon as. See App. 238-242. *

aut, *conj.*, used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or. *

suis, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject* (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [suī, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua**, *n. pl. as noun*, one's property; **suī**, *m. pl. as noun*, their men (*friends or countrymen*). *

finis, -is, *m.*, boundary, limit, border, end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. *

11. quā dē causā, "(and) for this reason." The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using "and" or "but," if we like: App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvētiī: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters.

virtūte: ablative of specification.

12. proeliīs, "in battle"; but it is an ablative of means.

13. suis finibus: the reflexives *sui* and *suis* regularly refer to the subject:

bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dic-
tum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Ga-
rumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septen-
triōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; perti-

14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold, retain, pos-
sess, maintain; acquire, obtain. *

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, *tr.*, say,
tell, speak, express, mention; name,
appoint; causam dicere, plead a case;
iūs dicere, administer justice. *

15. initium, -ti, *n.* [ineō, go into],
beginning, commencement, origin; edge
of a country, borders. *

capio, capere, cepi, captum, *tr.*,
take, capture, seize, catch; take in,
beguile, induce; take up (*arms*); choose,
select (*a place*); form, adopt (*a plan*);
reach, arrive at (*a place*); make (*a begin-
ning*); collem capere, take position on
a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. *

Rhodanus, -i, *m.* (CDfg), the river
Rhodanus (rōd'a-nūs), better, Rhone. *

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together;
hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; con-
tain; sē continēre, with *abl.*, remain
in, on, or within. *

16. Ōceanus, -i, *m.*, the ocean; as
adj., with *mare*, the ocean. *

atingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāc-
tum, *tr.* [ad+tangō, touch], touch or
border on, reach, extend to, arrive at,
attain. *

etiam, *conj.*, and also, also, even,
yet. *

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or be-
longing to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*,
Sēquanī (Cf), the Sequani (sēk' wa-
ni). *

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look or
lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.

septentrionēs, -um, *m.* [septem,
seven +trionēs, plough oxen], the
seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great
Bear, hence the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of*
exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost,
farthest, extreme; the farthest part of;
extrēmī (*as noun*), the rear; ad extrē-
mum, at last, at the end; as a last
resort. *

orior, oriri, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise,
begin, spring up, rise, start; be born,
descend; oriēns sōl, the rising sun,
sunrise; the east. *

suīs therefore refers to the Helvetii.
For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A.
400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1;
and notice that the preposition *ab* is
often used in the same sense, as in *ab*
Aquilānis, l. 4.

eōrum refers to the Germans. For
case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B.
198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

14. eōrum refers back to the Gauls
as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have
just been mentioned.

quam is the object, Gallōs the sub-
ject of *obtinēre*: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2:
A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The
infinitive clause, quam . . . ob-
tinēre, is the subject of *dictum est*:

App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B.
314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 642. The whole
may be freely translated, "which,
as has been said, the Gauls occu-
py."

15. ā flūmine, "at the river." There
are many phrases in which we feel "at"
or "on" to be the appropriate preposi-
tion, but in which the Romans seem to
have thought of a starting-point and
consequently used *ab* or *ex*, which lit-
erally mean "from."

16. ab Sēquanīs, "in the direction
of" or "on the side of." Cf. the preced-
ing note.

18. extrēmīs finibus: i. e. those
farthest from the Roman province.

ment ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēni; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flū-
mine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceani quae est
ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbillissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupi-

19. **inferus, -a, -um, adj.**, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; **ab inferiōre parte**, below, down stream; *sup.*, **infimus** or **imus**, lowest, last; *with collis*, the base of; **ad infimum, ab infimō**, at the bottom. *

spectō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of speciō*, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. 3.

20. **sōl, sōlis, m.**, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. *

Aquitānia, -ae, f. (DEcd), Aquitania (āk'wī-tā'nī-a), southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. *

21. **Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj.**, Pyrenean; **Pŷrēnaei montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pīr'ē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. 1.

mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill, height. *

22. **Hispānia, -ae, f.** (Eabed), Hispania (hīs-pā'nī-a), better, Spain. 2.

occāsus, -ūs, m. [*occidō*, fall, set], falling down, setting; *with sōlis*, sunset; the west. 4.

19. **in septentrionēs . . . sōlem**: i. e., toward the northeast.

22. **ad Hispāniam**, "near Spain"; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occāsum . . . septentrionēs: i. e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.

1. **nōbillissimus**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 394.

1. **apud, prep. with acc.**, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. *

nōbills, -e, adj. [*nōscō*, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. *

dīves, dīvitis, adj., wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **ditissimus**. 1.

2. **Orgetorix, -igis, m.**, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'ō-rīks), a chief of the Helvetii. *

M., *abbr. for Mārcus* (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Messālā, -ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kūs vā-lēr'i-ūs mē-sā'la), consul, 61 B.C. 2.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-ūs pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā-nūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. 2.

cōsul, -ulis, m., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. *

rēgnum, -ī, n. [*rēx*, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. *

cupiditās, -tātis, f. [*cupidus*, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. 3.

2. **M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus**, "in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso." Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a; H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B.C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

rēgnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

ditate inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitatī
persuāsit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent:
5 Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae

3. **inducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-**
tum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw on;
induce, influence, instigate; cover. 4.

coniūratiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō, swear
together], a swearing together; plot,
conspiracy; secret league, confeder-
acy. 3.

nōbilitās, -tātis, f. [nōbilis, well
known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility,
rank; the nobility, the nobles. 3.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr. and
intr.: *tr.*, make, construct, form, do,
execute (commands, etc.); give (oppor-
tunity, etc.); *with ut*, bring about, cause:
intr., do, act. *Pass.*, **fiō, fieri, factus**
sum (App. 83), *with passive of above*
meanings, and, used impersonally, result,
happen, come to pass. *

cīvitās, -tātis, f. [cīvis, citizen],
citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a*
community), state, city. *

4. **persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsi,**
-suāsum, tr. and intr. [suādēō, advise],
advise prevailingly; convince, persuade,
prevail upon; inculcate; **sibi persuā-**
dēri, be convinced. *

ut and utī, adv. and conj., (1) *as inter-*
rog. adv., how? (2) *as rel. adv. and conj.*,
as, in proportion as, just as; inasmuch
as; as if: (3) *as conj.* (a) *with ind.*, when,
after; (b) *with subj.*, that, in order that,
to; that, so that, so as to; though, al-
though; *after words of fearing*, that not.
I, 2.

cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty,
abundance, number; *pl.*, resources;
forces, troops. *

exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [eō, go.
App. 84], go from or out, depart from,
leave. 2.

5. **perfacilis, -e, adj.** [facilis, easy],
very easy. 2.

3. **coniūratiōnem**: the real purpose
of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix
king, although the Helvetii, like most
Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int.
29. His real reasons for wishing the
people to emigrate were (1) that by
making himself leader of the emigra-
tion he could get power enough to make
himself king; and (2) that as king he
wished to conquer the other states of
Gaul.

cīvitatī: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346:
A. 387: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote
3, (b): H. 426, 2. The list of verbs given
in this rule should be committed to
memory.

4. **ut exirent**: mode? App. 228, a:
G.-L. 546, 1: A. 503: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502,
3, (a): H. 563, 1; 565.

cōpiis here includes the women and
children.

5. **perfacile esse . . . potiri** is indi-
rect discourse, depending on a verb of
saying implied in *persuāsit*. Indirect
discourse (App. 265) is very common in

Caesar, and for this reason its essential
principles should be grasped as soon as
possible. No reference to details of
the construction will be given in I, 1-29.
The most essential fact to grasp is that
when a declarative sentence is turned
into indirect discourse the verb of the
principal clause becomes an infinitive:
App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, a: B. 314,
1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infini-
tive, however, cannot properly be trans-
lated by an English infinitive. In the
present instance, what Orgetorix said
was, *perfacile est . . . potiri*, "it is very
easy to get control." The *est* has be-
come *esse*, but the English equivalent is
"(saying) that it was very easy to get
control."

cum . . . praestarent, "since they
excelled all in valor." **virtūte**: case?
App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B.
441: H. 480. **omnibus**: case? App. 116, I:
G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 1: H.-B. 376:
H. 429. **praestarent**: mode? App. 239:
G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius iis persuasit, quod undique loci naturam Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimum atque altissimum, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimum, qui est inter

praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, **praestat**, it is better or more advisable. *

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. *

6. imperium, -ri, n. [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *

potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. *

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius**; *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). *

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; **obsidum locō**, as hostages. *

tōtius . . . potiri: i. e., the Helvetii were to do what the Haedui and the Sequani were trying to do. See Int. 29. **imperio**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

6. id . . . persuasit, lit. "he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hoc)" = "he persuaded them to this course the more easily." **hoc**: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

iis: cf. *civitatū*, l. 3.

quod continentur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I. See the map for the details that follow.

7. loci: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

natura, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. *

ē (only before consonants), **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep.* with *abl.*, originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; **una ex parte**, on one side: (2) of time, from, after, since; **ex itinere**, immediately after the march: (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; **ē regione**, opposite. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive. 4.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. *

ager, agrī, m., field, land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (of two); second; the one; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other; **alteri . . . alteri**, the one party . . . the other. *

Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. 3.

natura: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

8. ā Germanis: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, a: H. 461. We have learned in 1, 12-14, that the Rhine did not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.

9. alterā ex parte: "on a second side." Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.

10 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem

10. lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. 3.

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without lacus*), *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better, Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. 3.

12. rēs, rei, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frūmentāria, supplies; rēs militāris, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs pūblica, state; rēs āctae, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, see quī and quis. * minus, *adv. comp.* [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. *

lātē, *adv.* [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide. 4.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. *

13. inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. * possum, posse, potuī, —, (App. 80),

intr. [potis, able+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; with quam and sup., as possible, e.g. quam plūrimās possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plūs posse, and plūrimum posse, see multum. *

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in *pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. *

bellō, 1, *intr.* [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. 3.

14. cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. 2.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (*voice*); high (*tide*); magnī (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. *Comp.*, maior; *sup.*, maximus. *

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. 3.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ad+faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficere, to annoy greatly. 3.

prō, *prep.* with *abl.* [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in

10. tertiā: sc. ex parte. The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

11. hīs . . . fiēbat, lit. "by these things it was brought about" = "the result was."

12. ut vagārentur: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

minus, "less" than they desired.

finitimis: for case cf. omnibus, 1.5.

13. quā ex parte, "and on this ground": use of relative? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hominēs . . . cupidī, "being men who were desirous of fighting." bellandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 502; 504: B. 338, 1, b: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

14. prō . . . hominum, "considering the great size of the population."

hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē 15
finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum
CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti

return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written **prō, pro, and prōd**), for, before, forward, forth. *
multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. *

autem, conj., but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. *

15. **glōria, -ae, f.**, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. 2.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. 1.

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in **angustō**, in a critical condition. *

16. **habēō, 2, tr.**, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with **oratiōnem**); in **animō habēre**, intend; **ratiōnem habēre**, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an *ut* clause); **cōsiliū habēre**, form a plan; in **numerō hostiū habēre**, consider as enemies; **aliter sē habēre**, be otherwise or different; for **habēre** with *pf. pass. part.*, e.g. **vectigālīa redēpta habēre**, see App. 286, d. *

arbitror, 1, tr. and intr. [arbitr, umpire], decide; think, believe. *

longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. 1.

mille, indecl. num. adj., a thou-

sand; *pl. as noun*, **milia, -ium, n.**, thousands (usually followed by genitive); **milia passuum**, thousands of paces, miles. *

passus, -ūs, m. [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet); **mille passūs** or **passuum**, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. *

17. **ducentī, -ae, -a (CC), card. num. adj.** [duo, two+centum, hundred], two hundred. *

quadrāgintā (XL), card. num. adj., indecl., forty. 2.

lātitudō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. *

centum (C), indecl. card. num., a hundred. 4.

octōgintā (LXXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [octō, eight], eighty. 3.

pateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. 4.

1. **adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. *

auctōritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. *

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. *

15. **sē**: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

angustōs finēs, "(too) narrow limits." **finēs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the re-

ports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. 29 the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 3,000,000.

16. **milia**: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiēdum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxē-

2. cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). *

proficiscor, proficiēci, profectus sum, *intr.* [*cf.* proficiō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. *

comparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. *

3. iūmentum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. 2.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. *

quam, (1) *adv.*, (*a*) *interrog.*, how? (*b*) *rel.*, as; *with sup.* and *with or without posse*, as . . . as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) *conj. with comp.*, than; prius . . . quam, before; post . . . quam, posteā . . . quam, after. *

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of magnus*, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. *

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, *with gen.*, among, as. *

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy, buy up. 1.

4. sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], sowing. 1.

iter, itineris, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnīs itineribus, by forced marches. *

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. *

5. suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *intr.* [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. 2.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. 2.

amicitia, -ae, *f.* [amicus, friend], friendship. *

cōfirmō, 1, *tr.* [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. *

6. cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.

2. ad proficiēdum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

comparāre, coēmere, facere, cōfirmāre all depend on cōstituērunt; "they decided to get ready . . ., to buy . . ., to sow . . ., and to establish . . ."

3. iūmentōrum: especially oxen: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

quam maximum numerum, "as great a number as possible" or "as many . . . as possible."

4. ut cōpia suppeteret, "in order that a supply might be at hand": mode? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 544, I; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

5. cum . . . cōfirmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

cum proximīs cīvitātibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, etc. For case see App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 418; 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. ad . . . cōficiendās, lit. "for these things to be completed" = "for completing these preparations." Study

runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annēs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus

up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). *

biennium, -nī, n. [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. 1.

satis, adv. and indecl. adj. and noun; (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. *

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *

7. annus, -ī, m., year. *

profectiō, -ōnis, f. [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. 3.

8. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. *

lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. *

9. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum,

carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that *ad* governs *rēs* and that *cōficiendūs* is an adjective in agreement with *rēs*. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394. But *cōficiendūs* must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing *rēs* as its object.

sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366, a (or 362, 1): H. 425, 4.

biennium... dūxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." *Dūcō* with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. 2, 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

tr. [su(b)s+capio, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. *

Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus (kās'tī-kūs). 1.

Catamantaloedis, -is, m., Catamantaloedis (kāt'mān'ta-lē'dīs). 1.

10. filius, -li, m., son. 4.

pater, -tris, m., father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae**, father or head of a family. *

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; *pl.*, many; *with abl.* denoting time when, late; *as noun*, many persons or things; *comp.* **plūs, plūris**, more; *as noun*, more; *pl.*, more, several, many; *sup.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um**, most; *pl.*, very many. *

11. senātus, -ūs, m. [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; *esp.*, the administrative council of Rome. *

populus, -ī, m., the people, the mass,

7. cōfirmant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. sibi suscipit, "he took on himself." For case cf. *omnibus*, 2, 5.

9. Casticō: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, I, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

10. filiō, Sēquanō: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 316, 317, 2, a: H. 393, 1.

11. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423, 2: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

obtinuerat, "had held." Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be

erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitātē suā 'occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitātē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī
15 acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam

the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. *

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman; as noun, a Roman. *

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as noun, m., a friend, an ally. *

12. occupō, 1, tr. [ob+capīō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. *

ante, (1) adv., before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.,* before, in advance of. *

13. item, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. *

Dumnorig, -igis, m., Dumnorig (dūm'nō-rīks), a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. *

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj. (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i); Haeduan; as noun, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, possibly Haed-uans, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. *

frāter, -tris, m., brother. *

Diviciācus, -i, m., Diviciacus (dīv'ī-

shī-ā'kūs), a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. *

14. tempus, -oris, n., a division or section of time, a time, time (in general); occasion, crisis; **omni tempore,** always; **in reliquum tempus,** for the future; **ūnō tempore,** at the same time, at once. *

principātus, -ūs, m. [princeps, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. 4.

magis, adv., comp. [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.* **maximē,** especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. *

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēi, f., populace, common people. 3.

15. acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part.* of accipīō, accept], acceptable, beloved by (with dative). 1.

idem, eadem, idem (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; **idem atque,** the same as. *

cōnor, 1, intr., attempt, endeavor, try. *

filia, -ae, f., daughter. 4.

right, but it is very likely to be wrong. "Obtained" would be wrong here.

ā senātū: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

amicus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret, "to seize." This clause is the object of *persuādet* in l. 10: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565. Cf. *ut suppeteret*, l. 4, which is not used as an object.

13. Dumnorigī: younger than Diviciacus, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haedui.

Haeduō: the Haedui were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29. **quī:** i.e. Dumnorig.

14. tempore: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423, 1: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

principātum, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.

plēbī: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

15. ut idem cōnārētur, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

eī: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtentūrus esset: Nōn esse dubium quin tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possent: sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum 20

16. mātirimōnium, -nī, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātirimōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātirimōnium dūcere, to marry (*said of the man*). 2.

dō, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negōtium, with *dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb, dō, put*). 4.

ille, illa, illud, *gen. illius, dat. illi* (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc.*, cf. hīc), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hīc . . . ille, the latter . . . the former, *see App. 170, a. 4.*

probō, 1, *tr.* [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish;

construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. *

18. nōn (App. 188, a), *adv.*, not; no. * dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quin, *conj.* [qui, who or how+ne, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; quin etiam, nay even, moreover. *

multum, *adv.* [*acc. of multus*, much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* plūs, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* plūrimum, most, very; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. *

19. exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. *

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

20. ōratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. *

fidēs, -eī, *f.* [fidō, confide], faith, con-

16. perfacile . . . perficere, *lit.* "he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do [*factū*, the supine]" = "he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking." esse; cf. 2, 5.

17. propterea quod obtentūrus esset, *lit.* "because he was about to seize upon" = "because he intended to seize upon." The clause is causal, like *propterea quod absunt* in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (cf. 2, 5) is that all

subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. nōn . . . quin, "(he proved that) there was no doubt that."

19. sē illis conciliātūrum (*sc. esse*), "that he would win for them." *Esse* is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illis: i.e. for Casticus and Dumnorix.

20. hāc ōrātiōne, "by this argument."

inter sē, "to one another."

dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potirī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē

fidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere**, convince, give a pledge; **fidem sequī**, surrender. *

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n. [iūs, right + iūrō, swear], an oath. *

21. **per**, *prep.* with *acc.*, through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; **per sē**, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. *

potēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part.* of **possum**, be able], powerful, influential. 4.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, stable, vigorous, firm. 3.

22. **spērō, 1, tr.** [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. 2.

1. **indicium, -ci, n.** [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; **per indicium**, through informers. 1.

ēnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. *

21. **rēgnō occupātō potirī posse spērant**, "they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of." **rēgnō occupātō**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; B. 227, 2; a: H.-B. 421, 3; H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute: English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally. "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.

22. **Galliae**: case? App. 111: G.-L.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. *

2. **vinculum, -ī, n.** [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactum, tr. [co + agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. *

3. **damnō, 1, tr.** [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 1.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. 3.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with **poena**, be inflicted; **fidem sequī**, seek the protection. *

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, intr. impers., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, m., fire. 4.

cremō, 1, tr., burn. 2.

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., day; time; in **diēs**, from day to day; **diem ex diē**, day after day. *

407, n. 2, d: A. 410, a: B. 212, 2: H.-B. 353: H. 477, I, 3.

Chap. 4. Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.

1. **ea rēs**, "this conspiracy."

Helvētiis: case? App. 114, c: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

mōribus: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

2. **ex vinculis**, "in chains." Cf. note on 1, 15.

3. **damnātum . . . cremārētur, lit.** "it was necessary for the punishment to

cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris

4. dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. 1.

iudicium, -ci, *n.* [iudex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iudicium facere, express an opinion; iudiciō, by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, *f.*, household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. 2.

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, *m., f.* [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. 3.

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). *

condūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

nē (App. 188, b), (1) *conj. with subj.*,

that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest: (2) *adv.*, not; nē . . . quidem (enclosing the emphatic word), not even. *

8. ēripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. *

incitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitātō, at full speed. *

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. *

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. *

9. exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire" = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him." damnātum: use of participle? App. 283: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, b: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. ut cremārētur is a substantive clause in apposition with poenam; it is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of result.

diē: gender? App. 30, a: G.-L. 64: A. 97, a: B. 53: H.-B. 101: H. 135: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

diē . . . dictiōnis, "on the day set for the pleading of the case." causae: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347, 348,

note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2. dictiōnis: possessive genitive, limiting diē.

5. ad, "about."

6. obaerātōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. pereōs, "by their help."

nē . . . diceret, "to avoid pleading his case": mode? App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

8. cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātūs cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240, 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

10 magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta
s aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

10. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. *

morior, mori, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. 2.

neque (nec) (App. 188, *a*), *conj.* [ne + que], and not, not, nor; but not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. *

11. suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [suspicio, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. *

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; sibi mortem cōsciscere, commit suicide. 4.

12. cōsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cōsciscere, commit suicide. 2.

1. post, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* (1) as *adv.*, later, afterwards; (2) as *prep.*, behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. *

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. 3.

11. ut with the indicative usually means either "as", or "when."

quā . . . cōsciverit, "that he committed suicide."

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.

1. nihilō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

2. cōnantur: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

2. ubi, *adv.* (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. *

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. *

3. parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; parātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. *

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. *

4. duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. 2.

vicus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. *

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. 2.

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; as *noun*, person, individual. 3.

5. aedificium, -cī, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. *

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēn-

ut exeant, "(namely) to go forth," is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with *id*.

3. ad eam rem, "for the enterprise."

parātōs is the adjective.

esse, "were": indirect discourse.

oppida, vicōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on 1, 3.

4. numerō: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

ad, "about."

5. sēcum: position of *cum*? App. 52, *a*: G.-L. 413, R. 1: A. 144, note 1: B. 142, 4: H.-B. 418, *a*: H. 175, 7.

portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut; domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī

sum, *tr.* [*cf.* **candeō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. *

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. 1.

6. **portō**, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. 3.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [*com(b)+ūrō*, burn], burn up. 1.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. *

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*redeō*, return], return. 1.

spēs, -ei, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. *

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; **sublātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, elated. *

7. **periculum**, -ī, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. *

subeō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *tr.* [*eō*, go. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. 3.

8. **molō**, -ere, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, grind. 1. **cibārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cibus*, food],

pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; **molita cibāria**, meal, flour. 2. **quisque**, **quidque**, and **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. *

eferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātum, *tr.* [*ex+ferō*, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. 2.

iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. *

9. **Rauracī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw/ra-sī). 2.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lin'jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 4.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Lato-
brigi (lāt'ō-brī'jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 3.

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; **ūsus**, *pf. part.* often translated with. *

6. **portātūrī erant**, lit. "they were about to take" = "they intended to take." **ut essent** is a purpose clause.

domum reditiōnis, "of returning home." **domum**: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.

7. **ad . . . subeunda**: construction? App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628.

trium mēnsium cibāria, "supplies for three months." **mēnsium**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimates

that 8,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetian host: even this is probably an underestimate.

8. **sibi**: case? App. 120: G.-L. 352: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

9. **utī . . . proficiscantur**, lit. "that having used the same plan, their towns . . . having been burned, they set out along with them" = "to adopt . . ., to burn . . ., and to set out." **cōnsiliō**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

¹⁰ cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicisque exustīs, unā cum iīs proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre

10. cōnsiliū, -li, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; **commūni cōnsiliō**, by, or in accordance with, general action; **pūblicō cōnsiliō**, by action of the state; **cōnsiliū capere** or **inire**, form or adopt a plan; **cōnsiliū habere**, think, consider. *

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up. 1.

unā, *adv.* [unus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. *

11. Bōi, -iōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boii (bō'yi), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. *

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. 2.

11. Bōiōs is the object of **asciscunt**: App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

12. **receptōs . . . asciscunt**, *lit.* "the Boii, received to themselves [*ad se*], they admit to themselves [*sibi*] as allies" = "they received among their people and joined to themselves as associates the Boii, who had," etc.

13. **sibi**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

As explained in the notes on 1, 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on I, 1-29. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. *

Nōrēla, -ae, *f.* (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. 1.

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. *

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [re-+capio, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with **sē**, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. *

13. **socius**, -ci, *m.* [*cf.* sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. *

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.* [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). 2.

1. **omnīnō**, *adv.* [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. *

duo, **duae**, **duo** (App. 49), *card. num.* *adj.*, two. *

called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Direct object

Ablative of specification

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.

1. **erant**, "there were."

quibus itineribus, "by which." Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

quibus . . . possent, "by which they

possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiorum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum

2. *difficilis*, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3.

3. *vix*, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.

quā, *adv.* [abl. fem. of quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. *

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in annōs singulōs, annually. *

4. *impendeō*, -pendere, —, —, *intr.* [in+pendeō, hang], overhang, impend. 2.

5. *perpaucī*, -ae, -a, *adj.* [paucī, few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun*, very few. 4.

6. *multō*, *adv.* [abl. of multus, much], by far, much. 4.

facilis, -e, *adj.* [faciō, do], easy. 4.

expeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun*, a light armed soldier. *

7. *Allobrogēs*, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allobroges (ā-lōb'rō-jēz), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. *

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. 3.

pācō, 1, *tr.* [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; pācātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. *

8. *fluō*, *fluere*, *flūxī*, —, *intr.*, flow, run. 2.

vadum, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow. *

could leave home," is a clause of characteristic: App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, a: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

domō: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, b: H.-B. 451, a: H. 462, 4.

2. ūnum (iter) and alterum (iter) are appositives of itinera duo; App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282, a: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, I, a: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l'Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.

3. vix: notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on quae pertinent, 1, 8.

4. dūcerentur, "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from possent in that here the subjunctive mode has the

potential meaning "could": App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse: see map, p. 70.

ut possent: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2, a: H. 570.

5. prohibere: sc. eōs.

6. multō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

7. nūper pācātī erant: in 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

8. nōn nullis locis, "at several points." Why is the preposition in not used? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

vadō trānsitur, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable."

extrēmum: i.e. it is on the northern frontier.

Allobrogum est proximumque Helvëtiôrum finibus Genava.
 10 Ex eô oppidô pôns ad Helvëtiôs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē
 vel persuāsūrôs, quod nōndum bonô animô in populum Rômā-
 num vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrôs ut per suôs
 finēs eôs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem
 comparātis, diem dicunt quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs
 15 conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. April., L. Pisōne A.
 Gabiniô cōsulibus.

9. Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jĕn'a-va), a city of the Allobroges, now Genava. 3.

10. pôns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. *

11. nōndum, *adv.* [nōn, not+dum], not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (*with animô*) friendly; *as noun*, bonum, -ī, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, melior; *sup.*, optimus (App. 42). *

12. vidēō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. *

existimō, 1, *tr.* [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. *

vel, *conj. and adv.* (1) *as conj.*, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) *as adv.*, even. *

vis, vīs (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, virēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. *

13. eō, ire, īi (ivī), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. *

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. *

14. ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). *

15. conveniō, -venīre, -vĕnī, -ven-

9. est might more naturally have stood before Genava.

10. Allobrogibus . . . persuāsūrôs existimābant, "they thought they should either persuade the Allobroges." persuāsūrôs (*esse*) is the principal verb in indirect discourse: cf. note on *per facile esse*, 2, 5. In direct discourse their thought was *persuādēbimus*, "we shall persuade."

11. quod vidērentur is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, 1; 535, 2: H. 643.

bonô animô, "of a friendly disposition" or "well disposed." Case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. vel coāctūrôs (*esse*), "or should compel them": in the same construction as *persuāsūrôs*.

ut paterentur is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, the object of both *persuāsūrôs* and *coāctūrôs*.

13. omnibus rēbus comparātis, "when they had made everything ready."

14. quā diē: cf. note on *quibus itineribus*, 1, 1.

quā diē omnēs conveniant, "on which they should all assemble." Mode? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 2: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 502, 1: H. 590.

15. a. d. V. Kal. April. = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs* = *diē quintō ante Kalendās Aprilēs*. The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one. The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the

7. *Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest*

*tum, tr. and intr. [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; impersonal, be convenient, suitable, necessary. **

quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quinque, five], fifth. 3.

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. 1.

April., abbr. for Aprīlis, -e, adj., of April, April. 2.

*L., abbr. for Lūcius, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen. **

Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), Caesar's father-in-law, consul 58 B.C. 2.

A., abbr. for Aulus (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

16. *Gabinus, -ī, m., Aulus Gabinius*

first of April, instead of the fifth.

L. Pisōne . . . cōsulibus: cf. note on 2, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Purpose clauses

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. *Caesarī*: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become proconsul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.

cum nūntiātum esset: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

id, "this fact," is explained by its appositive, the clause, *eōs . . . cōnārī*, "that they were planning, etc." *eōs*: case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. *cōnārī*: construc-

(aw'lūs gā-bīn'i-ūs), *consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. 1.*

1. *Caesar, -aris, m., Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries. **

*nūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. **

2. *mātūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. 2.*

urbs, urbis, f., city; especially, the city, Rome. 2.

3. *ulterior, -ius, adj., comp. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. **

4. *perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of property, fall, revert. **

tion? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589; 591: H. 642.

2. *ab urbe*, "from [near] the city," instead of *ex urbe*, because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

quam maximis potest itineribus, lit. "by (as great) day's journeys as the greatest he can" = "by as long day's journeys as possible." *quam maximis itineribus* would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. *itineribus*: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. *ulteriōrem = trānsalpinam*, "beyond the Alps" from Rome.

4. *ad Genavam*: use of preposition? App. 131, a: G.-L. 337, R. 4: A. 428, a: B. 182, 3: H.-B. 453, 1: H. 418, 4.

prōvinciae imperat, "he levied upon the province."

5 militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgātīōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi
10 esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius

5. miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (*opposed to equitēs*); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers *upon*. *

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*in+parō*, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. *

6. legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*legō*, choose], a legion. *

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scis-sum, *tr.* [*re+scindō*, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2.

7. adventus, -ūs, *m.* [*veniō*, come], coming, arrival, approach. *

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for crētus*, *pf. part. of cernō*], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiōrem facere, to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (*ut or nē and subj.*); certior fieri, be informed. *

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [*lēgō*, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

8. mittō, mittere, misī, missum,

tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. *

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammeius (*nā-mē'yūs*). 1.

9. Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (*vēr'ū-klē'shyūs*), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. 1.

princeps, -ipis, *adj.* [*primus*, first+*capiō*, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as *noun*, chief or principal person, leader, chief. *

10. sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. *
ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ūllius (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; as *noun*, any one, anybody. *

maleficiū, -cī, *n.* [*malum*, evil+*faciō*, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. 4.

11. nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllius, *adj.* [*ne+ūllus*, any], not any, no; as *noun*, no one, none; nōn nūllus, some; as *noun*, some, some persons. *

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. *

5. militum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 308: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

in Galliā: case? App. 151: G.-L. 385: A. 426, 3: B. 228: H.-B. 433: H. 483.

6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

7. certiōrēs factī sunt, lit. "were made more certain" = "were informed." certiōrēs: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 317, 3; 320, III: H. 394.

8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. quī dicerent, "who were to say"

= "to say": a relative clause of purpose.

sibilesse in animō, "that they had in mind" or "intended." sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Cf. 3, 17.

rogāre (sc. *se*), "that they asked." The speakers said to Caesar rogāmus, "we ask."

ut sibi liceat, "that it be permitted them" or "that they be allowed." For mode see App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius: i.e. Caesar's.

voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam 15

12. voluntās, -tātis, *f.* [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. *

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut liceat, to ask permission. *

memoria, -ae, *f.* [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; memoriā tenēre, remember; patrum memoriā, in the time of our fathers. *

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memoriā tenēre, remember. *

13. Cassius, -si, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kăsh'yūs lōn-gī'nūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini. 3.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. *

14. pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,

tr., beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. *

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) *of time*, during, within: *in compounds*, sub or subs, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. *

iugum, -ī, *n.* [lungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. *

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. *

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. *

15. inimicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+amīcus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (personal), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy. 3.

facultās, -tātis, *f.* [old *adj.*, facul=facilis, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. *

12. voluntāte is an ablative of accordance.

tenēbat: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

13. occisum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on memoriā tenēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of tenēbat; "that Lucius Cassius had been slain," etc.

ab Helvētiis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

14. sub iugum, "under the yoke." This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third

fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (esse), "that permission ought to be granted."

15. hominēs temperātūrōs (esse), "that men would refrain." The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought nōn temperābunt, "they will not refrain."

animō: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

datā facultāte may be translated by a conditional clause; "if an opportunity should be given."

itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstīmābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. 20 reverterentur.

16. **temperō**, 1, *intr.*, restrain or control one's self, refrain; **temperātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. 2.

iniuriā, -ae, *f.* [in-+iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. *

17. **tamen**, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. *

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. 4.

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until. *

18. **respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.* [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. *

19. **dēliberō**, 1, *tr.* [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmsī, sūmptum,

tr. [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with **labor**, spend. *

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; **quod sī**, but if, now if. *

quis, **quid**, [and **quī**, **quae**, **quod** (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem**, why? **quem ad modum**, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, especially after **sī**, **nisi**, **nō**, **num**, any one, anything, any; somebody, something, some. *

volō, **velle**, **voluī**, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet**, what did he intend or mean? * **Idūs**, -uum, *f., pl.*, the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months. 1.

20. **revertō**, -vertēre, -vertī, -versum, *intr.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and **revertor**, -vertī, -versus sum, *intr.*, used in the tenses

16. **itineris faciendī**: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 612, I; 613: H. 623; 626.

17. **dum militēs convenirent**, "until the soldiers should arrive."

18. **diem**, "time."

sē sūmptūrum, "that he should take." **ad dēliberandum**: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432, R.: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

19. **sī quid vellent**, "if they wanted anything." Why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, α: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

20. **reverterentur**, "they should come again." This is a principal clause in indirect discourse, but the subjunctive is used instead of the infinitive because an imperative was used in the

direct form. Caesar said *sī quid vultis, revertimini*, "if you want anything, come again." The third (cf. 2, 5 and 3, 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate nouns and adjectives

Agreement of adjectives

Partitive genitive

Subject of infinitive

Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

Infinitive in indirect discourse

Gerund

Gerundive

8. Interea eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, mīlia passuum XIX mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia 5 dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire

formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. *

1. *interea*, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. 4.

3. *influō*, -*fluere*, -*fluxī*, —, *intr.* [*fluō*, flow], flow into, empty into. *

4. *undēvigintī* (XIX). *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* (ūnus, one+*dē*, from+*vīgintī*, twenty], nineteen. 2.

mūrus, -*i*, *m.*, a wall. *
altitūdō, -*inis*, *f.* [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (of timber). *

5. *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*, the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; *pedibus*, on foot; *pedem referre*, retreat. *

sēdecim (XVI). *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, sixteen. 2.

fossa, -*ae*, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of fodiō*, dig], trench, ditch. *

perdūcō, -*dūcere*, -*dūxī*, -*ductum*,

tr. [*dūcō*, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.

opus, *operis*, *n.*, work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; *nātūrā et opere*, by nature and art; *opera*, crafts. *

praesidium, -*dī*, *n.* [*praesideō*, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. *

6. *dispōnō*, -*pōnere*, -*posuī*, -*positum*, *tr.* [*pōnō*, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. 2.

castellum, -*i*, *n.* [*castrum*, fort], fortress, redoubt. *

commūniō, 4, *tr.* [*mūniō*, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. 1.

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of quī*, who,

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.

1. *legiōnem militibusque*: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401, R. 1: A. 409: B. 218, 10: H.-B. 423, a: H. 476.

2. *ā lacū . . . ad montem*: see map, p. 70.

4. *mīlia*: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387: H. 417.

mīlia passuum XIX = about 17½ English miles. This is the distance from the lake to Pas de l'Écluse, following the windings of the river. Caesar's plain statement is that he constructed a wall and a trench nineteen miles in length. Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on p. 70 shows the only places where he believed that Caesar con-

structed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon's view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness.

in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, lit. "of sixteen feet into height" = "sixteen feet high." *pedum*: App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The "section of Caesar's wall," set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the *mūrus*. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

6. *dispōnit*, "stationed at several points." Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-

cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētīi

which], in order that, so that, that. *

invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invitō**, against his will. *

8. veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, intr., come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venīre**, have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, as **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. *

tioned detachments (*praesidia*) in *castella*, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1.

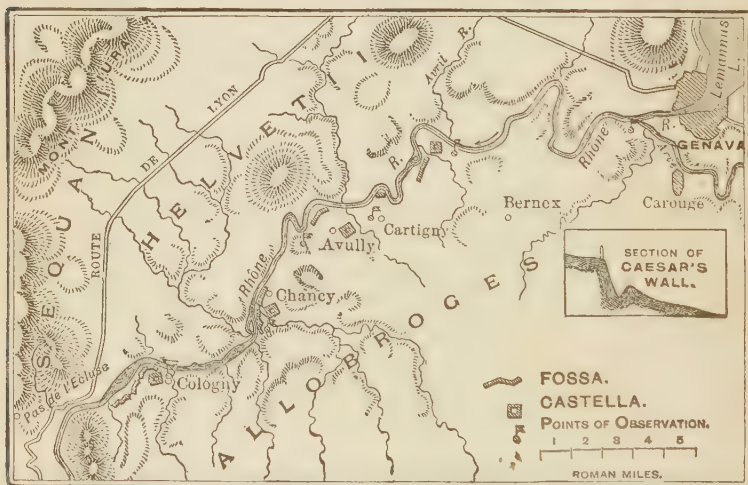
9. exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. 2.

10. ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, tr. [obs+**tendō**, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. *

G.-L. 409: A. 419, *a*; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.

8. negat sē posse, "he said that he could not."

mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142. *a*:



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

quō facilius posset: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses? App. 225, *a*, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, 2, *a*: B. 282, *a*: H.-B. 502, 2, *b*: H. 568, 7.

sī cōnārentur, "if they should try."

sē invitō: construction? App. 150:

G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

10. sī . . . cōnentur, "if they should try to use force."

prohibitūrum (sc. *se . . . esse*), "that he would stop them."

eā spē deiectī, nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōnē et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

15

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis

11. **dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.** [**laciō**, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. *

nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; **nāvis longa**, galley, ship of war; **nāvis oneraria**, transport. *

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. 4.

ratis, -is, f., raft. 2.

complūrēs, -a, adj. [**plūs**, more], several, many; a great many. *

12. **parvus, -a, -um, adj.**, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus**, as noun, less; *sup.*, **minimus, -a, -um**, least, very small. *

13. **numquam, adv.** [**ne**+**umquam**, ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam**, sometimes. 3.

interdiū, adv. [**diēs**, day], during the day, by day. 1.

11. **eā spē deiectī**, lit. "cast down from this expectation" = "disappointed in this expectation." **spē**: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 402: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2, footnote: H. 464.

nāvibus iūctis, "by joining together boats," and thus making a pontoon bridge.

12. **alii**: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, *nāvibus . . . factis*. The meaning is that most of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, but others by fords.

13. **sī possent**, "(to see) whether they could." For this use of *sī*, see App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, 1, b; 467: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

14. **conkursū**: cf. note on **dispōnit**, 1. 6.

noctū, adv. [**nox**, night], by night. 4.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [**rumpō**, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. 1.

14. **mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.** [**mūniō**, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. *

conkursus, -ūs, m. [**concurrō**, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. 2.

tēlum, -ī, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, tr. [**re**+**pellō**, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. 4.

15. **cōnātus, -ūs, m.** [**cōnor**, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, intr. [**sistō**, stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4.

1. **relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lic-**

repulsi, "were repulsed and."

15. **cōnātū** is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of extent of space

Ablative of separation

Ablative of means

Ablative absolute

Chap. 9-15. The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reinforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.

Chap. 9. The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

1. **ūna via**, "only the way." This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in 6, 2.

quā, "and by this." Case? App. 144:

invītis propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

5 Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs

tum, *tr.* [re-+linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. *

2. propter, *prep.* with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. *

angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *

3. spontis, *gen.*, and sponte, *abl.* (obsolete *nom.*, spōns), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. 2.

4. dēprecātor, *m.* [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1.

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [in+patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); impetrāre ā (ab), gain permission from, persuade. *

5. grātia, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing],

favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habēre, to feel grateful; grātiām referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiām referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiām inire, to gain favor; grātiā following a *gen.*, for the purpose of, in order to. *

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior, bribe], bribery. 1.

8. novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; as *noun* or with agmen, those in the rear, the rear. *

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accuse one's self to. *

beneficiū, -cī, *n.* [bene, well+faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *

9. obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī,

G.-L. 389: A. 429, α: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

Sēquanīs invītis, "if the Sequani should refuse." Ablative absolute.

2. cum possent: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

suā sponte, "by their own efforts" or "by themselves." The phrase usually means "of their own accord."

3. Dumnorīgem: this is the Dumnorix who is mentioned in 3, 13 as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

4. ut impetrārent is a clause of purpose.

eō dēprecātore, lit. "he being mediator" = "by his mediation."

5. grātiā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

6. Helvētiīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, α: H. 434, 2.

8. rēbus: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, β: H. 426, 1.

suō . . . obstrictās, lit. "to hold bound by his kindness" = "to keep under obligations."

impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque 10
utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs
prohibeant; Helvētīi, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

10. Caesarī rēnūntiātur Helvētīis esse in animō per agrum
Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī
nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in prō-
vinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae

-strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold
under obligations, pledge. 2.

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, there-
fore, accordingly. *

10. obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [obsideō,
blockade], one that is guarded, hostage;
pledge, security. *

1. renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [re-+nūntius, mes-
sage], bring back word, bring news,
report; declare elected. *

2. Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs,
-um, *m.* (Ded), the Santoni (sān'/tō-nī),
or Santones (sān'/tō-nēs). 3.

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates
(tōl'ō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa. 1.

4. intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum,
tr. [inter+legō, choose, select], select
or distinguish between; understand;
know; see, perceive, realize; find out,
learn. *

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar's
narrative we find that states were
obliged to bind themselves to carry out
their agreements by giving hostages.
The hostages were usually the children
of the most influential men of the state,
and were liable to enslavement or death
if the state failed to fulfill its agree-
ment.

11. Sēquanī, Helvētīi: *sc.* *obsidēs*
dent; i.e. the Sequani bound themselves
not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses
are substantive volitive clauses, objects
of the implied phrase "bind themselves."

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with special verbs

Dative with adjectives

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops
from Italy.

1. Caesarī: case? App. 114, c: G.-L.
345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H.
424; 425, 1.

renūntiātur: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L.
229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H.
532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and
scouts to report the movements of the
Helvetii.

Helvētīis: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349:
A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

esse is the subject of *renūntiātur*.

2. facere is the subject of *esse*.

3. nōn longē: the distance is really
about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would
be more dangerous in the territory of
the Santones than in their own country,
because they would no longer be hemmed
in by natural barriers. Caesar had rea-
son to fear that either the Helvetii or the
Gauls whom they should drive from
their homes would raid the Province;
and since it was his duty to protect the
Province he was justified in forcing the
Helvetii to remain at home. He does
not choose to add, however, that this
movement of the Helvetii gave him an
excellent opportunity to interfere in the
affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in
with his plans for the conquest of the
country.

4. id sī fieret, "if this should be car-
ried out," is a subordinate clause in in-
direct discourse, depending on *futūrum*:
mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B.
314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar's
thought was, "if this shall be carried
out [future indicative], it will, etc."

magnō . . . futūrum, "that it would
be (attended) with great danger to the
province." prōvinciae is a genitive.

5 futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemā-
10 bant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem

5. bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. 3.

6. patēns, -entis, *adj.* [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; rēs frūmentāria, supply of grain, provisions. *

7. T. *abbr. for* Titus (tī' tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī' tūs ā' shyūs lā' bī-ē' nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda 45 B.C. *

8. praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. 4.

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. *

9. ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. *
cōscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. *

circum, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. 2.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (āk'wī-lē'ya), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. 1.

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. *

10. hiberna, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc.* castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *
ēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). *

5. ut habēret is the subject of futūrum: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

inimicōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

locīs is probably a dative depending on finitimōs, though it may be an ablative of place.

6. habēret: *sc.* prōvincia.

7. mūnitiōnī: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370, a, note 1: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

lēgātum: see Int. 38.

8. Ītaliā: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his proconsular command.

itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

9. cōscribit: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 24,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.

10. hibernīs: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 426, 1: B. 229: H.-B. 408, 1: H. 461.

quā proximum iter erat, "where there was the shortest route." He chose the pass of Mount Genève, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their

Galliam per Alpēs erat cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Centronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae 15 diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant

11. Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* (Cghi), the Alpes (āl'pēz), better, the Alps. *
quinque (V), *card. num. adj., indecl., five.* 4.

12. Ceutronēs, -um, *m. (Dg)*, the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz). 1.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m. (Dg)*, the Graioceli (grā-yōs'ē-lī). 1.

Caturigēs, -um, *m. (Dg)*, the Caturiges (kāt'ū-rī-jēz). 1.

superior, -ius, *adj. [comp. of superior, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former.* *

14. Ocelum, -ī, *n. (Dg)*, Ocelum (ōs'ē-lūm). 1.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj. (App. 44)*, nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (=Cis-

alpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. *

15. Vocontii, -ōrum, *m. (Df)*, the Vocontii (vō-kōn'shī). 1.

16. septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh.* *

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. *

17. Sēgusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. (Def)*, the Segusiavi (sēg'ū-shī-ā/vī). 1.

extrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.

18. primus, -a, -um, *adj., sup. (App. 43)*, first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. *

2. trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, *tr. [trāns+dūcō, lead], lead across,*

country. It is estimated that Caesar spent two months in securing his reinforcements.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 420: H. 473, 1.

13. complūribus . . . proeliis: English order, his pulsīs (ablative absolute) complūribus proeliis (ablative of means).

15. prōvinciae: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

17. in Segusiāvōs: i.e. into that part of their territory which lies between the Rhone and the Arar. He encamped on the heights above the city of Lyons. Labienus must have rejoined him there.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Indirect object

Dative with compound verbs

Ablative of place from which

Ablative of accompaniment

Historical present

Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. iam, "by this time."

angustiās: at Pas de l'Écluse.

2. pervēnerant: i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from

eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum
 5 auxiliū: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum,

lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. *

3. **populor**, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4.

4. **dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. *

5. **auxiliū**, -li, *n.* [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. *

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut** . . . *ita*, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita**, not so very, not very; *ita* . . . **ut**, just . . . as; so . . . that. *

mereō, and **mereor**, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (*i.e.* earn pay). 3.

6. **paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost. * **cōspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [cōspiciō, look at], sight, view; presence. *

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3.

liberī, -ōrum, *m.*, [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. *

7. **servitūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. *

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. 1.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. *

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. *

8. **Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ām-bārri), clients of the Haeduī. 2.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with **tempus**, critical; as *noun*, kinsman, friend. *

cōsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as *noun*, kinsman, relative. 3.

that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been at least fifty miles in length, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing p. 42.

3. **cum possent**: causal.

suaque, "and their property."

4. **rogātum**: form and use? App. 295: G.-L. 435, n. 3: A. 509: B. 340, 1, a: H.-B. 618, a: H. 632, 1; 633.

5. **omnī tempore**, "on every occasion."

meritōs esse depends on the idea of "saying" which is implied in **rogātum**. About sixty years before, the Haeduī had been called "brothers" of the Roman people, and ever since that time their relations with Rome had been friendly; but we do not know that they had ever been of assistance to Rome.

6. **ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint**, "that their lands ought not to have been devastated." **dēbuerint**: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 527, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

nostrī = Rōmānī. It agrees with **exercitiūs**.

Caesarem certiorem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns 10 Rhodanum vicōs possēssiōnēsque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūptis, in Santonōs Helvētii pervenīrent.

15

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et

9. dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [populor, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. 2.

10. hostis, -is, *m., f.*, (public) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. *

11. possēssiō, -ōnis, *f.* [possideō, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. 4.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; in fugam conicere or dare, put to flight. *

12. dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [mōnstrō, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. *

praeter, *prep. with acc.* [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. *

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. 1.

nihil, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing; with *gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at

all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat. *

13. exspectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. *

14. statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, *tr.* [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. *

fortūna, -ae, *f.* [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. *

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmsi, -sūmptum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. 3.

1. Arar, Araris (*acc. -im*), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ā/rar), the modern Saone. 4.

9. sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs, "that their lands had been laid waste and that they," etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobrogēs, quī ... habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north of the river and on the route of the Helvetii.

12. sibi nihil esse reliquī, "that to them there was nothing of a remainder" = "that they had nothing left." sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. reliquī is used as a noun and is a partitive genitive: App. 101, a: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 2, a: H.-B. 346, a: H. 440, 5, note.

13. quibus: use of relative? App.

173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

nōn expectandum (sc. esse) sibi, "that it was not to be waited by him" = "that he must not wait." expectandum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237. sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

14. dum pervenīrent, "until they should arrive."

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative of possessor

Relative instead of demonstrative

Chap. 12. Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rearguard of the Helvetii.

1. flūmen est Arar, "there is a river (named) the Arar."

Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibīlī lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs
 5 Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trāns-

2. **incrēdibīlis**, -e, *adj.* [*in* + *crēdibīlis*, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 4.

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [lēnis, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1.

3. **oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye. 3.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *gen. utrius* (App. 33), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one or which of two; (2) *as rel.*, the one who, of two, whichever. 1.

iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [iūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. *

4. **linter**, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2.

explōrātōr, -ōris, *m.* [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. *

6. **quārtus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quattuor, four], fourth. *

citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 3.

7. **vigilia**, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. *

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra**, **castrōrum**, fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** or **pōnere**, pitch camp; **castra movēre**, break up camp. *

2. **incrēdibīlī lēnitāte**, "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative.

ut possit: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

3. **in . . . fluat**. "in which direction it flows": mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

4. **ratibus**, **lintribus**: ablatives of means.

iūctīs modifies only *lintribus*.

trānsībant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.

5. **trēs . . . trādūxisse**, "that the Helveti had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb *trādūxisse* governs two objects,—*partēs* depending on the meaning of the simple verb *dūcō*, *flūmen* depending on the meaning of the preposition *trāns*: App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, b: B. 175, 2, a, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406.

6. **citrā**: i.e. on the east.

7. **dē tertiā vigiliā**, "just after (the beginning of the third watch)" = "just after midnight."

legiōnibus: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.

ierat. Eōs impeditōs et inōpinantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in 10 proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, 15 quae pars cīvitatīs Helvētiaē insignem calamitātem populō

9. **impeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impediō*, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. *

inopināns, -antis, *adj.* [*in*+*opīnāns*, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. 2. **aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [*ad*+*gradior*, step], advance to or against; attack. 4.

10. **concidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [*caedō*, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

mandō, 1, *tr.* [*manus*, hand+*dō*, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

11. **silva**, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. *

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [*dō*, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. *

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tig'ū-rī'nī). 2.

12. **nam**, *conj.*, for. *
quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, four. *

14. **interficiō**, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [*faciō*, make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

15. **sive** and **seu**, *conj.* [*sī*, if+*ve*, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sive** . . . **sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. *

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [*cadō*, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; **cāsū**, by chance. *

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, diī; *dat. pl.*, dis), *m.*, god, deity. 4.

immortalis, -e, *adj.* [*in*+*mortalis*, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. **insignis**, -e, *adj.* [*signō*, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. *

10. **mandārunt** = *mandāvērunt*: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

in silvās: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into,—"ran into and hid."

13. **cum exisset**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1. **exisset** = *exiisset*.

memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

14. **Cassium**, **subiugum**: cf. 7, 13, 14.

16. **quae pars** . . . **ea**, "that part which." Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

populō: the compound *inferō* governs the indirect object.

Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, 20 Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen 5 trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad

17. *persolvō*, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, *tr.* [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). 1.

18. *solum*, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. *

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; *n.* as noun, public, public view; *rēs pūblica*, common weal, state. *

sed, *conj.*, but, but yet (a stronger adverbative than *autem* or *at*). *

ulciscor, *ulciscī*, *ultus sum*, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. 3.

19. *socer*, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. 1.

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. 2.

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō),

17. *princeps persolvit*, "was the first to pay."

19. Note the accumulation of appositives, — *Pisōnis* with *socerī*, *Pisōnem* with *avum*, *lēgātum* with *Pisōnem*.

socerī: in the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in 6, 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58.

20. *quō Cassium*: the same verb *interfēcerant* belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of time

Result clause

Narrative cum clause

Chap. 13. The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.

killed in the defeat of Cassius's army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. 1.

2. *cōsequor*, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. *

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. 4.

3. *repentinus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. *

4. *vigintī* (XX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., twenty. *

aegrō, *adv.* [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, *aegrius*; *sup.*, *aegerrimē* (App. 40). 3.

1. *ut* would usually stand before *reliquās*.

2. *pontem faciendum cūrat*, "he had a bridge made": construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40.

in Ararī, "over the Arar."

4. *cum intellegent*, "since they saw," or better "seeing." The object of *intellegent* is *illum fēcisse*. *id* is the object of *fēcisse*. *ut trānsirent*, "(namely) the crossing of the river," is in apposition with *id*: mode? App. 229, a: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 4.

5. *lēgātōs*, "envoys."

eum mittunt; cuius lēgatiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, remi-
niscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristināe

6. Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (div/i-kō), an *Helvetian chieftain*. 2.

7. Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, see Cassius. 1.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (*conventum*); give, render (*grātiās*); plead (*causam* or *rem*); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. *

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.

7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

sī, *conj.*, if however, but if. 1.

10. persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. 2.

perseverō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. 1.

reminiscor, -i, *intr.* [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. 1.

11. vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; with militēs, veteran. *

incommodus, -i, *n.* [incommodus,

sī . . . faceret. "if . . . should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that *faceret* stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.

9. Helvētiōs is the subject of itūrōs and futūrōs.

eōs is the subject of esse.

ubi cōstituisset, "where he should have decided"="where he should decide" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore cōstituisset must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.

10. perseverāret stands for a future, like *faceret*, 1. 8.

reminiscerētur, "he should remember." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. et . . . et, "both . . . and."

incommodī: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.

virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret
 16 aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent

inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj. [*for pri-
 ustinus, from prior, former*], former, original; previous, preceding. 4.

12. imprōvisō, adv. [*imprōvisus, un-
 foreseen*], unexpectedly, without warn-
 ing. 1.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, tr.
 [*orior, arise*], rise against, assail, at-
 tack. *

13. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (App. 81),
tr. and intr.; *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; en-
 dure, suffer, support, withstand; re-
 ceive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*);
 offer, propose (*terms*); *graviter* or *mo-
 lestē ferre*, be annoyed or angry at;
pass. (*sometimes*) rush: *intr.* almost =
verb to be. *

14. magnopere, adv. [*magnus, great
 +opus, work*], with great labor; espe-
 cially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. *

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum,
tr. [*tribus, a tribe or division*], di-
 vide, distribute; attribute, assign, al-
 lot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of,
 render. 2.

**15. dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
 tum, tr.** [*speciō, look*], look down; look
 down upon, scorn, despise. 2.

maior, maius, adj. [*comp. of mag-
 nus, great*], greater (*in degree, size, time,
 etc.*); older, elder; *as noun*, **maiōrēs
 nātū**, elders, old men; **maiōrēs**, an-
 cestors. *

**16. discō, discere, didicī, —, tr. and
 intr.**, learn, be taught. 1.

dolus, -i, m., craft, trick, treach-
 ery. 2.

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. [*sedeō, sit*], a
 sitting or lying in wait; ambush, am-
 buscade, treachery; artifice, crafty
 device. *

17. nītor, nītī, nīxus sum, intr., rest
 or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, en-
 deavor. 1.

quārē, adv. [*quī, which + rēs, thing*],
 (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*,
 wherefore; on this account, there-
 fore. *

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum,
tr. [*mittō, send*], join, splice; commit
 (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust;
proelium committere, join or begin
 battle. *

cōsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, intr.
 [*sistō, stand*], take a stand or position,
 keep one's position, stand, form (*of
 soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; (*of
 ships*) ride at anchor; consist in, depend
 or rest on. *

350, c: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

12. quod adortus esset, "as to the
 fact that he had attacked."

**14. nē suae magnopere virtūti
 tribueret**, lit., "he should not greatly
 ascribe to his own prowess" = "he should
 not overrate his own prowess." For
 mode cf. *reminisceretur*, l. 10.

15. ipsōs, sē: i.e. the Helvetii.

16. ut contenderent: a result clause.
magis quam, "rather than."

dolō: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n.
 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

17. The meaning of the last sentence
 is, "Do not let the spot on which we
 stand become famous as the scene of
 your bloody defeat."

cōstitissent stands for a perfect *in-*

ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod s

18. interneciō, -ōnis, f. [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. 2.

nōmen, -inis, n., name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** with *gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine**, on his or their own account, personally. *

19. prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; **memoriā prōditum**, told in tradition, handed down. 2.

1. dubitātiō, -ōnis, f. [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. 1.

2. commemorō, 1, tr. [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. *

3. graviter, adv. [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; **graviter ferre**, take

to heart, be annoyed or vexed (*at*); **graviter premere**, press hard. *

meritum, -i, n. [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. 2.

4. accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; **accidit**, it happens. *

aliquis, -quid, and aliqui, -qua, -quod, indef. pron. [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; any one, anything, any. *

cōnsciū, -a, -um, adj. [sciō, know], conscious; aware. 1.

5. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one's guard; **obsidibus cavēre**, exchange hostages as security. 1.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. 1.

dicative: "where they had taken their stand" for "where we have taken our stand."

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive clause of result or fact

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. his: i.e. the envoys.

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause *quod . . . tenēret*.

minus dubitātiōnis, "less hesitation." **dubitātiōnis:** partitive genitive.

2. eās rēs: i.e. the defeat of Cassius.

3. eō . . . quō: case? App. 148, a: G.-L. 403: A. 414, a: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

meritō: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

4. quī sī, "now if they." Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun *populus*, but English prefers the plural.

iniūriae, "of wrong doing": case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote 1: H. 451, n. 2.

sibi, lit. conscious "to themselves," should not be expressed in translating.

5. nōn fuisse difficile, "it would not have been difficult."

eō, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause *quod . . . putāret*.

dēceptum: sc. *populum Rōmānum* . .

esse.

neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod
 10 Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *intr.* [obliviō, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* 1.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.

10. vexō, 1, *tr.* [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

6. commissum (*sc. quicquam . . . esse*), "that anything had been done."

ā sē, "by them"; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, "because of which they should be afraid." For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

7. timendum, lit. "that it must be feared" = "that they need fear": construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

quod sī, "but if."

contumēliae: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, b: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

8. vellet: the subject is still *populus Romanus*.

num posse, "they could not, could they," or simply "could they." This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.

11. victōria, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. *

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. *

insolenter, *adv.* [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.

12. diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; *comp.*, diūtius, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, diūtissimē, for the longest time. *

impūne, *adv.* [in-+poena, punishment], without punishment. 1.

admīror, 1, *tr.* [mīror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.

G.-L. 651, R. 1: A. 586: B. 315, 2: H.-B. 591, a: H. 642, 2.

iniūriarum depends on *memoriam*: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

quod, "the fact that." These are substantive *quod* clauses, in apposition with *iniūriarum*. In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

eō = *populō. Rōmānō.*

11. quod . . . admīrārentur are substantive *quod* clauses, subjects of *perlinēre*.

victōriā: i.e. the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

12. sē intulisse, "that they [the Helvetii] had inflicted."

eōdem pertinēre, "tended to the same result."

pertinere. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturni- 15
ōrem impunitatē concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus 20
suis institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuerint;

13. cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; cōnsuētus, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. *

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. *

14. commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō, change], a changing, change. 2. doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. 2.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1.

15. secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. *

interdum, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], long. 1.

16. impunitās, -tātis, *f.* [in+poena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1.

17. polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.* [prō+liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. *

19. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough+faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. 2.

21. instituō, -stituerē, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr. and intr.* [statuō, set up],

13. cōnsuēsse=cōnsuēvisse.

quō: for use see 8, 6.

14. doleant: so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfects and pluperfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb *respondit*. But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This usage, called *repraesentatio*, is due to the same desire for vividness which leads to the use of the historical present for a past tense. It is usually better to translate as if the regular past tenses were used, just as it is better to translate the historical present indicative by a past.

15. secundiōrēs rēs, "a considerable degree of prosperity"; diūturniōrem, "quite long." The comparative may often be rendered by such words as "too," "rather," "quite," all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. concedere depends on cōnsuēsse. cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the *tamen* which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

17. ab iis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

factūrōs: sc. sē . . . esse.

18. si Haeduīs: sc. satisfaciāt. ipsīs: i.e. the Haedui.

19. sēsē: i.e. Caesar.

eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter 5 faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō

set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **īnstitūtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. *

accipiō, -**cipere**, -**cēpi**, -**ceptum**, *tr.* [ad+**capiō**, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. *

22. **testis**, -**is**, *m. and f.*, witness. 2.

respōnsum, -**ī**, *n.* [**respondeō**, answer], reply, answer. 2.

23. **discedō**, -**cēdere**, -**cessi**, -**cessum**, *intr.* [**cēdō**, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with **ab** or **ex**). *

1. **posterus**, -**a**, -**um**, *adj.* [post, after], after, following, next; in *m. pl.* as noun, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, last. *

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence;

with **castra**, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. *

2. **equitātus**, -**ūs**, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. *

4. **praemittō**, -**mittere**, -**mīsi**, -**missum**, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before or in advance. *

5. **cupidē**, *adv.* [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2.

agmen, -**inis**, *n.* [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in **agmine**, on the march; **primum agmen**, the van; **novissimum** or **extrēmum agmen**, the rear. *

īnsequor, -**sequi**, -**secūtus sum**, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. *

aliēnus, -**a**, -**um**, *adj.* [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum**, debt; **aliēnissimī**, entire strangers. 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive

Ablative of agent

Ablative of cause

Ablative of degree of difference

Adversative cum clause

Chap. 15. The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.

1. **castra movent**, "march on." The map facing p. 42 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger

(Loire) and march down its valley.

2. **equitātum**: see Int. 48.

3. **quem coāctum habēbat**, "which he had collected," almost=*quem coēgerat*: App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

4. **quī videant**: a purpose clause. **quī** is plural, agreeing with the collective noun **equitātum**.

quās . . . faciant, "in what direction the enemy were marching." **faciant**: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

5. **cupidius**: cf. note on 14, 15.

locō: case? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

cum equitatū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudine equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn nūquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis 10 habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis, pābulatiōnibus, populatiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.* (*used rarely in sing.*), few; as *noun*, few persons or things. *

7. cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3.

quīngenti, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [quinque, five+centum, hundred], five hundred. 3.

8. eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. Then (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). Also, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). *

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quantō . . . tantō, *with comparatives*, see quantō. *

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. 2.

audācter, *adv.* [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *Comp.*, audācius; *sup.*, audācissimē. *

9. subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.

10. lacessō, -ere, -lvi, -lītum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. *

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; coeptus, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. *

11. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. 1.

rapina, -ae, *f.* [rapiō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. 1.

pābulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.

populatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.

12. circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. *

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [quinque, five+decem, ten], fifteen. *

6. paucī dē nostrīs, "a few of our men." The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

9. novissimō . . . lacessere, "to challenge our men to battle with their rearguard." Both agmine and proeliō are ablatives of means.

10. satis habēbat . . . prohibēre, "considered it sufficient . . . to keep." Caesar had never before commanded so

large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. ita utī, "in such a way that," introduces a result clause.

primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum
15 interesset.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent
pūblicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia
sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo
frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

14. amplus, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius, comp. as noun,** more, a greater number, a greater distance. *

quīnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quīnque, five], five each, five at a time, five. 1.
sēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., six each, six. 1.

15. intersum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present *at*, take part *in*; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference *or* an interval; **magnī interest**, it is of great importance. 3.

1. interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime. *

cotidiē, adv. [quot, how many + diēs, day], daily, every day. *

2. pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus, public],

14. primum: sc. agmen.

amplius is the subject of *interesset*.

quīnīs aut sēnīs, "five or six [each day]."

milibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of place

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haedui fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.

1. interim: i.e. during the fifteen days of marching.

Haeduōs frūmentum: for the two objects see App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a: A. 396: B. 173, 1, a: H.-B. 393, footnote: H. 411.

quod essent polliciti, "which [as he said] they had promised." This subor-

publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. 2.

flāgitō, 1, tr., demand. 1.

frīgus, -oris, n., cold weather, cold; *pl.*, **frīgora**, cold seasons. 1.

3. pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, tr., place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with castra*, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with in and abl.*, depend on, *in addition to above meanings.* *

modo, adv. [modus, measure], *with measure or limit*; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; *of time*, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also. *

4. mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe; early. 3.

pābulum, -i, n. [*cf.* pāscō, feed], fodder, provender. 2.

quidem, adv., indeed, at any rate, at

dinate clause employs the subjunctive to imply that Caesar made the statement in demanding the grain. It is indirect discourse; but, because there is no verb of saying and the clause does not depend on an accusative and infinitive, it is called "implied indirect discourse": App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, n.: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.

2. flāgitāre = flāgitābat. Note that its subject is a nominative. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 601.

3. sub septentrionibus, lit. "under the northern stars" = "toward the north."

4. frūmenta: the plural means grain standing in the fields.

mātūra nōn erant: it was now late in June.

pābuli: for the cavalry horses and

magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine 5
 Arari nāvibus subvexerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter
 ab Arari Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.
 Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōferri, comportāri, adesse
 dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē
 frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum 10
 principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in
 his Dīviciacō et Liscō, quī summō magistratūi praeerat, quem

least, truly; on the other hand; nē . . .
 quidem, not even. *

6. subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-
 tum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring or carry
 up; convey. 1.

7. āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,
 tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or
 away, turn aside; turn back, repulse;
 pf. part. as adj., with back turned. *

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (App. 82), tr.
 and intr. [ne-+volō, wish], not wish,
 be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōlī or
 nōlite, with inf. (App. 219), do not. *

8. cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collā-
 tum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or
 get together, collect, gather, carry,
 bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put

off, defer; compare; sē cōferre, be-
 take one's self, take refuge. *

comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry
 together, collect, bring. *

adsum, adesse, afful, intr. [sum, be.
 App. 77], be near or present, be at hand,
 appear. 3.

9. instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, intr.
 [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at
 hand, press on; threaten. 4.

10. mētior, mētīri, mēnsus sum, tr.,
 deal or measure out, distribute. 2.

convocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call to-
 gether, summon, assemble. 4.

12. Liscus, -ī, m., Liscus (līs'kūs), a
 chief magistrate of the Haedui. 4.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of supe-

pack animals. The cattle of the Hel-
 vetii had swept the country clean.

5. frūmentō ūtī: case? App. 145:
 G.-L. 407; A. 410; B. 218, 1; H.-B. 429; H.
 477.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389:
 A. 429, a; B. 218, 9; H.-B. 426, a; H. 476.

6. nāvibus, "in ships," is an ablative
 of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p.
 42.

8. diem: accusative of duration of
 time.

dūcere, "put him off," is an historical
 infinitive.

cōferri, comportāri, adesse (sc.
 frūmentum) are the objects of the his-
 torical infinitive dicere.

9. ubi intellēxit: mode? App. 237:
 G.-L. 561; A. 543; B. 287, 1; H.-B. 554; 557;
 H. 602.

sē diūtius dūcī, "that he was being
 put off too long."

quō diē, "on which." Cf. 6, 1.

10. frūmentum mētīri oportēret,
 lit. "for him to measure out grain was
 right"="he had to distribute grain."
 This was done twice a month. oportē-
 ret: subordinate clause in indirect dis-
 course. Its subject is frūmentum
 mētīri.

convocātis principibus, "summon-
 ing," etc. Remember that the ablative
 absolute must not be translated liter-
 ally.

12. Dīviciacō et Liscō: in apposi-
 tion with principibus.

summō . . . praeerat, "held the high-
 est office."

quem vergobretum: for the two ob-
 jects see App. 126: G.-L. 340; A. 392;
 B. 177, 1; H.-B. 392, a; H. 410, 1.

vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris adductus quod

rus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. *

praesum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesens, *pres. part. as adj.*, present, in person; for the present. *

13. vergobretus, *41, m.*, vergobret (vēr'gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haeduī. 1.

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. 1.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], yearly. 1.

vita, -ae, *f.* [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. 4.

14. nex, necis, *f.*, violent death, death, execution. 1.

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; potestātem facere, grant permission, give a chance. *

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [ad+causa, cause, case],

bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. 2.

15. emō, emere, emī, emptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. 2.

16. propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *pl. as noun*, relatives. *

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. 3.

17. praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially. *

prex, precis, *f.* (*in sing. only in dat., acc., and abl.*) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. 2.

18. dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1.

19. queror, querī, questus sum, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. *

1. tum, *adv.*, then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also, cum... tum, both... and, not only... but also. *

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. 3.

14. in suōs, "over his fellow-citizens."

quod nōn sublevētur, "because [as he said] he was not aided." This is another case of implied indirect discourse: cf. 1. 1, and see App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 649, I.

15. posset: sc. frumentum.

16. tempore may be either ablative absolute or ablative of time; hostibus is an ablative absolute.

17. With praesertim, cum is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, "in great part."

18. quod sit dēstitūtus: cf. 1. 14.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of the way (route)

Ablative with ūtor, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haeduī is working against the Romans.

1. Supply id as the antecedent of quod and the object of prōpōnit.

anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: 5 Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īdem nostra

2. *anteā*, *adv.* [ante, before+eā, this], formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* 2.

taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence; *tacitus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. 3.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. *

3. *valeō*, 2, *intr.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence, or strength; *plūrimum valēre*, be very powerful. * *privātīm*, *adv.* [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 1.

4. *sēditiōsus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēditiō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+probus, good], unprincipled. 1.

5. *dēterrēō*, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 3.

7. *perferō*, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. *

dubitō, 1, *intr.* [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. *

8. *superō*, 1, *tr. and intr.* [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; *vītā superāre*, survive. *

9. *libertās*, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. *

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

3. *valeat*: for tense see note on 14, 14.

quam magistrātūs: the ablative without *quam* might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, a: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

4. *improbā*, "reckless."

5. *dēterrēre nē cōferant*, "were preventing . . . from bringing."

6. *praestāre . . . sint ēreptūrī*, "(saying) that it was better," etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' *sēditiōsa ōrātiō*. The subject of *praestāre* is *perferre*.

sī (sc. *Haeduī*) *iam obtinēre nōn pos-*

sint, "if they could no longer hold." The Haedui claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. *neque* (sc. *sē*) *dubitāre*, "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."

8. *quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī*, "that they would wrest from the Haedui." *Haeduīs*: dative with the compound verb of separation: App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, a: H.-B. 371: H. 429, 2. *sint ēreptūrī*: form? App. 75: G.-L. 129: A. 194, a: B. 115: H.-B. 162: H. 236. Mode? App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, a: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

superāverint, "should conquer," is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

ūnā: the adverb.

co cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enūtiārī. Hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse; quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī enūtiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciācī frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā,

11. coërcēō, 2, *tr.* [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1.

necessariō, *adv.* [abl. of necessarius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. *

12. quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. quam, how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; quantum, *as adv.*, as much as, as; quantō . . . tantō (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. *

2. dēsīgnō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. 4.

3. iactō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

celeriter, *adv.* [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, celerius; *sup.*, celerrimē (App. 40). *

10. Supply *ea* as the antecedent of *quae* and as one of the subjects of *enūtiārī*.

11. sē: i.e. Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coactus, "under compulsion."

quantō . . . fēcerit is an indirect question, the object of *intellegere*.

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.

concilium, -li, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. *

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. *

4. retineō, 2, *tr.* [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder, detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve maintain. *

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. *

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlius (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. *

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

5. liberē, *adv.* [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

6. reperīō, reperire, repperī, repperit, *tr.* [re-+pariō, procure], pro-

2. plūribus praesentibus, "when many were present."

4. ex sōlō, "from him in private." Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. 16, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a, R. 1: A. 396, a: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, c: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vēra, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by.

magnæ apud plēbem propter liberālitatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud

*cure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. **

vērūs, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vēri similis, likely, probable. 4.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.

7. liberālitās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2.

8. portōrium, -rī, n., toll, tariff on imports or exports. 2.

9. vectīgal, -ālis, n. [vectīgālis, tributary], tax, tribute; pl., revenues. 2.

pretium, -tī, n., price. 2

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmtum, tr. [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3

10. liceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). 2.

contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., against him or them; on the other

*hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing. **

*audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. **

*nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [ne-+homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. **

11. familiāris, -e, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; as noun, intimate friend; rēs familiāris, personal property, estate. 4.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.

largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 1.

12. sūmptus, -ūs, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. 1.

semper, adv., always, ever, continually. 3.

13. alō, alere, alui, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

the indirect discourse which follows.

ipsum esse Dumnorigem, "that Dumnorix was the very man" or "that it was, in fact, Dumnorix." By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in 4, 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.

summā audāciā, "(a man) of the utmost recklessness." For case see App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

8. rērum: case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 450.

portōria . . . redēpta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed

them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.

9. parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. For case see App. 147: G.-L. 404: A. 416: B. 225: H.-B. 427, 1: H. 478.

redēpta habēre: differs how from *redēmissee*? App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

10. illō licente, "when he bid."

12. comparāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

13. domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā
 15 mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō
 collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre
 et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre
 et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō
 20 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia
 atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, sum-
 mam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō
 populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam
 habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

14. largiter, *adv.* [largus, large], largely, freely, much; largiter posse, to have great influence. 1.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. 2.

15. mātēr, -tris, *f.* mother; mātres familiae, matrons. 3.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bīt'ū-rī'jēz). 1.

illīc, *adv.* [ille, that], in that place, there. 1.

16. collocō, 1, *tr.* [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; nūptum collocāre, to give in marriage. *

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 3.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. 2.

17. nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. 1.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, favor. 1.

18. cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum,

tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. *

affinitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. 2.

ōdi, ōdisse (App. 86), *tr., pf.* with meaning of pres., hate, detest. 2.

20. dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1.

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 2.

21. honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. 3.

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [re+statuō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4.

24. dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; dēspērātus, *as part.*, from transitive meaning, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. *

14. causā: see vocabulary.

16. collocāsse: sc. nūptum.

ipsum: i.e. Dumnorix. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix: cf. 3, 15.

sorōrem ex mātre, "sister on his mother's side"; i.e. his half-sister.

17. nūptum: construction? App. 295; G.-L. 435; A. 509; B. 340, 1, b; H.-B. 618; H. 632; 633, 1.

in cīvitātēs: the accusative implies "sent them into and caused them to be married there."

18. Helvētiīs: indirect object with verbs meaning to favor.

19. nōmine: ablative of cause.

20. dēminūta: sc. sit.

21. sī quid: why quid? App. 174; G.-L. 315; A. 310, a; B. 91, 5; H.-B. 276, 1; H. 186.

summam in spem venīre, "he entertained the highest hopes."

22. imperiō, "under the sovereignty": case? App. 142, b; G.-L. 399; B. 221; H.-B. 422, 1; H. 474, 1.

Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam. equitatu quem auxilio Caesari Haedu miserant Dumnorix praeerat); eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Haeduorum

25. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. *

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* advertō, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō flumine, up the river; in adversum os, full in the face. *

29. perterreo, 2, *tr.* [terreo, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. *

1. cognoscō, -noscere, -novi, -ni-

tum, *tr.* [co+(g)noscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). *

2. accedō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cedō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; accedebat, it was added. *

4. iniussu, *abl. of* iniussus, -us, *m.* [iubeō, order], without command or order. 1

5. insciēns, -entis, *adj.* [in+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. 1.

25. quod... esset factum, "as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought," etc.="as to the... engagement which," etc. See 15, 5-7.

paucis ante diebus, *lit.* "before by a few days"="a few days before." diebus is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb ante.

27. auxilio Caesari, "as an aid to Caesar." For the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms

Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. cum certissimae res accede-

rent, "since the most clearly proven facts were added." These facts are stated in the following quod clauses, which are in apposition with res. For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.

2. quod traduxisset; kind of clause? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663: A. 593: B. 324, 2: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. quod... curasset, *lit.* "that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them"="that he had caused hostages to be exchanged." eds=Helvetios et Sequanos.

dandos: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 605, 2; 612, III: H. 622.

4. suo=Caesaris.

5. ipsis: i.e. Caesar and the Haedu.

accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē
 10 voluntatē, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognō-
 verat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem
 15 suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō

7. animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [animus, mind + ad + vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere *in*, punish. *

8. repugnō, 1, *intr.* [re- + pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2.

9. studium, -dī, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. *

10. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē + grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. 2.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. 2.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. 1.

11. supplicium, -cī, *n.* [sub + plicō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. 4.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum,

tr. [ob + fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. 1.

12. vereor, verēri, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. *

priusquam or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. *

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person or thing. *

13. vocō, 1, *tr.* [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. 3.

interpretes, -etis, *m., f.*, interpreter; mediator. 1.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [re- + moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw, remōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. 4.

14. Valerius, -rī, *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs va-lē'rī-ūs trū-sil'ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. *

6. causae: partitive genitive with satis, which is used as a noun.

quārē animadverteret, "why he should punish." For mode see App. 230, c; G.-L. 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.

8. ūnum, "one thing," is explained by its appositive, the clause quod cognōverat.

9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and cf. the note on 1, 3.

10. cognōverat, lit. "had learned" = "knew."

11. nē offenderet, "that he should offend." Meaning of nē, and mode? App.

228, b; G.-L. 550, 1, 2; A. 564; B. 296, 2; H.-B. 502, 4; H. 567, 1.

eius: i.e. Dumnorix.

12. priusquam . . . cōnārētur, "before he ventured on anything."

13. per . . . colloquitur: English order, colloquitur cum eō per etc.

14. prīncipem: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.

15. cui . . . habēbat, "in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters." cui: case? App. 115, a; G.-L. 346, n. 5; A. 367, a, n. 2; H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b.

colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt, vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

20

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statuaret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, 5

16. colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, intr. [con-+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. *

simul, adv., at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul... simul,** both... and, partly... partly; **simul atque,** as soon as. *

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac-tum, tr. [moneō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. 1.

17. sēparātīm, adv. [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. 2.

18. petō, -ere, -ivī or -īl, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain,

16. quae sint dicta, quae dixerit: indirect questions

ipsō: i.e. Diviciācus.

18. ut... statuāt, "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciācus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorix]."

THIRD REFERENCE:

Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciācus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. complexus: probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.

2. nēquid: why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L.

strive after; ask, request, beseech. *
hortor, 1, tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *

19. offēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [offendō, hurt], offense. 1.

1. lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 2.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, tr. [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.

2. obsecrō, 1, tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). *

sciō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, understand. *

5. adulēscēntia, -ae, f. [adulēs-

315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.
gravius, "too severe."

scīre: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in *obsecrāre*. The direct form is given after Book VII.

3. nec quemquam, "and that no one."

eō: i.e. Dumnorix.

capere, "felt."

4. ipse: i.e. Diviciācus. It is the subject of *posset*, to be supplied from the next clause.

domī: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

5. minimum posset, "had very little influence." Supply *cum* from the preceding clause.

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amorē frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commoveri. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum
 10 locum amicitiae apud eum toneret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēdit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandi faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit

cēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. 1.
 6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow or increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*), swell. 1.

ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. 3.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. 1.

7. minūō, minuire, minui, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōversias); minuyente aestū, the tide ebbing. 3.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.* [*cf. nex*, death], ruin, destruction. 2.

8. amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō, love], love. 1.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter,

brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2.

existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. 1.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3.

12. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. 3.

flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. 4.

13. dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc. manus*], the right hand. 1.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsūm, *tr.*, seize, grasp. 1.

cōsōlor, 1, *tr.* [sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort. 1.

14. ōrō, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3.

6. sē: i.e. Diviciacus. He said *per mē*, "by my help."

opibus: ablative with *ūteretur*.

7. suam refers to Diviciacus.

8. sēsē: i.e. Diviciacus.

9. quod sī, lit. "as to which, if": *quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with *sī* it has become a mere connective, and is translated "and," "but," "now," etc.

accidisset stands for an original future perfect.

ipse: i.e. Diviciacus.

eum, "such."

10. eum: i.e. Caesar.

11. suā refers to Diviciacus.

voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

futūrum (*sc. esse*) uti... āverteren-

tur, lit. "It would be that... would be turned from him." This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which very rarely occurs. uti āverterentur is a substantive clause of result.

12. ā Caesare: the usual construction after verbs of asking, instead of a second accusative.

13. rogat (*sc. ut*) faciat, "he asked him to make." In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may *ut* be omitted? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 565, 4.

14. tantī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.

utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac 15
precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet;
quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae
cīvītās querātūr prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus
omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī con-
dōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, 20
quibuscum loquātūr, scire possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub
monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō, quālis

16. condōnō, 1, *tr.* [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. 4.

17. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [re-+prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticise, blame, censure. 1.

18. moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. 3.

19. vitō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. 3.

praetereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

omit; praeteritus, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun.* the past. 1.

20. custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. 2.

21. loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. *

2. cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sīdō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. *

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., eight. *

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, or nature? 2.

15. utī condōnet; a result clause.

voluntātī, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of *condōnet*.

17. quae reprehendat: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II. *

20. Dumnorīgī: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedui in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Use of the indefinite quis

Dative of reference

Construction with verbs of asking, etc.

Indirect question

Chap. 21-22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.

Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 15.

1. *sub monte*: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.

2. *milia*: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of *cognōscerent*.

esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā
 5 vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus
 legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum
 montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili sit ostendit. Ipse dē
 quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit
 equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī
 10 militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et
 postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

3. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4.

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 2.

5. praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. 1.

6. dux, ducis, *m.* [ducō, lead], leader, guide, commander. *

7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+scandō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 2.

9. P., *abbr. for Pūlius, a Roman praenomen.* 2.

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pūb'li-ūs kōn-sid'i-ūs), one of Caesar's officers. 3.

10. militāris, -e, *adj.* [mīles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. *

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. 2.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. 1.

11. postea, *adv.* [post, after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs, li-sin'i-ūs krās'-ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. 2.

3. in circuitū, "in going around [behind] it."

quī cognōscerent mīsit, "he sent (men) to learn."

4. facilem esse: sc. ascēsum.

dē tertiā vigiliā: see on 12, 7.

5. lēgātum prō praetōre, "lieutenant with the powers of a general"; i.e. he was temporarily given special independent powers. Labienus was Caesar's most competent and most trusted officer. cum iīs ducibus, "with those men as guides."

7. quid . . . sit, *lit.*, "what is of his plan" = "what his plan was"; namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar

should attack them at the same moment. cōsili is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quārtā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A.M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.

9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.

reī militāris, "in military matters": case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, i.

10. Sullae: cf. Int. 6.

11. in M. Crassī, "in (that) of Marcus

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīgentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā

1. lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. 3.

3. captivus, -ī, *m.* [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. 4.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

4. equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. *

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (*a horse*). 3.

5. accurrō, -currere, -curri or -eucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. 2.

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. *

7. collis, -is, *m.*, hill. *

8. subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with nāvēs, haul up, beach. 3.

aciēs, -ēi (*old gen.*, aciē), *f.*, sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line; prima, the van; media, the center; novissima, the rear. *

instruō, -struere, -struxi, -struatum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up *in battle array*; equip, furnish. *

praecipio, -cipere, -cépi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. 1.

Crassus." In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Genitive with adjectives

Chap. 22. Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.

1. summus mōns, "the top of the mountain." For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e. Caesar.

passibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

3. ut, "as."

4. Labiēni, "that of Labienus." See on 21, 11.

cognitus esset: the force of *cum* still continues.

equō admissō, "at full gallop."

7. insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.

8. aciem instruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

ut... praeceptum, lit. "as it had been directed to him" = "as he had been directed." Intransitive verbs can not be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. ei: case? App. 116, c: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope
 10 hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
 impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque
 abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit
 et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōn-
 sidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi
 15 renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur
 et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat
 cum exercitui frūmentum mētīri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,

9. nisi, conj. [ne-+sī, if], if not, except, unless. *

prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. *

11. impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. *

12. abstinēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, intr. [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. 1.

dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. 3.

14. timor, -ōris, m. [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. *

15. intervāllum, -i, n. [vāllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. *

1. postridiē, adv. [posterus, following+diēs, day], on the day following, the next day; **postridiē eius diēi**, on the next or following day. *

bīduum, -i, n. [bis, twice+diēs, day], space or period of two days. two days. 2.

superum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. *

2. Bibracte, -is, n. (Cef), Bibracte (bibrāk'tē), the chief town of the Haedui. 2.

9. nē committeret: a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, subject of *erat praeceptum*.

nisi visae essent: mode? App. 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 1: B. 323: H.-B. 536, a: H. 649, I. The pluperfect stands for an original future perfect.

ipsius=Caesaris.

10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.

11. proeliō: ablative of separation.

12. multō diē, "late in the day."

14 timōre perterritum, "panic-stricken." This was probably due in part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic prowess that prevailed in the Roman army.

quod ... renūntiāvisse, "had reported to him what he had not seen as if seen." **visō** is a participle used as a noun.

15. quō ... intervāllō=eō intervāl-lō quō sequi cōsuērat. For case see App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3. According to 15, 14, the distance was five or six miles.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of comparison

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the Helvetii in a great battle and forces the survivors to return home.

Chap. 23. Caesar marches toward Bibracte to secure grain, and is followed by the Helvetii.

2. cum ... oportēret, "(before the time) when he would have to distribute grain to the army." See on 16, 10. The peculiar *cum* clause is best explained by H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: now Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun.

oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

3. cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], wellsupplied, wealthy. 1.

4. duodēvigintī (XVIII), *card. num. adj.* [duo, two+de, from+vigintī, twenty], eighteen. 4.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *intr.* [speciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. 1.

6. fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō, flee], fleeing; *as noun*, runaway slave. 1.

Aemilius, -li, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mil'i-ūs). 1.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. 1.

4. milibus; ablative of comparison.

rei... prōspiciendum, "that he must look out for supplies." Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. prōspiciendum; construction? App. 285, II, a; G.-L. 251, 1; A. 194, b; B. 337, 7, b, 1; H.-B. 600, 3; 162; H. 237.

5. itaque... contendit: he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 104 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.

Bibracte: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1, a; H.-B. 450; H. 418.

9. prīdiē, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. 3.

10. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera, block. *

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fusus sum, *intr.* [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; cōnfisus, *pf. part.* with present meaning, relying on. *

11. commūtō, 1, *tr.* [mutō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. 2.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn

8. existimārent, commississent, cōnfiderent; mode? App. 244; 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b; A. 592, 3; B. 286, 1; 323; H.-B. 535, 2, a; H. 588, II; 649, I.

eō magis quod, "all the more because." eō is an ablative of cause.

9. quod... commississent: the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.

10. sive eō, "or for this reason."

interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans) could be cut off"; i.e. by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.

11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature

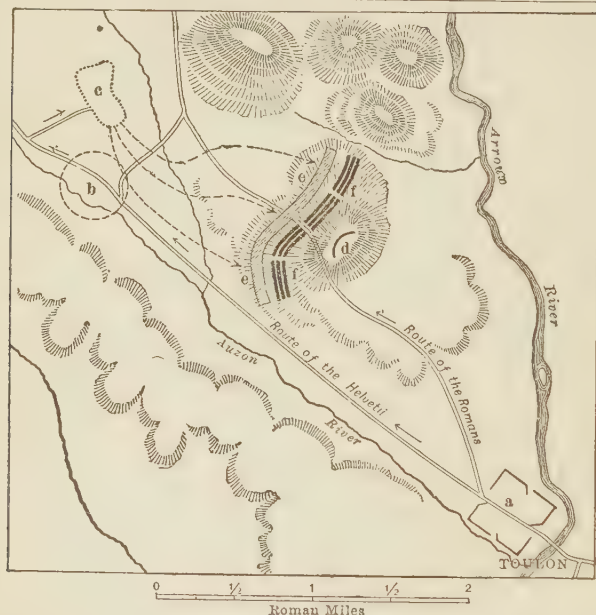
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium

completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; signa convertere, face about.*

1. postquam, conj. [post, afterwards]

+quam, than], after, as soon as. 4.

2. sustineō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)s+teneō, hold], hold up from below; hold



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

- a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
- b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
- c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
- d, Roman fortification (24, 8).
- e, The Helvetii.
- f, The Romans.

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, "on the rear." See on 1, 15.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of place to which

Implied indirect discourse

Passive periphrastic conjugation

Chap. 24. Caesar prepares for battle and the Helvetii advance.

1. animadvertit: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

2. quī ... sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.

impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtū montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub primam aciem successērunt.

up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. *

3. **medius, -a, -um, adj.**, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; **locus medius utriusque**, a place midway between the two. *

triplex, -icis, adj. [trēs, three + plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. 4.

4. **veterānus, -a, -um, adj.** [vetus, old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. 1.

5. **proximē, adv.** [proximus, last], last; lately. 4.

6. **compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, tr.** [obsolete, pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. *

7. **sarcina, -ae, f.**, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). 3.

3. **in colle mediō**, "half-way up the hill." For the meaning of the adjective see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

triplicem aciem: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

4. **legiōnum quattuor veterānārum**: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (cf. 7, 5), and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (cf. 10, 9).

5. **quās... cōscripserat**: cf. 10, 8. Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. **auxilia**: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

8. **mūniō, 4, tr.**, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnitus, pf. part. as adj.**, fortified, defended, protected. *

9. **impedimentum, -i, n.** [impediō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). *

10. **cōfertus, -a, -um, adj.** [pf. part. of cōferciō, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. 4.

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [re- + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. 4.

11. **phalanx, -ngis, f.**, a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [sub- + cēdō, go], go or come under;

collocārī, complērī, cōferri, mūniri: all depend on *iussit*.

7. **sarcinās**: see Int. 37. **eum**: sc. *locum*.

iīs... cōstiterant: i.e. the two new legions.

8. **mūniri**: the location of the battlefield was long uncertain, but in 1886 excavations were made on one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semi-circular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 104. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

9. **in ūnum locum**: marked c on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. **phalange**: in the phalanx for-

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilīs missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnē ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset,

come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

1. primum, adv. [primus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum primum, or ubi primum,** as soon as; **quam primum,** as soon as possible, very soon. *

deinde, adv. [dē+inde, thence], there-upon, then, next. *

2. aequō, 1, tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1.

3. cohortor, 1, tr. [co+hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. *

4. pilum, -ī, n., heavy javelin, pike. *

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāc-

tum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. 1.

disiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.

5. gladius, -dī, m. sword. *
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). 1.

6. pugna, -ae, f. [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae,** method of fighting. *

scūtum, -ī, n., shield, buckler; *oblong, convex (3½×4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim.* *

7. ictus, -ūs, m., stroke, blow. 1.
trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.

mation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. suō: sc. *equō remōtō*.

omnium; i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. aequātō periculō, "by making the danger equal."

3. cohortātus suōs: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

ē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. pilīs: see Int. 36, a.

5. gladiis: see Int. 36, b.

Gallis impedimentō: for the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3; A. 382, 1; B. 191, 2, b; H.-B. 360, b; H. 433, 2.
6. quod . . . poterant is the subject of *erat*. For mode see App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1; A. 572; B. 299, 1, a; H.-B. 552, 1; H. 588, II, 3.

plūribus . . . colligātis: remember that the shields overlapped.

7. cum inflexisset: mode? App. 242, b; G.-L. 567, n.; A. 542; 518, c; B. 238, 3 a; H.-B. 540; H. 601, 4.

neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus 10 dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus

[figō, fix], thrust *or* pierce through, transfix. 1.

colligō, 1, *tr.* [con+ligō, bind], bind *or* fasten together. 1.

ferrum, -i, *n.*, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear-point. 1.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [flectō, bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. 2.

8. ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus)*, the left hand; sub sinistrā, on the left. 4.

commodē, *adv.* [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily. *

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often impers.*, as pugnātur, it is fought, i.e. they fight. *

9. brachium, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. 1.

praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. 1.

10. manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-hook;

8. ēvellere: supply *pila* as the object. sinistrā: the shield was held with the left hand.

9. multī is put before *ut* for emphasis.

iactātō brachiō, "after throwing their arms about," in the effort to shake out the javelins, and so tear the shields apart.

10. corpore: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

11. mōns . . . spatiō, lit. "a moun-

dare manūs, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. *

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], let go, send out *or* forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2.

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (*dead*) body. *

tandem, *adj.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis*, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? 3.

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound. *

11. dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of dēfescor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3.

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.* [re+ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry, *or* bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātiā referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. *

subsum, -esse, -fuī, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand. 2.

12. eō, *adv.* [*old dative of is*], thither, there (*in sense of thither*), to the place (*where, etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.). *

tain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile"="there was a mountain about a mile away."- passuum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, 5: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. spatiō: ablative of degree of difference.

12. eō: the adverb.

captō monte, "when they had reached the mountain."

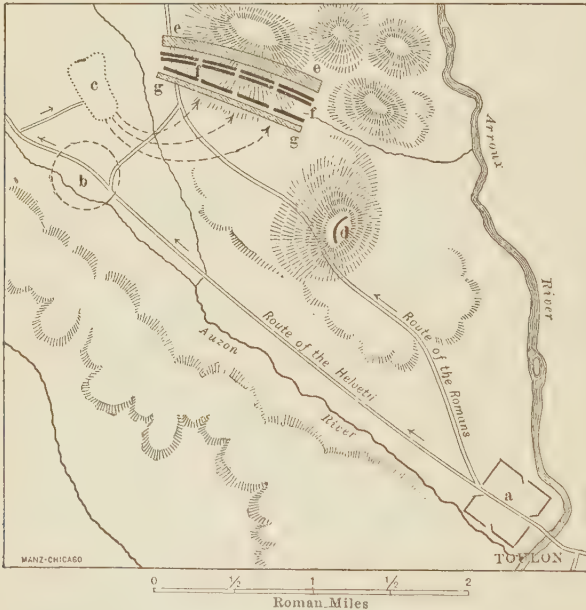
13. quī . . . claudēbant: they had formed the van of the Helvetian army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-

circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō
 erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenīre,

14. **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, tr.**, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line, bring up the rear. 4.

15. **latus, -eris, n.**, side; wing or flank of an army. *

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of aperiō*], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō**, on the unprotected flank. * **circumvenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-tum, tr.** [*veniō, come*], come or get



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.

- a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
- b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
- c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
- d, Roman fortification (24, 8).
- e, The Helvetii.
- f, The Romans.
- g, The Boii and Tulingi.

ly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. **ex itinere**: i.e. they went

straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e. the right flank for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and

et id cōspiciātī Helvētīī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertiā, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēperunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. *

16. cōspicor, 1, *tr.* [speciō, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. rūrsus, *adv.* [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. *

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [red-+integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

18. signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; **ab signis discēdere**, withdraw from the ranks; **signa inferre**, advance to the attack; **signa conversa inferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance on the march; direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face or wheel about; **ad signa convenire**, join the army. *

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (*circumvenire*) to the more advantageous position. **circumvenire** depends on *coepērunt*, to be supplied from l. 17.

18. conversa . . . intulērunt, lit. "carried forward in two directions their turned standards" = "faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. **signa**: see Int. 44.

prīma et secunda aciēs; **tertiā** (*sc. aciēs*): in apposition with *Rōmānī*.

19. victīs ac submōtīs = *Helvētīūs*. **venientēs** = *Bōiōs et Tulingōs*.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Ablative of manner

Substantive quod clause

bipertītō, *adv.* [bis, twice+partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 1.

19. vincō, vincere, vici, victum, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. *

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. 2.

resistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, intr. [re-+sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. *

1. anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. 1.

ācritēr, *adv.* [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **āccrimē** (App. 40). *

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. ancipitī: i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boii and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. alterī . . . alterī, "the one body [the Helvetii] . . . the other [the Boii and Tulingi]."

3. ut coeperant: see 25, 12.

4. nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."

5 hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem
vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta
pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē
locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn
10 nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant
nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedi-
mentīs castrīsque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque
ūnus ē filiīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia
CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam

5. hōra, -ae, f., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* *
vesper, -erī, m., evening; sub ves-
perum, towards evening. 3.

6. nox, noctis, f., night; medianox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. *

7. vāllum, -ī, n. [vāllus, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. *

obi-ciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; obiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. 2.

8. coniciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together logically, conjecture; in fugam conicere, put to flight. *

9. raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels. 2.

matarā, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. 1.

trāgula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. 1.

subiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. 3.

10. vulnerō, i, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. *

13. trīgintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [trēs, three], thirty. *

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllō, "as a rampart."

ē locō superiōre: i.e. from the tops of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, "kept throwing." The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

milia CXXX superfuērunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by

the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

13. nocte: case? App. 152, a: G.-L. 393, R. 2: A. 424, b: B. 231, 1: H.-B. 440: H. 417, 2.

nūllam...pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 42 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.

partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepul- 15
tūram occisōrum, nostrī triduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuis-
sent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē cōs
frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem
locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse triduō intermissō cum
omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

20

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē
dēditionē ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-
vērissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī
flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent
suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam 5

14. intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. *

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (ling'gō-nēz). 4.

15. sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. 1.

16. triduum, -ī, *n.* [trēs, three+diēs, day], three days. *

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. *

17. littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in *pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. *

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; mes-

sage, news, report. *

18. nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), *conj.* [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. 3.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. 3.

1. inopia, -ae, *f.* [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. *

2. dēditō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], capitulation. *

3. prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; sē prōicere, cast one's self; jump. 4.

suppliciter, *adv.* [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. 1.

5. pārēō, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* pariō, bring

14. partem: accusative of duration of time.

diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning, the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."

15. cum: causal.

17. nē iuvārent, "(ordering them) not to assist." The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive volitive clause: App. 267; G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

18. iūvissent stands for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

sē ... habitūrum: i.e. he should treat them as enemies.

19. quō Helvētiōs: sc. habēret.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. 27. Surrender of the Helvetii. Six thousand escape.

2. quī cum, "when they."

4. essent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quō nunc estis*, "where you [the Helvetii as a whole, not the envoys] now are."

5. iussisset: supply *Caesar* as the subject.

postquam pervēnit: mode and tense

Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitudine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs

forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. 1.

6. servus, -ī, m., slave, servant. 1. **perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum,** *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. 1.

7. poscō, poscere, poposci, —, tr., ask, demand request, require. 3.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2.

8. sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. *

Verbigenus, -ī, m. (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bij'ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. 1. **9. trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr.** [trāns+dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. *

App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

6. servōs: fugitive slaves from the Roman army. See 23, 6.

perfūgissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quī ad vōs perfūgērunt*, "who have fled to you."

7. dum ea conquīruntur, "while these were being sought out." For mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, 1: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

ea=obsidēs, arma, servōs.

9. timōre nē supplicio afficerentur, "by the fear that they would be punished"; lit. "be treated with punishment." For the meaning of *nē*, see App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A.

10. salūs, salūtis, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). *

11. dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; *as noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. 4.

occultō, 1, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1.

ignōrō, 1, tr. [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. 1.

12. ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. *

1. resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, tr. [re-+sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. 1.

564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

perterritī agrees with *mīlia*, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.

12. primā: for translation, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Adjectives with partitive meaning

Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.

Chap. 28. The six thousand are retaken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.

1. rescit=rescivit.

hīs is the antecedent of *quōrum* and the indirect object of *imperāvit*.

utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant 5 profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcīt, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter 10 bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs,

2. redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *tr.* [re-+dūcō, lead], lead *or* bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. *

pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; pūrgātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. 2.

4. perfuga, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3.

5. unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. *

6. frūx, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. 1.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. *

7. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. 1.

tolerō, 1, *tr.* [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with famem, appease, alleviate. 1.

9. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause; reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. *

10. vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty *or* unoccupied; lie waste. 4.

11. bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. 1.

2. sī vellent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *sī vultis*, "if you wish."

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. in...habuit: i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.

4. in dēditiōnem accēpit: this act made them subjects of Rome.

6. domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

7. quō tolerārent: mode? App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2.

ut iīs facerent, "to provide them with."

8. ipsōs: i.e. the Helvetii and their allies.

ipsōs restituere is the object of *iussit*. The object of *iubeō* is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of *imperō* is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in 1. 2.

9. eā maximē ratiōne, "chiefly for this reason," is explained by the *quod* clause.

13. prōvinciae Allobrogibusque, "the province and (especially) the Allo-

quod egregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis col-
 15 locārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea
 in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsi erant
 recēpērunt.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris
 Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis
 nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum
 quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot pueri, senēs,

16. **pār, parīs, adj.**, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; **pār atque**, the same as. *

condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. *

1. **tabula, -ae, f.**, board; tablet; list. 2.

2. **Graecus, -a, -um, adj.**, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl. as noun*, the Greeks. 1.

3. **nōminātim, adv.** [**nōminō**, name], by name; expressly; in detail. 3.

4. **quot, adj., indecl.**, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. 2.

puer, -erī, m., boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā pueris**, from childhood. *

senex, senis, adj., old; *as noun*, old man. 1.

broges"; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.

Bōiōs is the object of *collocārent*. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with *Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Lato- brigōs*, in l. 5.

Haeduīs: indirect object of *concessit*.

14. **ēgregiā virtūte**, "(men) of very great courage": a descriptive ablative.

ut collocārent is the object of *concessit*. The Boii had had no fixed home, as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier against the Germans.

15. **quibus, quōs**: the antecedent is *Bōiōs*.

16. **parem... atque ipsi erant**, lit. "equal... as they themselves were (in)" = "the same... as they themselves enjoyed."

THIRD REFERENCE:

The locative

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. **tabulae**, "lists," written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces thinly coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed *stylus*.

litteris Graecis: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. **quibus in tabulis**, "in which."

3. **ratiō**, "an account."

quī exisset: indirect question.

4. **quī possent**: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 569.

pueri, senēs, mulierēsque are subjects of *exisset*, to be supplied from *exisset*. Note that this use of *-que* is an exception to the statement of the note on 1, 3.

mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium 5 CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x. 10

5. *mulier, -eris, f.*, woman; wife. *
summa, -ae, f. [*summus*, highest], the main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; *summa imperi*, the chief command. *

caput, capitis, n., the head (of men and animals); person, individual, mouth of a river); *capitis poena*, capital punishment. *

6. *quattuordecim (XIV)*, *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fourteen. 2.

8. *nōnāgintā*, *card. num. adj., indecl.*, ninety. 1.

9. *redeō, -ire, -li, -itum, intr.* [*red-eō*, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; comē; fall to, descend; be referred. *

cēnsus, -ūs, m., enumeration. 1.

5. *summa . . . CCLXIII*, lit. "the total was [i.e. consisted] of 263,000 of heads of the Helvetii"="the total was 263,000 Helvetii, etc."

6. *CCLXIII = ducentōrum sexāgintā trium*.

XXXVI = trīgintā sex.

7. *XXII = vīgintī trium*.

XXXII = trīgintā duōrum.

quī possent: cf. l. 4. Supply *fuērunt*; "there were . . . who could, etc."

8. *ad*, "about," is an adverb in both instances.

fuērunt agrees in number with the predicate noun *milīa*.

9. *CCCLXVIII = trecenta sexāgintā octō*.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul, he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.


During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river Ill, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.





Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel's identification of it (Guerre de César et d'Arioviste) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellogere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem

2. grātulor, 1, *intr.* [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.

3. tametsī, *conj.* [tamen, however + etsī, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.

4. repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petītum, *tr.* [re- + petō, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; with poenās, exact, inflict. 2.

Chap. 30-36. At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.

Chap. 30. Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. tōtius ferē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.

2. grātulātum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, 5: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal

imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

sēsē: the envoys said "we." The reflexive pronoun *suī* or the corresponding possessive *suus* is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Helvētiōrum . . . Rōmānī, "the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people," refers to the defeat of Cassius, 12, 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 199; 200: H.-B. 344: 354: H. 440, 1, 2.

5 nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent. 10 Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrāndō

5. ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsul esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venīre, come by necessity; happen. * ●

6. flōrens, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.

8. domiciliū, -li, *n.* [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

9. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive. 1.

10. stipendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute,

tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. 2.

12. indicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, *tr.* [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. 1.

13. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam and quīdam, quaedam, quoddam; *indef. pron.* (App. 62 *and b*), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. *

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest. *

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

14. permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

11. petiērunt utī sibi licēret, "they requested permission."

concilium: The envoys mentioned in 1.1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives, from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. Caesaris voluntāte: "with Caesar's consent." They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar's power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.

6. flōrentissimīs rēbus, "although they were in a very prosperous condition." The ablative absolute is here equivalent to an adversative clause.

suās: this is a direct reflexive, since it refers to *Helvētīi*, the subject of the clause in which it stands: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

7. utī inferrent, potirentur, dēligerent, habērent: substantive volitive (or purpose) clauses, in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō*.

8. domiciliō: dative of purpose.

10. iūdicāssent, "they should decide," lit. "they should have decided."

nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum 15
esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō idem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī
ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi
sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē
impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt:
Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent 5
ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea
quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs
vidērent. Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Haeduus: Galliae
tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre
Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū 10

16. **sanciō, sancīre, sānxi, sānc-tum**, *tr.* [cf. **sacer**, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. 2.

5. **labōrō**, 1, *intr.* [**labor**, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or per-

plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.

7. **cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō**, torture; **crux**, cross], torture, torment. *

9. **factiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**faciō**, make], party, faction. 1.

10. **Arvernus**, -i, *m.* (CDe), an Ar-

15. **nē ēnūntiāret** is the object of **sānxērunt**.

nisi (iīs) quibus mandātum esset, "except to those to whom they should be directed" (to disclose it). **mandātum esset** is impersonal. The pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ariovistus.

1. **eō conciliō dīmissō**: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (30, 14) that the council was held.

idem prīncipēs: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. **dē . . . salūte**, "for their own safety and (that) of all."

agere, "to confer."

4. **Caesari ad pedēs**, "at Caesar's

feet." But **Caesari** does not depend on **pedēs**, nor is it a dative of possessor: App. 120: G.-L. 350, 1: A. 377: B. 188, 1, n.: H.-B. 368: H. 425, 4, n.

5. **nōn minus**, etc., "(saying) that they were no less urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc."

sē: cf. note on **sēsē**, 30, 3.

quae dīxissent, "which they should say."

7. **sī ēnūntiātum esset**, "if reports should get out." The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. **ēnūntiātum esset** stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

8. **Galliae**: Gallia Celtica is meant.

9. **factiōnēs**: see Int. 29.

10. **cum contenderent**, "when they had fought." We might expect the pluperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, 15 trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīginti milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, 20 quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā

vernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'nī), possibly the Arvernians. 3.

tantopere, *adv.* [tantus, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1.

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1.

12. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. 1.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. *

primō, *adv.* [prīmus, first], at first, in the first place. *

13. posteaquam, *adv.* [postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4.

14. ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized; bar-

barous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. *

adamō, 1, *tr.* [amō, love], love strongly, covet. 1.

15. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

16. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **ut semel**, as soon as. 2.

17. iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum**, again and again. *

19. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.

20. hospitium, -tī, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2.

11. factum esse utī, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, *factum esse*, stands for *factum est* of the direct form, as *contendere* (l. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as *ventūrōs* (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c: H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercēde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

14. adamāssent = *adamāvissent*. It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

15. esse, etc., "They were in Gaul to the number of, etc."

17. pulsōs accēpisse, "as they were beaten, they had suffered."

18. omnem . . āmisisse: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedui were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic war.

20. quī, "although they."

populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminuſ
perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atq̄ue imperiō essent. Ūnum sē 25
esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut
iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex
cīvitāte profūgisſe et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisſe auxilium
postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus
tenērētur. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs 30
accidisſe, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in
eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisſet tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī,
quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisſet et nunc dē alterā
parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs

24. **implōrō**, 1, *tr.* [in + plōrō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3.

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum**, shrink from. *

quōminuſ, *conj.* [quō, so that + minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

25. **perpetuō**, *adv.* [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. 1.

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

27. **iūrō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [iūs, right], take oath; swear. 1.

28. **profugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, -fug-

itum, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. 1.

29. **postulō**, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *

30. **malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, **peior**, **peius**; *n. as noun*, a worse thing; *sup.*, **pessimus**. 1.

victor, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

31. **Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus, (ā/rī-ō-vīs' tūs), a king of the Germans. *

rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king. *

34. **dēcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. 3.

24. **quōminuſ essent**: construction? App. 228, c: G.-L. 549: A. 558, b: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 568, 8.

25. **ūnum sē esse**, "that he was the only one." sē is Diviciacus. Cf. note on sēsē, 30, 3.

26. **quī potuerit**: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, b: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a, b: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, *locutus est*, 1. 8. But in *potuerit* we have an instance of *representatio*; i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 664, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

29. **postulātum**: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. **peius accidisſe**, "a worse fate had befallen."

32. **tertiā partem**: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.

33. **alterā**, "a second."

34. **paucīs mēnsibus ante**, lit. "before by a few months" = "a few months before." *mēnsibus* is an ablative of degree of difference.

35 *mēnsibus* ante *Harūdum* *mīlia hominum* XXIV ad eum *vēnissent*, quibus locus ac *sēdēs* parārentur. *Futūrum* esse paucis annis uti *omnēs* ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque *omnēs* *Germāni* *Rhēnum* *trānsirent*; neque enim *cōferendum* esse *Gallicum* cum *Germānōrum* *agrō*, neque hanc *cōsuētūdinem* *victūs* cum
40 *illā* comparandam. *Ariovistum* autem, ut semel *Gallōrum* *cōpiās* *proeliō* *vicerit*, quod *proelium* factum sit ad *Magetobrigam*, *superbē* et *crūdēliter* *imperāre*, *obsidēs* *nōbilissimī* cuiusque *liberōs* *poscere* et in *eōs* omnia exempla *cruciātūsque* *ēdere*, *sī* qua *rēs* *nōn* ad *nūtum* aut ad *voluntātem* eius facta
45 sit. *Hominem* esse *barbarum*, *īrācundum*, *temerārium*; *nōn* posse eius *imperia* *diūtius* *sustinēri*. *Nisi* quid in *Caesare*

35. *Harūdēs*, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (ha-ryū'dēz), a German tribe. 3.

36. *sēdēs*, -is, *f.* [*sedeō*, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.

39. *cōsuētūdō*, -inis, *f.* [*cōsuēscō*, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *

victus, -ūs, *m.* [*vivō*, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.

40. *comparō*, 1, *tr.* [*pār*, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.

41. *Magetobriga*, -ae, *f.* (Cf), *Magetobriga* (măj'tōb'rī-gā), a Gallic town

where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. 1.

42. *superbē*, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1.

crūdēliter, *adv.* [*crūdēlis*, cruel], cruelly. 1.

44. *ēdō*, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [*dō*, give], give out; inflict. 1.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [*nuō*, nod], nod; sign, command; ad *nūtum*, at one's nod or command. 2.

45. *īrācundus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*īra*, anger], irritable. 1.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*temerē*, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 1.

36. *futūrum esse uti omnēs pellerentur*, lit. "it would be that all would be expelled" = "all would be expelled." The direct form was *omnēs pellentur*. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect *pulsū iri*; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the periphrasis found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, b; G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, a; B. 270, 3, a; H.-B. 472, c; H. 619, 2.

37. *omnēs* [ex]: i.e. all the Gauls.

38. *Gallicum*: sc. *agrum*.

39. *hanc* = *Gallicam*.

victūs: note the quantity of *ī*, and compare *victus*, the perfect participle of

vincō.

41. *vicerit*: from this point on to the end of the chapter *repraesentatio* is employed. See note on *potuerit*, I. 26.

proelium: this final and decisive battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul. It is probable that the Sequani had joined forces with the Haedui in an effort to expel Ariovistus.

43. *cuiusque*: the singular forms of *quisque*, "each," with superlatives have the force of "every" or "all."

exempla, "punishments."

44. *sī facta sit*: this condition stands for an original *sī facta est*. See note on I. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b; B. 302, 1, 3; H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

46. *quid auxilii*, "some help."

populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrant, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta 50 Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quā dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dētērrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā 55 posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil 60 Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanēre.

48. ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. 1.

50. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (or *generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever; whatever; whosoever; whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who; everything that. *

experior, -periri, -pertus sum, *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. *

2. flētus, -ūs, *m.* [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1.

4. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.* the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. 1.

47. Gallis: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

48. ut domō ēmigrant, etc., "(namely) leave home, etc.," explains *idem*.

51. nōn (sē) dubitāre quā sūmat, "he did not doubt that Ariovistus would inflict." sūmat: mode? App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, a: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

54. dētērrēre nē trādūcātur: for construction see note on *esset*, 1. 24.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; sē dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sē animō dēmittere, lose courage; dēmissus, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. 1.

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (*pl.*) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3.

intueor, 2, *tr.* [tueor, look], look at. 1.

5. miror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1.

6. tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. 1.
permaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mān-

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

2. magnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxilium petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. quae causa esset: an indirect question depending on *mirātus*.

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Haeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam
 10 reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate
 15 eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: Magnam se habere spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum

sum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

7. vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language; *variously translated according to context, as* entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. *

8. exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.

9. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

10. occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

6. respondere, permanere: historical infinitives.

7. quaereret: a pluperfect would seem more natural.

8. hōc: ablative of cause.

11. absentis: "even when absent."

velut si adesset: mode and tense? App. 261: G.-L. 602: A. 524: B. 307, 1, 2: H.-B. 504, 3, a: H. 584, 2.

12. tamen: "at any rate"; i.e. though they could not resist Ariovistus.

13. Sequanis: for case, cf. note on *Gallia*, 31, 47.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to under-

11. absēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of absum*, be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.

crudelitās, -tātis, f. [crudēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. 1.

velut, adv., as, just as. 1.

12. coram, adv., face to face, in person. 1.

horreō, -ēre, -ui, —, tr., shudder at, dread. 1.

13. vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *

intrā, prep. with acc. [inter, between], within, inside; into. 4.

2. cūra, -ae, f., care, attention. 2.

take their defense. His reasons for doing so.

2. sibi . . . futuram, "that the matter should receive his attention." For the two datives, see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, a: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

3. beneficio suo: in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles "rex" and "amicus." This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dimisit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur 5 quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in primis, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senatū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī 10 turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, 15 ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs

5. *secundum*, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

6. *cōgitō*, 1, *tr. and intr.* [co+agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

11. *turpis*, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

6. *quārē putāret*: "to think," lit. "why he should think."

sibi: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.

7. *Haeduōs tenērī* is the object of *vidēbat*.

frātrēs appellātōs, "who had been called brothers." See note on 11, 5.

10. *quod*, "and this"; i.e. the condition of the Haedui, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.

11. *sibi* refers to Caesar, the subject of *arbitrābātur*, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 320; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

paulātim, etc., "he saw that for the

paulātim, *adv.* [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

13. *periculōsus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. 1.

16. *Cimbri*, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sim'-bri). 4.

Teutonī, -ōrum or *Teutonēs*, -um, *m.*, the Teutonī (tū'tō-nī) or Teutones (tū'tō-nēz). 4.

Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous," etc.

13. *periculōsum*: see Int. 3.

14. *sibi*: indirect object of *temperātūrōs*. It refers to *hominēs*, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

15. *temperātūrōs quīn exirent atque contenderent*: construction? App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, d: H. 595, 2.

16. *ut*, "as"; for *fēcissent* stands for *fēcērunt* of the direct form.

Cimbri Teutonīque: see Int. 27.

17. *praesertim cum*: cf. note on 16, 17.

ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam
mātūrrimē occurrēdum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus
20 tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus
nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs
mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium
utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sēsē dē rē públicā et
summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus
5 respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum

19. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3.

occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

20. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.

1. placeō, 2. *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*,

seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. *

5. opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the *nom.* or *abl.* (App. 146.) *

18. Rhodanus divideret, "only the Rhone separates." Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.

quibus rēbus occurrēdum, "that he must face this danger." Since *occurrō* is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally: App. 115, *d.*; G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b.*; H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Chap. 34. Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on 31, 32.

3. colloquiō: dative of purpose.

velle sēsē agere, "(saying) that he wished to confer." Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (cf. note on 33, 3).

4. summīs . . . rēbus, "matters of the greatest importance to both."

5. sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse: the direct form was *sī esset, vēnissem*, "if I wanted anything, I should have gone," a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 597, R. 1: A. 517, *a.*: B. 304, 1, 2: H. B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form *-ūrus fuisse*, although some of the grammars make the mistake of saying that the imperfect subjunctive becomes *-ūrus esse*: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R. 4: A.

ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, 10 quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque

7. praetereā, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

8. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum, tr. [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

9. commeātus, -ūs, m. [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

mōlimentum, -ī, n. [mōlior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. 1.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 1.

10. mīrus, -a, -um, adj. [mīror,

wonder at], strange, astonishing; **mīrum in modum**, surprisingly. 2.

12. negōtium, -tī, n. [neg-+ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare**, employ, direct; **quid negōtī**, what business; **nihil negōtī**, no difficulty. *

2. mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

quoniam, conj. [quom=cum, since +iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. 4.

3. cōsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōsul, consul], consulship. 1.

589, b, 1, 2: B. 321, A. 2: H.-B. 581, b, 1: H. 647.

ipsi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. The indirect reflexive, *sibi*, would be more usual, but *ipsi* is more emphatic.

6. sī . . . velit, "if Caesar wanted anything of him," lit. "if Caesar wanted him (for) anything." *Volō* sometimes, as here, governs two accusatives, like verbs of asking or demanding: App. 125, b: G.-L. 341, n. 2: A. 390, d: H.-B. 397, 1: H. 412. **sī velit** stands for an original *sē vult*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

8. quās . . . possidēret: i.e. the land of the Haedui and the Lingones,

which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mīrum: predicate adjective with *vidēri*, "it seemed strange."

quid Caesarī negōtī esset, lit. "what of business there was to Caesar" = "what business Caesar had"; an indirect question, subject of *vidēri*. **Caesarī** is a dative of possessor.

omnīnō, "in general."

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. beneficiō affectus: cf. note on 83, 3. The German was shrewd enough to estimate the *beneficium* at its true value.

4. quoniam (l. 2) hanc grātiā re-

- 5 Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendū sibi et cognōscendū putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinē hominū ampliū trāns Rhēnum in Galliā trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet
 10 Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuā grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūrā; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

5. invitō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

6. gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. 1.

8. amplē, *adv.* [amplus, large], largely; *comp.*, amplius, more, farther. *

9. reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*

[red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give *something due*; make or cause to be, render. *

13. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. 3.

ferret, ut, "since he made this request, that." The direct form given after Book VII represents Caesar's words to his envoys, in which Ariovistus was spoken of in the third person. It would also be possible to give the form in which the message was to be repeated to Ariovistus, in which he would be addressed in the second person. In the latter case *referret* stands for *refers*, "you make."

6. neque dīcendū . . . putāret, "and did not think it necessary to discuss and learn." sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

7. haec esse quae, "these were (the things) which."

nē trādūceret: as addressed to the envoys the direct form was nē trādūcat, "that he shall not bring," a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with haec. As addressed to Ariovistus it would be nōlī trādūcere, "do not bring,"

a prohibition: App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

10. Sēquanīsque . . . licēret, "and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus's] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haedui]." lit. "permit that it be allowed." illis = Sēquanīs.

12. fēcisset stands for a future perfect indicative: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1. sibi: i.e. Caesar; a dative of possessor.

14. sī nōn impetrāret, "if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances)."

sēsē: the direct form would be ego, if expressed at all. It is the subject of *neglētūrum*, l. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in sēsē, l. 17.

M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus: in 61 B. C. Cf. note on 2, 2.

Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quicumque Galliam 15
prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei publicae facere posset,
Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē
Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī
vicissent iīs quōs vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent;
item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum,
sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsueisse. Sī ipse populō
Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, 5
nōn oportere sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri.
Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs
congressi ac superātī essent, stīpendiariōs esse factōs. Magnam

15. cēseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēn-
sum, *tr.* think, decide (*acc. and inf.*);
propose, advise, vote (*ut and subj.*);
propose, vote for (*acc.*). 1.

16. commodum, -ī, *n.* [commodus,
convenient], convenience, interest, ad-
vantage. 2.

18. neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēc-
tum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard],
not heed, disregard, neglect. *

3. praescriptum, -ī, *n.* [praescri-
bō, order], order, dictation, command. 1.

4. arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [arbitr, um-
pire], decision or judgment (*of the ar-
biter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure.
1.

5. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī,
-scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write
beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dic-
tate to. 3.

8. congredior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, en-
counter, meet in battle; join (*peace-
fully*). *

15. senātus cēnsuisset: this decree
of the senate was the only result of the
entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. 31, 28), and
no governor had paid any attention to
it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, "so far as he
could do it in accordance with the inter-
ests of the state"; a common formula
in decrees of the senate.

18. neglētūrum: tense? App. 205:
G.-L. 530: 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*:
H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds de-
fiantly.

1. ut imperārent: a substantive
volitive clause, in apposition with *iūs*.

vicissent, vicissent, vellent might
all have been indicative in the direct

form, but would probably be attracted
into the subjunctive.

iīs: indirect object of *imperārent*.

3. ad alterius praescriptum, "in
accordance with the dictates of anyone
else."

4. ipse: direct form, *ego*. The re-
flexive cannot be used to replace a pro-
noun of the first person (cf. note on
sēsē, 30, 3) when a nominative is re-
quired, because it has no nominative.
Usually no pronoun is used; but if there
is emphasis, as here, *ipse* is used.

5. quem . . . ūterētur, "how they
should exercise their rights."

6. nōn oportere sē impediri, "he
[Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."

7. sibi: dative with the adjective
stīpendiariōs.

Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigālia sibi
 10 dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse,
 neque his neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī
 in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis
 penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen
 populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē
 15 Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum sine
 suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: intel-
 lētūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī
 inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,

10. dēterior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), worse, less. 1.

12. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

stipendium, -dī, n., tax, tribute. * **quotannis, adv.** [quot, as many as + annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.

13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with **poenās**, suffer. 2.

9. quī faceret may be translated by a causal clause, "since he, etc.," but the indicative was probably used in the direct form. Apparently the presence of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui and had made them less careful in paying their tribute to Ariovistus.

neque . . . neque, "but . . . not . . . or."

11. illātūrum, sī manērent; a vivid future condition.

12. in . . . convēnisset, lit. "should remain in that which had been agreed upon" = "adhered to the terms which had been agreed upon."

13. fēcissent stands for a future perfect indicative.

longē . . . āfutūrum, "the name of brothers of the Roman people would be of little value to them."

14. quod, "as to the fact that":

14. dēnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, "announce"], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. 1.

17. quid, interrog. adv., why? with **posse,** how? e.g. **quid Germānī pos-** sent, how strong the Germans were. * **invictus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. 1.

exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of **exercitō**, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

15. sēcum, suā: *sēcum* is the indirect reflexive, referring to Ariovistus, *suā* is the direct reflexive, referring to *nēmīnem*. Cf. notes on 30, 3 and 6.

16. cum vellet, congregērētur, "let him come on when he liked."

18. inter, "during."

Chap. 37-41. Caesar marches into the country of Ariovistus, checking a panic on the way.

Chap. 37. Because of this reply and further complaints of the Gauls, Caesar marches toward Ariovistus.

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of Ariovistus and the complaints of the Gauls reached Caesar at the same time. It was now about the beginning of August.

et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum 5 Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque 10 rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ario-

2. Trēvir, -erī, m., one of the Treveri; *pl.* Trēverī (Bgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). *

3. trānsportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. *

6. Suēbus, -a, -um, adj. of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun, Suēbī, (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. **

7. Nasua, -ae, m. Nasua (nāsh'ū-a),

a leader of the Suebi. 1.

Cimberius, -rī, m., Cimberius (sīm-bē'rī-ūs), a leader of the Suebi. 1.

8. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr. [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *

1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

2. questum: the supine.

3. Harūdēs: cf. 31, 35.

4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, *suōs*. would have been more correct, since the Haeduī said "our."

obsidibus datīs, "by giving hostages."

5. Trēverī: sc. *veniēbant questum*, followed by indirect discourse.

6. trānsire: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was, probably near modern Mayence. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovistus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar's approach.

9. sī coniūnxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

10. minus . . . posset, lit. "it could be less easily resisted (to them)."

11. magnīs itineribus: cf. Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See map facing page 117.

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Vesontio.

1. tridui: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but *tridui* = *trium dierum*.

viam: case? App. 128: G.-L. 333, 2: A, 390: B. 176, 4: H.-B. 396, 1: H. 409.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and

vistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīdūque viam ā suis fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere
 5 sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit;
 10 reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contin-

2. **Vesontio, -ōnis, m.** (Cf) Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. 2.

5. **praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, intr.** [caveō, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.

namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.

7. **sic, adv.,** so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. *

9. **Dūbis, -is, m.** (Cf), the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. 1.

circinus, -i, m. [circus, circle], a pair

of compasses. 1.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). 1.

10. **sescentī, -ae, -a, (DC), card. num. adj.** [sex, six], six hundred. *

12. **rādix, -icis, f.,** root; in pl. with montis or collis, foot, base. 1.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall; happen to. 2.

brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nūtiātum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on 37, 6.

3. **quod** agrees in gender with *oppidum*, although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.

4. **id:** i.e. the capture of Vesontio.

6. **summa facultās,** "a very great supply."

9. **ut,** "as if."

paene cingit: i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according

to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.

10. **spatium:** object of *continet*.

nōn . . . sescentōrum, "of not more than six hundred feet." **pedum** is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

11. **quā flūmen intermittit,** "where the river does not flow."

magnā altitūdine: descriptive ablative.

12. **rādīcēs** is the object of *contingant*, **ripae** its subject.

gant. Hunc mûrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupatōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

15

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum his congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc

13. circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

14. hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. *

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. percontātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiring, inquiry. 1.

3. ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitūdō animi, courage. *

4. exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exercitō, *freq. of* exerceō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

5. praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks. 2.

7. subitō, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

8. mediocriter, *adv.* [mediocris,

13. hunc (montem) is the object of *efficit*, *arcem* is a predicate accusative: App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.

14. hūc contendit: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnīs: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.

1. dum morātur: mode and tense?

App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4. The principal clause of this sentence begins with *tantus*, 1. 7.

rei . . . causā: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

3. vōcibus, "replies."

magnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne: descriptive ablatives.

primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs, reliquisque
 10 quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in
 rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā,
 quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat
 ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nullī pudōre adductī,
 ut timōris suspiciōnem vitarent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum
 15 fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in
 tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus
 suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtis castrīs
 testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim
 etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs cen-
 20 turiōnēsque quīque equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Qui

moderate], moderately: **nōn mediocriter**, in no small degree. 1.

mēns, mentis, f., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; **mentēs animōsque**, minds and hearts; **aliēnātā mente**, bereft of reason. 4.

perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

9. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; **tribūnus militum, or militāris**, a military tribune. *

praefectus, -ī, m. [praeficiō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.

13. pudor, -ōris, m. [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense

9. tribūnīs: see Int. 41.

10. amicitiae causā: Caesar puts it delicately. We know from other sources that Caesar had with him young men, friends or relatives of influential men at Rome, who hoped for personal gain from their connection with him in his province. Some of them had little taste for real fighting.

11. quōrum . . . illātā, "one of them alleging one reason, another another."

12. diceret, "they said," agrees in

of honor. 2.

14. remanēō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, intr. [re-+manēō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. *

15. fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, tr., form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

16. tabernāculum, -ī, n., tent. 1.
fātum, -ī, n. [fārī, to speak], fate, lot. 1.

17. miseror, 1, tr. [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1.

vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

18. testāmentum, -ī, n. [testor, be a witness], will. 1.

obsignō, 1, tr. [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. 1.

19. centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. *

number with *alius*. Mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2; A. 535; B. 283, 1; H.-B. 521, 1, a; H. 591, 1, a.

14. vultum fingere, "control their features," so as to look unconcerned.

17. tōtis castris: why is there no preposition? App. 151, b; G.-L. 388: A. 429, 2; B. 228, 1, b; H.-B. 436, a; H. 485, 2.

19. centuriōnēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery.

20. quī ex his, "(those) of them who."

sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volūbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustīās itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac 22 signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīmum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī 5

21. **timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**timeō**, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.

24. **supportō**, 1, *tr.* [**sub+portō**, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

26. **dictum**, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of dicō*, say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. 1.

22. **angustīās itineris**: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambushes.

24. **rem frūmentāriam, ut posset, timēre**, lit. "feared the supplies, that they could not" = "feared that the supplies could not." *ut*: translation? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

26. **cumiussisset**: indirect discourse for *cum iusseris*, "when you shall have ordered," = "when you order." The clause depends on what follows, not on *nūntiābant*.

fore=*futūrōs esse*.

neque signa lātūrōs, "and would not advance." See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.

1. **omnium ōrdinum**: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. *

2. **ōrdō**, -inīs, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primī ōrdinēs**, centurions of the first rank. *

3. **incūsō**, 1, *tr.* [*causa*, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar's speech.

3. **incūsāvit**: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar's purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. **dūcerentur**: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, "that they ought to inquire or consider." The grammatical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*.

5. **sē cōnsule**: in the preceding year. *sē* and the other reflexives through 1. 9

amicitiā appetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādēri, cognitīs suis postulātīs atque aequitāte condiōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidē-

6. **appetō, -petere, -petivī (-petī), -itum**, *tr. and intr. (ad+petō, seek)*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon; approach, be near. 3.

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

officiūm, *-cī, n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō**, to remain faithful. *

8. **postulātum, -ī, n.** [**postulō**, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

aequitās, -tātis, f. [**aequus**, equal], equality; fairness, equity; **animī aequitās**, contentment. 1.

perspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, [*tr. specīō*, look], look or see

are indirect reflexives: App. 165: G.-L. 529; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

6. **cūr iudicāret**: the direct form was *cūr iudicet*, "why should anyone suppose?": App. 210, a; 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 642, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in 14, 8.

7. **sibi . . . persuādēri**, "in fact he was convinced": App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, d: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. **quod si intulisset**, "but if he should make": App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574.

through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

9. **repudiō**, 1, *tr.*, reject. 1.

10. **furor, -ōris, m.**, rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

āmentia, -ae, f. [**mēns**, mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr. [in+pellō, drive]*, drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. **diligentia, -ae, f.** [**diligēns**, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. **C.**, *abbr. for praenomen Gālus* (gā'yūs). *

Marius, -rī, m., Gālus Marius (gā'yūs mā'rī-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni. 1.

14. **laus, laudis, f.**, praise, com-

11. **verērentur, dēspērārent**: cf. note on 1. 6.

suā: the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

ipsius: i.e. Caesar's; *suā* could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of *ipse* in 36, 4.

12. **perīculum**, "a test."

13. **Cimbris et Teutonīs**: cf. Int. 27.

Mariō: cf. Int. 5.

14. **vidēbātur**: no satisfactory explanation can be given for the retention of this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

bātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servilī tumultū, quōs 15
tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs aocēpissent
sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē
bonī cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine
causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.
Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numerō 20
Helvētīi congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum
finibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō
exercitui nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga
Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperire posse,
diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs 25

mendatione; renown, popularity, glory.
3.

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. *

15. servilis, -e, adj. [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile.

tumultus, -ūs, m. [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

16. disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2.

ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* nōs, we, us, etc. *

18. cōstantia, -ae, f. [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1.

15. factum: sc. *esse periculum*.

servilī tumultū: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B. C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quōs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servilī*, which is equivalent to *servōrum*.

17. quantum bonī, "how great an advantage."

18. inermēs: a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes; yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvētīi congressī

aliquamdiū, adv. [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. 1.

inermis, -e, adj. [in- + arma, arms] without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.

19. armō, 1, tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; **armātus, pf. part., as adj.**, armed; **armātī, as noun**, armed men. *

22. plērumque, adv. [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. *

25. diūturnitās, -tātis, f. [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2.

dēfatigō, 1, tr. [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. 1.

superārint, lit. "with whom the Helvetii having met had conquered" = "whom the Helvetii had met and conquered." **superārint:** tense? App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

22. quī: the antecedent is *Helvētīi*. The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

23. proelium: the battle at Magetobriga; see 31, 41.

24. commovēret: the direct form was *commovet*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fecisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē
 30 ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustīasque itineris cōferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque
 35 esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam;

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

27. dispērgō, -spērgere, -spērsī, -spersum, *tr.* [spērgō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

29. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+perītus, experience], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

31. simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

32. arrogātor, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1.

34. Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū'sī). 1.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give.

35. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. *

38. male, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē. 1.

39. dēsum, deesse, dēfui, —, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *

facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

26. suī potestātem, "a chance at him."

27. dēspērāntēs, dispersōs agree with an implied *eos* which is the object of *adortum* and refers to the Gauls.

28. ratiōnī: translate with *hāc* in next line, and omit here.

29. hāc . . . posse, "not even (Arrovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem."

31. rei . . . simulātiōnem, "a pretense about the supplies." *rei* is an objective genitive.

32. dē . . . dēspērāre, "to lack con-

fidence in the general's attention to his duties."

35. mātūra: it was now August.

36. quod . . . dīcantur, "as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance." *quod*: translation? App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

37. quibuscumque . . . convictam, lit. "that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient, (to them) either fortune had failed or avarice had been proved." This must be turned into English.

suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvētiōrum bellō 40
esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus
fuisset repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā
castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum
apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeret. Quod
sī praetereā nēmō sequatur, tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne 45
itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sibiue eam praetōriam cohortem
futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et prop-
ter virtūtem cōfidēbat maximē.

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt
omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī
illāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī
grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque
esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde 5

avaritia, -ae, *f.* [avārus, greedy],
greed, covetousness. 1.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum,
tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely;
prove. 1.

40. **innocentia**, -ae, *f.* [innocēns,
innocent], integrity. 1.

felicitās, -tātis, *f.* [fēlix, happy],
happiness, success, good fortune. 1.

41. **longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, dis-
tant; of long duration; tedious. *

42. **repraesentō**, 1, *tr.* [re-+prae-
sēns, present], make present; do at
once. 1.

43. **utrum**, *conj.* [uter, which of
two], whether; **utrum . . . an**, whether
. . . or; **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . .
or not. 3.

44. **an**, *conj.*, used to introduce the

second member of alternative questions,
or, or rather. *

45. **decimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num.*
adj. [decem, ten], tenth. *

46. **praetōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [prae-
tor, commander], praetorian, belonging
to the general. 2.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. *

47. **indulgeō**, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —,
intr., be indulgent to, favor. 1.

praecipuē, *adv.* [praecipuus, espe-
cial], especially, particularly. 1.

1. **modus**, -ī, *m.* measure, quantity,
size; manner, method, style; **eius modī**,
of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō**, with
gen., in the character of, like. *

2. **alacritās**, -tātis, *f.* [alacer,
lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

40. **innocentiam**, "fair dealing,"
not "innocence"; opposed to *avaritiam*.
What the soldiers would object to would
be the general's keeping too large a
share of the booty for himself.

perpetuā vitā, "throughout his life."

41. **quod . . . repraesentātūrum**,
"he would do at once what he had in-
tended to put off, etc."

43. **utrum . . . valeret**: an indirect

double question: App. 214; 264, c: G.-L.
458; 460, 2: A. 334; 335: B. 162, 4; 300, 4:
H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650.

46. **praetōriam cohortem**, "his
body-guard," which would naturally be
composed of the bravest troops.

Chap. 41. The panic is checked and
the army advances.

4. **grātiās ēgit**, "expressed its
thanks."

reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militūm et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum satis-
 10 factiōne acceptā et itinere exquisītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium amplius quīn-
 quāgintā circuitū, locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī
 15 cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod antea dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fieri

8. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never.
 2.

9. satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. 1.

6. cum tribūnīs ēgērunt utī, "arranged with the tribunes that" or "begged the tribunes to."

8. neque dē . . . exīstimāvisse, "and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's."

10. itinere . . . Dīviciācum ut . . . dūceret, "having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . , in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles."

ex Gallis, "of (all) the Gauls."

11. eī: case? App. 115, a: G.-L. 346. n. 5: A. 367, a, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b.

milium quīnquāgintā is a descriptive genitive. Why not an ablative after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

12. circuitū: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see

10. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quāerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate.
 2.

11. quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num.* *adj., indecl.*, fifty. 3.

map facing p. 117), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles.

13. ut dixerat: cf. 40, 42.

septimō diē: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 117. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (cf. note on 37, 6), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strasburg.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e. he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. Cf. Int. 54.

Chap. 42-47. Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. 42. Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

2. postulāsset: sc. Caesar.

id . . . licēre, "that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned." id is the antecedent of quod.

licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condiționem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod 5 anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulātis, fore uti pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus 10 postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenirētur; uterque cum equitātū veniret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, com- 15 modissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus

3. **propius**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [App. 122, b] [*comp. of prope*, near], nearer.

4. **respuō**, -spuere, -spuī, —, *tr.* reject, spurn. 1.

5. **sānitās**, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound, soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 1.

6. **dēnegō**, 1, *tr.* [negō, deny], refuse. **ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. *

8. **pertinācia**, -ae, *f.* [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1.

10. **citrō**, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. 1.

11. **pedes**, **peditis**, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3.

14. **interpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge. 4.

15. **commodus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3.

3. **accessisset**: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him and he was more inclined to confer.

6. **petentī**, "when he [Caesar] asked it."

8. **fore uti dēsisteret**, lit. "that it would be that he would give up" = "that he would give up." The use of this periphrasis is here a matter of choice on Caesar's part, since the verb is active and has a future infinitive form. Cf. note on 31, 36, and App. 205, b: G.-L. 531:

A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

13. **veniret**: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.

aliā ratiōne, "on any other terms."

15. **salūtem . . . audēbat**: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry.

16. **Gallis equitibus**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, d: H.-B. 371: H. 427.

dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

43. Plānitēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis vexerat passibus ducentis ab eō tumulo

17. dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

18. impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [in+pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. 4.

20. irrīdiculē, adv. [in+ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1.

23. rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [re+scribō, write], write again; transfer. 1.

1. plānitēs, -ēi, f. [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

tumulus, -ī, m. [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. 1.

terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. [terra, earth], of earth. 1.

2. grandis, -e, adj., great, large, bulky. 1.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; **aequus animus, equanimity, composure.** 3.

4. vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, tr., carry; bring along. 1.

17. eō, the adverb, =in eōs.

19. si' . . . esset, lit. "if there should at all be need of something done" = "if there should be any need of their services." **quid; case?** App. 128, b: G.-L. 334: A. 390, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2. **factō; construction?** App. 146, b: G.-L. 406: A. 411, a: B. 218, 2, c: H.-B. 430, 2: H. 477, III. **esset; implied indirect discourse, for in making his plans Caesar thought si erit, "if there shall be."**

20. nōn irrīdiculē, "wittily."

21. pollicitum . . . rescribere; the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his body-guard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of ad equum rescribere, namely, (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the

army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavalier" means either "cavalry man" or "knight."

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.

1. erat, "there was." The hill was about twelve miles north of the battlefield, and has been identified with considerable certainty.

2. spatium; accusative of extent of space.

3. ut erat dictum, "as had been agreed."

4. equis, "on horseback."

passibus, intervallō; ablatives of degree of difference with ab, "away from."

cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. 5
 Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad
 colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar
 initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,
 quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera
 amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs 10
 hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque
 aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac
 liberalitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat
 etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs
 cum Haeduis intercēderent, quae senātūs cōsulta quotiēns 15
 quamque honōrifca in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius
 Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam
 nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse

6. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 1.

9. mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. 1.

11. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

12. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with funera*, appropriate. 4.

13. praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. *

14. necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [necesse, cf. *necessarius*, friend], friendship, alliance. 1.

15. cōsultum, -i, *n.* [cōsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment, decision. 1.

quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. 1.

16. honōrifcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor+faciō, make], conferring honor. 1.

5. cōstitērunt: distinguish carefully between *cōsistō* and *cōstituō*.

6. ex equīs, "on horseback." Cf. 1. 4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.

9. quod amicus: sc. *appellātus esset*. Cf. note on 33, 3.

10. missa: sc. *essent*. The three *quod* clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *beneficia*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

12. aditum: i.e. to the senate.

14. ipsīs . . . intercēderent, "existed between them [the Romans] and the Haedui." intercēderent: subjunctive in an indirect question.

16. in eōs, "in their behalf." ut, "how," introducing an indirect question.

17. Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = *priusquam*. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.

cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil
 20 dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitatē, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse;
 quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī
 quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in
 mandātīs dederat: Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum
 25 domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre
 paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē
 suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn
 suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine
 magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque
 5 reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs
 ipsōrum voluntātē datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod
 victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed
 Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad sē

20. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* augeō, increase], increased, advanced. 1.

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum,

tr. [ad+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

25. remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. *

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

19. ut vellet, "to wish"; a substantive clause of result, in apposition with *hanc consuetudinem*.

suī, "of their own"; the neuter of *eius*, used as a noun.

20. sed auctiōrēs esse, "but rather to be advanced."

grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.

21. iīs: for case, cf. note on 42, 16.

22. quis posset: the direct form was *quis possit*, "who would be able?" and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in chap. 35.

24. inferret, etc.: subjunctives of

command in indirect discourse. What was the direct form of *nē inferret*? App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.

3. rogātum et arcessitum: the principles may be translated by a causal clause.

ā Gallīs: cf. 31, 11.

5. ab ipsīs: sc. *Gallīs*.

6. iūre: ablative of accordance.

7. cōsuērint: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to *repraesentatio*.

oppugnandum v̄nisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs
cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum 10
experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti
velint, inīquum ēsse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte
ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi
ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque
sē hāc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium 15
remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē
recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod
multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī
mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius rei
testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn v̄nerit et quod bellum 20
nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam v̄nisse
quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exer-
citum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum.
Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret? Prōvinciam

11. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend],
fight to the end, fight out, struggle
fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *

12. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+
aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, un-
fair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

13. ōrnāmentum, -i, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn],
ornament; mark of honor. 1.

dētrimentum, -i, *n.* [de+terō, rub, or
wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster,
defeat. 1.

16. subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi,
-tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or
carry off from beneath; take away, with-
draw. 1.

libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], will-
ingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

19. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in+pugnō,
fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

20. testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [testor, be
a witness], testimony, evidence, proof.
1.

9. oppugnandum: gerund or ge-
rundive? App. 289: G.-L. 427: A. 506, n. 2:
B. 339, 2: H.-B. 613, 1: H. 628, footnote 2.
castra habuisse, "had encamped."

10. ūnō proeliō: the battle at Mage-
tobriga: cf. 31, 41.

13. amicitiam sibi ōrnāmentō esse
oportēre, lit. "that it was right for the
friendship to be to him for an honor."
Make English of this.

15. petisse: sc. *eam*, referring to
amīcitiā, as the object. The king ad-
mits that he had sued for the honor.

sī remittātur: a vivid future condi-
tion.

17. quam, "than."

quod, "as to the fact that."

21. prius quam populum Rō-
mānum: prius quam = priusquam, a con-
junction, and the more accurate expres-
sion would be priusquam populus
Rōmānus v̄nerit. The truth of the state-
ment is denied by Caesar in the next
chapter.

24. quid sibi vellet, lit. "what did
he wish for himself?" an idiomatic ex-
pression for "what did he mean?" For
mode, see App. 268, I: G.-L. 551: A. 586:
B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

suās refers to Ariovistus.

- 25 suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipse concēdi
 nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item
 nōs esse iniquōs, quod in suō iure sē interpellārēmus. Quod
 frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam
 barbarum neque tam imperitū esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque
 30 bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse
 neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum
 Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbere
 sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in
 Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat
 35 atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō
 amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcērit,

25. sicut or sicutī, *adv.* [sic, so+ut-
 (ī), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.

27. interpellō, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hin-
 der. 1.

31. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1.

33. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2.

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressī,

-pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

35. dēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. *

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ē regione, with gen., opposite. *

25. hanc Galliam, "this (part of) Gaul." He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman province.

ut . . . oportēret, "just as there ought to be no yielding to him." The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably oporteat, sī faciam, lit. "it would be right if I should make." This is a less vivid future condition: App. 257: G.-L. 596: A. 516, 2, b: B. 303: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.

27. quod diceret, "as to the fact that he said, " or "as to his statement."

29. imperitū rērum, "ignorant of political matters."

30. bellō Allobrogum: cf. note on 6, 7.

Haeduōs . . . ūsōs esse: Ariovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haedui and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

31. ipsōs = Haeduōs.

32. dēbere sē suspicārī, "he had a right to suspect."

33. simulātā amīcitiā, "although he made a pretense of friendship" toward Ariovistus.

quod, "inasmuch as."

35. sēsē . . . amīcō habitūrum, "he would regard him [Caesar] not as a friend."

multis sēsē nōbilibus pīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et liberā possēssiōnem Galliae sibi trādīdisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō 40 cōfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiā dicta sunt; quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō 5

37. grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.

40. liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.

41. remūneror, 1, *tr.* [re-+mūneror, present], repay, reward. 1.

42. labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

1. sententiā, -ae, *f.* [sentīō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

3. bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, melius; *sup.*, optimē. 2.

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; dēsertus, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

4. potius, *adv.* [*comp. of potis*, able], rather. 2.

5. Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (rū-tē'ni). *

Q., *abbr. for Quintus*, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Fabius, -bī, *m.* Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C. 1.

37. multis . . . factūrum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compertum habēre differs very slightly from *id comperisse*, "had found this out." This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained"; App. 236, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

1. in eam sententiā, quārē, *lit.* "to this effect, why" = "to show why." quārē posset is an indirect question.

3. patī utī dēsereret, "allowed him to abandon." *patior* is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an *ut* clause.

4. Ariovistī, populī Rōmānī: predicative genitives of possession.

5. superātōs esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44. 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.

Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium
 10 senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit
 5 nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Postea-

6. **Maximus**, -I, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B. C.

1. **ignōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [in-+(g) nōscēns, knowing: nōscō], forgive, pardon. 3.

7. **redigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back,

bring under; render, make; reduce. *
 10. **observō**, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.

3. **adequitō**, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. 1.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. *

5. **etsī**, *conj.* [et+si, if], even if, although. *

6. **neque . . . redēgisset**: the intransitive *ignōvisset* governs the dative, *quibus*; but *redēgisset* is transitive and we must supply *quōs*; *quibus* is needed again with *imposuisset*. The Arverni and Ruteni lay on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman province: this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**, lit. "each most ancient time" = "priority of time."

11. **lēgibus**: ablative with *ūtī*.

voluisset: sc. *senātus* as the subject.

Chap. 46. An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.

1. **geruntur**: mode and tense? App.

234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

2. **tumulum**: case? App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. **quod**: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. **legiōnis dēlēctae**, "to his picked legion"; the genitive cannot always be translated by ^d of."

7. **committendum ut dīcī posset**, lit. "that it ought to be permitted that it could be said" = "that he ought to permit it to be said."

pulsīs hostibus, "after the defeat of the enemy."

8. **per fidem**, "because of their confidence (in Caesar's honor)." This is equivalent to saying "treacherously."

quam in vulgus militum ēlātum est quā arrogantīā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixisset, impetumque ¹⁰ ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercitū iniectum est.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod pridīe ⁵ eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī

10. *interdicō, -dicere, -dīxī, -dictum, intr.* [*dicō, say*], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict: *aquā atque ignī interdiceret, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. 1.*

11. *dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmp-*

9. *quā arrogantīā ūsus*, "using what arrogance" = "with what arrogance. It is often well to translate *ūsus* in this way.

10. *omnī . . . interdixisset*, "had forbidden the Romans all Gaul." *Galliā* is an ablative of separation. *Rōmānīs* is the indirect object.

11. *ut*, "how," introduces both *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset*. It would more naturally precede *impetum*.

Chap. 47. Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.

1. *bīduō post*, "on the following day." The literal meaning is "afterwards by two days," but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. *quae agī coeptae essent*, "which had begun to be discussed," or better,

tum, tr. [*emō, take*], take apart, interrupt, break off. 1.

13. *iniciō, -icere, -lēcī, -iectum, tr.* [*iaciō, hurl. App. 7*], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

9. *Procillus, -ī, m.*, Gaius Valerius

"which they had begun to discuss." The passive forms of *coepti* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

3. *utī cōstitueret*: a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. *lēgātīs*, "legates," not "envoys." Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. *colloquendī . . . est*, "Caesar saw no occasion for a conference."

pridīe eius diēī is only a fuller expression for *pridīe*, and has the same meaning.

6. *retinērī quīn conicerent*, "be kept from casting." For construction see App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

8. *commodissimum vīsum est*, "it seemed best." The subject is *mittere*, l. 15.

40 filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscēntem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitatē dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, 45 quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Procillus (gā'yus vā-lē'rī-us prō-sīl'us), a Gaul. 2.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs kă-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. 1.

10. adulēscēns, -entis, m. [*pres. part.* of *adolēscō*, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

11. Flaccus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā'yus vā-lē'rī-us flāk'ūs), Governor of Gaul, 83 B. C. 1.

dōnō, 1, tr. [*dōnum*, gift], give, present; endow with. 1.

12. scientia, -ae, f. [*sciō*, know],

11. cīvitatē dōnātus erat, "had been granted citizenship."

et . . . et (l. 12) . . . et (l. 13), "both . . . and . . . and."

12. quā multā ūtēbātur, "which Ariovistus spoke fluently."

13. In eō, "in his case."

14. Germānis: dative of possessor. **esset:** implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: "because (as he thought) the Germans had."

ūnā, "with him."

15. hospitio, "guest-friendship." This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospi-

knowledge, science, skill. 4.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [*longus*, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

peccō, 1, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.

14. Mētius, -tī, m., Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). 2.

17. cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [*speciō*, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *

conclāmō, 1, intr. [*clāmō*, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

18. speculator, 1, intr. [*cf. speciō*, look], spy. 1.

19. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter. 3.

tality or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. A similar relationship might exist between a man and a state, or between two states. The obligation was peculiarly binding and sacred.

17. conclāmāvit, etc.: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar's legates.

18. an is *nōt* to be translated. The full thought is something like "is it for anything else, or, etc." By such an ellipsis of the first alternative *an* not infrequently introduces a simple question, though its proper place is in the second alternative of a double question.

cōnantēs, "while they were attempting."

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem inter- 5 clūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit. Genus, hoc erat pugnae 10

1. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

4. ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. 2.

6. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [continēō, hold together], holding together,

unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

7. prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. *

10. genus, -eris, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

Chap. 48-54. After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle and destroys the German host.

Chap. 48. Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.

1. milibus: ablative of measure of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. sub monte: at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

postridiē eius diēi = postridiē. Cf. note on 47, 5.

praeter castra: see the plan, p. 153. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.

5. supportārētur: mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

interclūderet: Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. prō castris: this was the favorite

position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. aciem . . . habuit, "kept his line drawn up."

ut deesset: a purpose clause, although *nē* is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of *ut nōn*. Here *nōn* belongs closely with the verb. *nōn deesset*, lit. "might not be lacking" = "might be offered him."

8. vellet: implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar's mind was *ei vult*, "if he wishes."

9. castris, "in camp." Why not *in castris*? App. 151, c: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. proeliō: cf. references on *castris*, l. 9.

genus . . . exercuerant, "the kind . . . was as follows."

quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vĕlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliis versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī
 15 quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī

11. *exerceō*, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. 1.

12. *totidem*, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

vĕlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. 1.

14. *versō*. 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

15. *dūrus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. 1.

concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

16. *dēcidō*, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. 1.

circumsistō. -sistere, -stitī, —, *tr.*

[*sistō*, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. *

quō, *adv.* [old *dat. case form of quī*, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

prōdeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [prō+eō, go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. 2.

18. *celeritās*, -tātis, *f.* [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. 1.

cursor, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

19. *adaequō*, 1, *tr.* [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

12. *numerō*: ablative of specification, with *totidem*.

13. *singulī singulōs dēlēgerant*, lit. "individuals had chosen individuals" = "had chosen, each for himself."

14. *versābantur*, etc.: tense? App. 191, a: G. L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H. B. 484: H. 534, 3.

hī . . . concurrēbant, "if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid."

15. *quī*: the substantive indefinite

proun, instead of the more usual *quis*.

16. *quō*: this adverb, like the proun *quīs*, is used as an indefinite after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*.

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.

1. *eum* = *Ariovistum*.

nē . . . prohibērētur: the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.

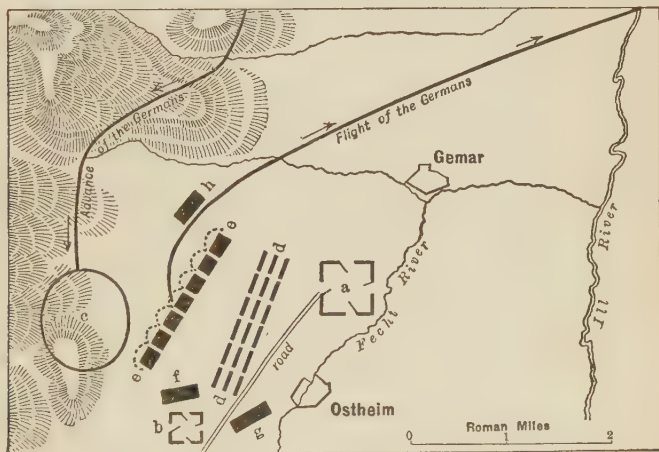
cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iis, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpia nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus ¹⁰

3. *idōneus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

9. *sētius*, *adv.*, less, otherwise; *nihi-*

lō *sētius*, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. 2.

10. *prōpulsō*, 1, *tr.* [freq. of *prō-*



BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

- a, Large Roman camp.
- b, Small Roman camp.
- c, Camp of the Germans.
- d, The Roman legions.

- e, The German infantry.
- f, The Roman auxiliaries.
- g, The Roman cavalry.
- h, The German cavalry.

3. *castris*: dative with the adjective *idōneum*.

4. *aciēs triplici*: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

5. *in armīs*: to repel the expected attack.

7. *hominum . . . expedita*, lit. "sixteen light-armed thousands of men" = "sixteen thousand light-armed infantry."

perficere iussit. Mūnītis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum
5 in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret misit. Acrīter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob
10 rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset, ut mātres familiae

pellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. 1.

2. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *

4. merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.*, [for medīdiēs,

from medius, middle+diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.

7. utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2.

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

12. reliquās: sc. legiōnēs.

redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. institūtō: ablative of accordance.

2. paulum . . . prōgressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.

7. utrimque pugnātum est, "both sides fought."

9. quam ob rem, "why," is here in-

terrogative and introduces an indirect question.

10. proeliō: see note on castrīs, 48, 9. dēcertāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.

11. quod ea cōsuētūdō esset, "that there was this custom," is a substantive quod clause in apposition with hanc causam. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

ut dēclārarent: a substantive clause of result in apposition with ea cōsuētūdō.

mātres familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (sortibus, l. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.

eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit; ālārīos omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitūdine militum legiōnārīōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālārīis ūteretur; ipse triplici instrūctā aciē usque 5 ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs edūxērunt generātīmque cōstituērunt

12. sors, sortis, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. 3.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f., divination. 1.
dēclārō, 1, tr. [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. 1.

13. necne, conj. [nec, nor+ -ne], or not. 1.

-ne, interrog. enclitic: 'in direct questions, simply sign of a question' (App. 213, a); in indirect question: whether; **-ne ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ...**

-ne, whether ... or. 2.

fās, n., indecl., right, divine right, will of Heaven. 1.

14. lūna, -ae, f., the moon. 2.

2. ālārīus, -a, -um, adj. [āla, wing], on the wing; *pl. as noun*, auxiliaries. 2.

5. speciēs, -ēi, f. [speciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

7. generātīm, adv. [genus, tribe], by tribes. 1.

12. utrum ... necne: construction? App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 459: A. 334; 335, n.: B. 162, 4; 300, 4, a: H.-B. 234, a: H. 380; 650, 1.

14. sī contendissent, "if they should fight." *contendissent* stands for a future perfect of the direct form.

novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.

2. quod ... vīsum est, " (a garri-son) which seemed to be sufficient."

ālārīos: the word got the meaning "auxiliaries" from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. multitūdine: ablative of specification.

4. prō, "in comparison with."

6. necessariō: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was

evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle-line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

7. generātīm, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is, that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. They are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—they are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food

paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs
 10 et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiēscētēs militēs passīs manibus flentēs implorābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcīt, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsīt. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs
 5 signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pilīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuetūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem

8. Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bi), the Marcomanni (mār'kō-mān'i). 1.

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). 2.

Vanglonēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jī'ō-nēz). 1.

9. Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). 1.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusiī (sē-dū'shī). 1.

12. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capillīs, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. 2.

1. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō,

and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the *Germania*).

8. intervallis: ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. circumdedērunt: i.e. on the rear and both flanks.

11. eō, "on them," is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought,

1. singulis . . . praefēcīt: i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one

seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3.

3. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (of an army) flank, wing. *

5. repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

6. prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. 1.

7. comminus, *adv.* [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1.

9. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capīō, take], *tr.*, take up,

of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39.

3. eam partem: i.e. the enemy's left wing.

5. signō datō: by trumpeters.

itaque = *et ita*.

6. pīla . . . coniciendī: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55.

7. rēiectīs, "throwing aside." The pīla were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter.

8. phalange: on this formation see 24, 11, note.

9. in phalangem insilirent: i.e.

insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. 10
Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam
 coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum
 nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
 adulēscēns, quī equitatūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam
 īī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nos- 15
 tris subsidiō mīsīt.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga
 vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum
 milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque pervēnērunt. Ibi

catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet,
 withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*);
intr., follow. *

10. *insiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum,*
tr. [*salīō, leap*], leap upon. 1.

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum,
tr. [*re-+vellō, pluck*], pluck or tear
 away, pull out. 1.

dēsuper, adv. [*super, above*], from
 above. 1.

13. *premō, -premere, -pressī, -pres-*
sum, tr., press, press upon, press hard;
 oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

Crassus, -ī, m. Publius Licinius
 Crassus (*pūb'li-ūs li-sin'i-ūs krās'ūs*)

one of Caesar's lieutenants, a son of the
triumvir. *

16. *subsidiū, -dī, n.* [*subsideō,*
sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve;
 reserve force, reserves; help, aid, as-
 sistance. *

1. *tergum, -ī, n.*, the back; *terga*
vertere, to flee; *post tergum or ab*
tergō, in the rear. *

2. *vertō, vertere verti versum, tr.*,
 turn, turn around; *terga vertere*,
 flee. *

fugīō, fugere, fugī, fugitum, tr. and
intr. [*fuga, flight*], *intr.*, flee, run away,
 escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields.
 If the Romans had been able to begin the
 battle with the customary volley of
 javelins, this solid array of shields
 would have been broken up as it was in
 the battle with the Helvetii, 25, 3-10. *in-*
silirent: subjunctive in a clause of
 characteristic.

11. *cum*, "though."

ā sinistrō cornū, "on the left
 wing," which was the weakest part of
 the German line.

14. *expeditior*, "freer to act."
 Crassus and the cavalry were posted be-
 hind the Roman left wing (see plan, p.
 153), out of the way of the German cav-
 alry, for whom they were no match.
 They were taking no part in the battle,
 but were waiting to pursue the enemy
 when the legions should win the victory.

15. *tertiā aciem*: as usual, this
 was being held in reserve for just such
 an emergency.

labōrantibus nostris subsidiō, "to
 the assistance of our hard-pressed men."

Chap. 53. The Germans are routed.
 Caesar's envoys are rescued.

1. *terga vertērunt*: the line of wag-
 ons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but
 could not entirely prevent it. It is pos-
 sible, too, that during the battle the
 Germans had advanced so far that
 there was space enough for flight be-
 tween the wagons and the German line.

2. *flūmen Rhēnum*: as the Rhine is
 much more than five miles from the
 battlefield, it is probable that the Ill
 river is meant, and that Caesar mistook
 it for the Rhine.

perpauci aut viribus cōfisi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus
 5 inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī
 nāviculam dēligātā ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs
 omnēs cōsecūti equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt
 Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum
 dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā
 10 dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt
 duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius
 Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnis catēnis vinctus
 traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem
 incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa
 5 victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum
 prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex
 manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte

4. trānō, 1, *intr.* [trāns+nō, swim], swim across. 1.

5. invenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [venīō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

6. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of nāvis, ship], small boat, skiff. 1.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

8. nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

9. Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vōk'-shyō), a king of Noricum. 1.

10. pereō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed,

perish. 2.

12. trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. 1.

vinciō, vincire, vīnxi, vinctum, *tr.* bind. 1.

13. trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. 1.

14. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

15. voluptās, -tātis, *f.* [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 1.

16. hospes, -itis, *m.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.

4. viribus: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

5. Ariovistus: four years later we hear that the Germans desired to avenge his death. Possibly he died of wounds received in this battle.

6. eā, "in this," is an ablative of means.

reliquōs omnēs: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 were killed in the battle and retreat.

7. duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.

10. dūxerat: "had married"; while dūxerat in 1. 9 means "had brought."

12. Procillus: cf. 47, 9.

13. insequentem, "who was following."

17. neque . . . dēminuerat, "nor had Fortune, by injury to Procillus.

dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium 20 beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex iis numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, 5 in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

18. grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1.

19. ter, *num. adv.* [cf. trēs, three], three times. 1.

cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1.

20. statim, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. *

necō, 1. *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

reservō, 1. *tr.* [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

21. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

2. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubiī (ū/bī-i). *

4. aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

5. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

7. praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. 1.

lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing"; lit. "lessened anything of," *quicquam* being the direct object.

19. sē praesente, "in his presence."

cōsultum: sc. esse.

20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.

1. quī . . . vēnerant: cf. 37, 5.

3. Rhēnum: case? App. 122, b: G.-L.

359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Veson. tio. The quartering of the army on Gallie soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, "to hold the provincial courts." This was a part of his duty as governor of the province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there

BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebatas assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost

heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for **I, 30-54**, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebatas, and the Atuatucae are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Axona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suessiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in **III, 28** we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. **34** are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book **III** make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Axona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatucae is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Göler (*Caesars Gallischer Krieg*, pp. 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.



Campaign Map for Book II

LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliā, ita uti suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, 5 quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur,

1. *suprà*, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *as adv.*, before, previously; (2) *as prep. with acc.*, above; before. *

2. *crēber*, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp. crēbrior*; *sup.*, *crēberrimus* (App. 40). 4.

rŭmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. 2.

afferō, *afferre*, *attulī*, *allātum*, *tr.*

[*ad+ferō*, carry. App 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

4. *coniūrō*, 1, *intr.* [*iūrō*, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. *

7. *sollicitō*, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. 2.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.

1. *citeriøre Galliā*: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dēmōnstrāvimus: in I, 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. *Labiēni*: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fiēbat, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.

Belgās: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dixerāmus, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." *quam* refers to *Belgās*, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun *partem*. The pluperfect *dixerāmus* is occasionally used in such statements

instead of the more common perfect.

4. *coniūrāre*, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. *quod verērentur*: a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causās*. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omni . . . Galliā, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." *Galliā* here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.

7. *sollicitārentur*: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.

partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in
 10 Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

8. partim, *adv.* [*acc. of pars*, part], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. 4.

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

9. inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, *intr.*, grow old; become established. 1.

10. molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance;

8. partim quī, "some of whom"; i.e. the opponents of all foreigners.

10. partim quī, "others of whom." **mōbilitāte et levitāte**: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. ab nōn nūllīs (*sollicitārentur*): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, 2), Casticus (I, 3), and Dumnorix (I, 18).

***1. esset**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

2. litteris: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. Labiēnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Belgās: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

4. coniūrāre: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

obsidēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

6. verērentur: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 530: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

molestē ferre, be annoyed. 1.

mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [*mōbilis*, movable], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [*levis*, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1.

13. vulgō, *adv.* [*vulgus*, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

12. ad . . . hominēs, "for employing mercenaries."

13. quī . . . poterant: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.

14. imperiō nostrō: case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

Galliā: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 2: B. 227, 2, d: H.-B. 421, 4: H. 489, 1.

7. addūcerētur: mode? App. 223, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

Galliīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

9. populī: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

10. mōbilitāte: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

11. imperiīs: case? App. 115: G.-L. 340, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (b): H. 426, 1.

13. occupābantur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 539: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

* These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 29 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in ceteriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum

2. **ineō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr.** [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; **inire cōsiliū, form; inire ratiōnem,** make an estimate, decide; **inire grātiām, gain; inire numerum, enumerate.** *

aestās, -tātis, f., summer. *

3. **dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr.** [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. *

Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pedius, -dī, m., Quintus Pedius (kwīn'tūs pē'dī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2.

Chap. 2-4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.

Chap. 2. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. **duās legiōnēs:** Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. **initā aestāte,** "after the beginning of warm weather." *Aestās* included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e. to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 162.

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

4. **incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.** [capiō, take], undertake; begin, commence. 1.

5. **negōtium, -tī, n.** [neg- + ōtium leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōtī,** what business; **nihil negōtī,** no difficulty. *

Senonēs, -um, m. (Bef), the Senone. (sēn'ō-nēz). 1.

7. **cōstanter, adv.** [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2.

8. **vērō, adv.** [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *

3. **quī (eās) dēdūceret,** "to take them."

cum primum: in June. *Cum primum* usually takes the indicative.

6. **gerantur:** Caesar said *ea quae geruntur cognōscite*, "find out what is being done." *gerantur* is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, note: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.

7. **manūs cōgī,** "that armed bands were gathering."

8. **dubitandum (sibi esse) quā proficisceretur,** lit. "that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out," = "that he should hesitate to set out." When *dubitō* means "hesitate" it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2, R. 3: A. 558, a, n. 2:

nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā
 10 comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finēs
 Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne
 vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum
 lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, mīsērunt, quī

1. **imprōvisus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + **prōvisus**, foreseen; **prōvideō**], unforeseen, unexpected; **dē, imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. 1.

opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opīnor, think], way of thinking, [opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opīniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. *

2. **Rēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to or one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, **Rēmī**, *m.* (Bef), the Remi (rē'mī). *

3. **Iccius**, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (ik'shyūs), a chief of the Remi. 3.

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (än'dē-brō'jyūs). 1.

B. 298, b: H.-B. 521, 3, b; 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. **ad finēs**: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See map facing p. 162, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Remi submit to Caesar.

1. **eō**: the adverb.

omnium opīniōne, lit. "than the opinion of all," = "than any one had expected."

2. **Rēmī**: a Belgian state, of appar-

1. **legiōnēs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. **aestāte**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

3. **dēdūceret**: mode? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 630: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 590.

lēgātum: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

4. **pābuli**: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

inciperet: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546; B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

5. **Senonibus**: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 385, a: H. 424.

ently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgīs, "the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul"; i.e. at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgīs: the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. **quī dīcerent**: purpose. The rest

Belgīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 434, 2.

6. **cognōscant**: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

7. **certiōrem**: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

manūs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

8. **cōgī**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

10. **diēbus**: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

11. **Belgārum**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs 5 cōnsēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furō- 10 rem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quin cum hīs cōsentirent.

5. **permittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, tr.** [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

6. **cōsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsū, intr.** [sentiō, feel], think together; agree, combine. 2.

7. **imperātum, -ī, n.** [imperō, command], command, order. 2.

8. **cēterī, -ae, -a, adj.**, the rest of,

of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

4. **sē** is the object of *permittere*. Another *sē* must be supplied as its subject: "that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.

5. **neque . . . neque . . . que**, "(and) not . . . and not . . . and."

1. **opiniōne**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406, a: B. 217, 1, 4: H.-B. 416, e: H. 471, 8.

2. **vēnisset**: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H. B. 526: H. 598.

proximī: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Galliae: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 434, 2.

3. **lēgātōs**: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

5. **Belgīs**: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. **coniūrāsse**: form? App. 72: G.-L.

the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

9. **cis**, *prep.* with *acc.*, on this side of. 2.

10. **coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.** [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *

furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

11. **Suessiōnēs, -um, m.** (Be), the Suessiones (swēs"ī-ō'nēs). *

7. **esse**: infinitive in indirect discourse. *dare, facere, recipere*, and *iuvare* depend on *parātōs*.

9. **cis**: the Gallic side.

10. **sēsē**: do not translate.

11. **ut**: with *potuerint*.

Suessiōnēs: object of *dēterrēre*.

13. **dēterrēre quin**, "prevent from."

131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

7. **oppidīs**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423; 446, 1: H. 476, 3.

9. **incolant**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: H. 643.

11. **frātrēs**: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

12. **iūre**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, 1.

13. **potuerint**: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

14. **cōsentirent**: mode? App. 228, c: G.-L. 555, 1: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 563, 1; 566.

4. Cum ab iis quaereret quae civitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent
 5 expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant,
 10 proptereā quod propinquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō

2. **quid**, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with posse*, how? e.g. **quid Germānī pos-**
sent, how strong were the Germans. *
sic, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner;
sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. *
plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*,
 very many, the most of; *as noun*, a great
 many, very many. 2.

3. **antiquitus**, *adv.* [**antiquus**, an-
 cient], from early or ancient times; long
 ago, anciently. 2.

4. **fertilitās**, -tātis, *f.* [**fertilis**,
 productive], productiveness. 1.

5. **expellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pul-
sum, *tr.* [**pellō**, drive], drive out or
 forth, expel. 4.

6. **Teutonī**, -ōrum or **Teutonēs**,
 -um, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) or Teu-

tones (tū'tō-nēs).

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sīm'-
 brī). 4.

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [**inter**, between]
 within, inside; into. 4.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,
intr. [**gradior**, go], go or come into, en-
 ter. 1.

8. **spīritus**, -ūs, *m.* [**spīrō**, breathe],
 breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

9. **explōrō**, 1, *tr.*, search or find out,
 investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. 2.

10. **propinquitās**, -tātis, *f.* [**pro-**
pinquus, neighboring, near], nearness,
 vicinity; relationship. 3.

11. **commūnis**, -e, *adj.*, common,
 general; **rēs commūnis**, the common
 interest. *

Chap. 4. The Remi inform Caesar
 of the numbers in the Belgian army.

1. **iis**: i.e. the envoys of the Remi.

2. **quid**: case? App. 128, b: G.-L.
 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387,
 III: H. 416, 2.

plērōsque Belgās: the remainder of
 the chapter is in indirect discourse.
 The direct form is given after Book
 VII.

The tradition that most of the Belgae
 were descended from Germans was not
 strictly true, but the Belgae prided
 themselves on the supposed fact because
 of the Germans' renown in war.

4. **Gallōs**: the object.

6. **Teutonōs Cimbrōsque**: on this
 invasion see Int. 27.

ingredi prohibuerint, "prevented
 from entering." Caesar always uses
 the infinitive after **prohibeō**, instead of
 the subjunctive with **nē** or **quōminus**.

7. **prohibuerint** was subjunctive in
 the direct form. See App. 230, b: G.-L.
 631, 2: A. 535, b: B. 283, 2: H.-B. 521, 1: H.
 591, 1.

9. **dē numerō**: i.e. the numerical
 strength of the Belgian army.

omnia . . . explōrāta, "that they
 had ascertained everything." See ref-
 erences at the end of the chapter.

11. **quisque**: i.e. each delegate.

ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctoritate et hominum numero valere; hōs posse cōficere armata milia centum; pollicitōs ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessionēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs latissimōs feracissimōsque agrōs possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse regem Galbam; ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero XII; polliceri milia armata quinquaginta;

13. *Bellovacī, -ōrum, m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bē-lōv'ā-sī). *

14. *armō, 1, tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm 'one's self; *armatus, pf. part. as adj.*, armed; *armatī, as noun*, armed men. *

15. *eligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr.* [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; *electus, pf. part. as adj.*, picked (men, etc.). 1.

sexaginta (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty. 1.

postulō, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *

16. *ferāx, -ācis, adj.* [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. 1.

17. *possideō, -sidere, -sedī, -sessim, tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

rēx, régis, m., king. *

18. *Diviciacus, -ī, m.*, Diviciacus, (div'ī-shī-ā'kūs), a chief of the Suessiones. 1.

12. *pollicitus sit*: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.

plurimum: compare note on *quid*, 1. 2.

14. *armata milia centum*, lit. "one hundred armed thousands," = "one hundred thousand armed men."

pollicitōs: supply *esse*.

16. *suōs*: i.e. of the Remi; see map.

17. *possidere*: supply *eōs* (*Suessiōnēs*) on the subject.

19. *regiō, -ōnis, f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; *ē regiōne, with gen.*, opposite. *

Britannia, -ae, f. (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'ī-ā), better Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*), never *Britany*. *

20. *nunc, adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the *Suessiones*. 2.

21. *prudentia, -ae, f.* [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. 1.

deferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; *dēlātus* (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. *

22. *quinquaginta (L), card. num. adj., indecl.*, fifty. 3.

18. *Diviciacum*: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.

cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

19. *partis* and *Britanniae* both depend on *imperium*.

Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

21. *summam*: the noun; not the superlative adjective.

totidem Nervios, qui maximē ferī inter ipsos habeantur longis-
simēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebatēs, Ambianōs decem
55 milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia,
Velocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuaticōs xix milia;
Condrūsos, Eburonēs, Caerōsos, Caemānos, qui ūnō nōmine
Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad xl milia.

23. totidem, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-i). *

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

24. Atrebās, -bātis, *m.* (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). *

Ambiāni, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ām'bī-ā'nī). 2.

25. Morini, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mōr'i-nī). *

Menapii, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pī-i). *

23. Nervios: with this and the following proper nouns supply *pollicērī*.

maximē ferī: the superlative.

longissimē absint: i.e. from the

2. essent: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

3. Germanis: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, b: H. 469, 1.

Rhenum: case? App. 127, a: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1, 2: B. 179, 1, 3: H.-B. 386, a: H. 413.

5. patrum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1, n. 1.

7. quā: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

rerum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

memoriā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

septem (VII), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, seven. 2.

Caleti, -ōrum (*or* -ēs, -um), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). 1.

26. Velocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Velocasses (vē'lī-ō-kās'ēz). 1.

Viromandui, -ōrum *m.* (Be), the Viromandui (vīr'ō-mān'dū-i). 3.

Atuatici, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatici (āt'ū-āt'ū-sī). 4.

27. Condrusi, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-drū'sī). 2.

Eburonēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēz). 2.

Caerōsi, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerōsi (sē-rō'sī). 1.

Caemāni, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemāni (sē-mā'nī). 1.

southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.

28. Germani: these tribes were very

8. sibi: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

sūmerent: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

9. explorāta: use? App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

13. virtūte: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397, 2: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

18. memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

19. regiōnum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

21. voluntāte: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere rei pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnfigendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam

1. liberāliter, *adv.* [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with ōrātiōne, address. 3.

3. diligenter, *adv.* [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. 4.

5. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

quantopere, *adv.* [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much

as. 1.

6. distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. 3.

7. cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fictum, *intr.* [figō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. 1.

8. intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [intrō, within + dūcō, lead], lead or bring into. 3.

9. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

appellantur: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

arbitrārī (pollicērī), "they (the Remi) thought the Condrusi . . . promised."

Chap. 5-8. The armies approach each other.

Chap. 5. Caesar sends the Haedui to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

5. quantopere: interrogative. Explain the mode of *intersit*.

commūnis salūtis: i.e. of both Haedui and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

intersit . . . distinēri, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned . . . that the

bands of the enemy be kept apart." The clause *manūs . . . distinēri* is the subject of the impersonal verb *intersit*.

6. nē cōnfigendum sit, lit. "that it might not have to be fought," = "that they might not have to fight." The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

7. id: i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence *id . . . coeperint* is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet*, l. 5.

in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Belloaci were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see 4, 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home.

8. intrōdūxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the direct form.

10 *omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre*
neque iam longē abesse ab iis quōs mīserat explorātōribus et
ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs
Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi
 15 *castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis*
mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat,
et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō
ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi
praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabi-
num lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdi-

12. *Axona, -ae, m.* (Bf), the Axona (Āk'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. 2.

15. *tūtus, -a, -um, adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. *

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [red- + dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. *

16. *commeātus, -ūs, m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; sup-

plies, provisions. *

17. *efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

18. *Sabinus, -ī, m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs tī-tū'ri-ūs sa-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

19. *cohors, -tis, f.*, cohort. *

10. *in ūnum locum*: somewhere to the northwest of the Axona river.

coāctās venīre, lit. "having been gathered were coming," = "had gathered and were coming."

venīre, abesse: indirect discourse, depending on *cognōvit*.

11. *ab iis explorātōribus cognōvit*, "learned from the scouts."

14. *castra*: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 177. The hill is eighty feet high.

quae rēs et, "this position both."

latus ūnum: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. *post . . . reddēbat*, "rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind

him"; i.e. that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. *commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat*, lit. "made that provisions could be brought up," = "made it possible for." *ut . . . possent* is a substantive clause of result, the object of *efficiēbat*.

17. *in*, "over."

18. *praesidium*: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.

in alterā parte, "on the other side"; i.e. at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

19. *sex cohortibus*: how many men? See Int. 33.

castra: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52.

nem pedum XII vällō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnirī 20 iubet.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci 5 coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā

1. **Bibrax, -ctis, f.** (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. 1.

3. **sustentō, i, tr. and intr.** [freq. of **sustineō**, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. 2.

4. **oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f.** [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. 2.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1.

5. **moenia, -ium, n. pl.**, defensive

20. **duodēvigintī pedum**: i.e. in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.

1. **nōmine**: ablative of specification. **Bibrax**: see map facing p. 162.

2. **ex itinere**: i.e. without stopping to make camp.

3. **sustentātum est**, lit. "it was held

3. **quae**: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

5. **docet**: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

rei publicae: case? App. 110: G.-L. 381: A. 355: B. 210; 211, 1: H.-B. 345: H. 449, 1.

6. **multitudine**: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413, b: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 4: H. 473, 1.

walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. 3.

lapis, -idis, m., stone. *

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, tr., throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. *

6. **dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.** [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. *

nūdō, i, tr. [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. 3.

testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. 1.

out"; but translate personally.

eadem atque Belgārum, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See *atque* in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."

4. **haec**, "as follows."

circumiectā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun, etc."

6. **coeptī sunt**: why not *coepērunt*?

7. **cōnfigendū sit**: mode? App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

12. **cognōvit**: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

flūmen, exercitum: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

20. **pedum**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, R. 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

succēdunt mūrūmq̄ue subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, 10 Iccius Rēm̄us, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iis quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus quī

7. subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. 1.

12. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], sitting in re-

See App. 86, *a*: G.-L. 175, 5, *a*: A. 205, *a*: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1.

testūdine: see Plate III, 3, facing p. 34.

8. conicerent agrees with the meaning, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun *multitūdō*.

10. summā, "(a man) of the highest."

11. ūnus ex iis: App. 101, *b*: G.-L. 372, R. 2: A. 346, *c*: B. 201, 1, *a*: H.-B. 346, *e*: H.

2. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

impetū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. diē: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

5. moenibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

6. coepti sunt: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554: 557: H. 602.

dēfēnsōribus: case? App. 134, *b*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, *b*: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

8. conicerent: mode? App. 240: 242, *a*: G.-L. 579, II, *a*: 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, *b*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

9. nullī: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

10. nōbilitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

serve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

submittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. *

444. ūnus is here used as a noun in apposition with *Iccius*.

12. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. *nūntiōs mittit* implies "saying."

Chap. 7. Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.

1. eō: to Bibrax.

isdem ducibus ūsus, "employing the same persons as guides."

12. mittit: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

13. sēsē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

posse: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580, *a*: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642, 1.

As explained under II, 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subject of infinitive

Ablative of time

Narrative cum clause

Infinitive in indirect discourse

nūntiī ab Icciō v̄nerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque 5 paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō

2. Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidae (nū'mī-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.

*** Crētēs, -um, m.,** the Cretes (krē'tēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. 1.

sagittārius, -rī, m. [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. 3.

3. funditor, -ōris, m. [funda, sling], slinger. 4.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl'ē-ā'-rīk), (i.e. coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca). 1.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2.

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defense. 1.

prōpugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. 1.

6. paulisper, adv. [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. 3.

adeō, -ire, -ī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. *

9. fūmus, -ī, m., smoke. 1.

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, "at their arrival"; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

4. et . . . et, "not only . . . but also."

cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, "along with the hope of (making a successful) defense."

5. hostibus discessit, lit. "went away for the enemy" = "left the enemy." *hostibus* is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for *potiendū*. How can *potior*, an

intransitive verb, have a gerundive? App. 289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

6. morātī, dēpopulātī: as *moror* and *dēpopulor* are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of *contendērunt*. But as *incēnsus* is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. ā . . . duōbus, "less than two miles away"; i.e. from Caesar's camp. *ab* is here used adverbially; *milibus* is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative *minus* not affecting the construction. See App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

9. ut, "as."

10 atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse 5 inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam

10. **significō**, 1, *tr.* [**signum**, sign + **faciō**, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4.

1. **primō**, *adv.* [**primus**, first], at first, in the first place. *

2. **eximius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**eximō**, take out], taken from the mass; hence

choice, eminent. 1.

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. 1.

4. **periclitōr**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**periculum**, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. 1.

10. **milibus**: ablative after the comparative *amplius*. The references on 1. 8 say only that *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. **multitūdinem**: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. 4, the total was 296,000 men; but probably not all were sent.

2. **opīniōnem virtūtis**, "reputation for valor."

proeliō: ablative of separation.

4. **nostrī**: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.

5. The following description is less clear than most of Caesar's descriptions of places, so that it cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending

1. **mediā**: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

isdem: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

2. **sagittāriōs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

3. **subsidiō, oppidānis**: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

4. **dēfēnsiōnis**: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

prōpugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

5. **potiundī**: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503, a; 504: B. 339,

1: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, 1: H. 623; 626.

7. **vicis**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

8. **Caesaris**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

cōpiis: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

milibus duobus: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

10. **milibus octō**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Direct object

Ablative absolute

nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque

6. *opportunus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *

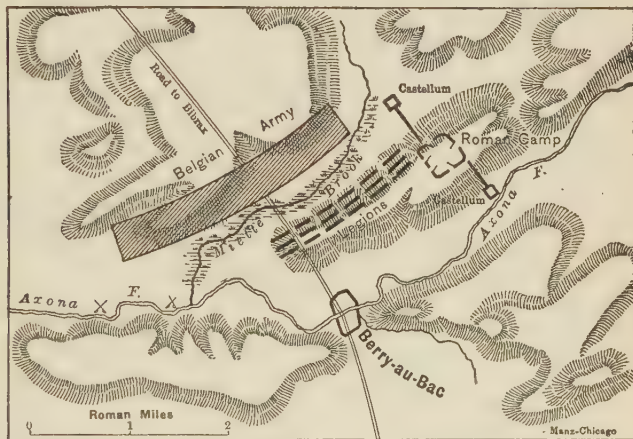
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

7. *paululum*, *adv.* [paulus, little],

a very little. 1.

plānitīēs, -ēi, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2.



BATTLE ON THE AXONA

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its *latera*.

locō opportunō, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

prō castris; i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. *collis* is the subject of *patēbat*, *habebat*, and *redibat*.

7. *tantum . . . poterat*, lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend."

in lātitudinem: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. *loci*: we should expect this partitive genitive to limit *tantum* rather than *quantum*.

- ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter
 10 fastigātus paulātīm ad plānitīem redībat, ab utrōque latere
 eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et
 ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit,
 nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multītūdine
 poterant, ab lateribus pugnāntēs suōs circumvenīre possent.
 15 Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in
 castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reli-

9. **uterque, utraque, utrumque**, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *

dēiectus, -ūs, m. [dēiciō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. *

frōns, frontis, f., forehead; front. 3.
lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.

10. **fastigātus, -a, -um, adj.**, sloping. 1.

paulātīm, adv. [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

11. **trānsversus, -a, -um, adj.** [trānsvertō, turn across], turned across, cross. 1.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead towards; extend,

dig. 1.

12. **tormentum, -ī, n.** [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. 3.

16. **quō, adv.** [old dat. case of quī, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est**, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or the abl. (App. 146). *

9. **ex . . . lateris**, lit. "at each end of the side" = "at each end"; i.e. the east and west ends of the hill. **utrāque parte** alone might mean either the ends or the sides. As **latus** means one of the long sides of the hill, **utrāque parte lateris** must mean the ends.

in fronte: i.e. the northern slope.

10. **ab utrōque latere**, "on each side"; i.e. on the northern and southern slopes.

11. **trānsversam**, "at right angles" to the ridge. The plan shows that one trench ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. **extrēmās**: i.e. the outer ends.

tormenta: see Int. 63.

13. **instrūxisset**: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect, for Caesar's thought was "that I may not be surrounded when I shall have drawn up my line."

14. **ab lateribus**, "on the flanks." The trenches, protected only the right flank of the army, but the left was sufficiently protected by the Miette.

15. **quās . . . cōscripserat**: cf. 2, 1. These legions were not sufficiently disciplined to be brought into the battle unless it were necessary.

16. **quō**: the adverb; supply **dūcī**; "if there should be need of their being led anywhere."

subsidiō: dative of purpose.

quās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent, hostēs exspectābant; nostri autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundi fieret, ut impeditōs aggredereantur parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trānseundi initium 5 faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. 10 Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī

1. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. *

5. neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen. -triūs, dat. -tri*), *adj. used as noun* [ne-+uter, which of two], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. 1.

Chap. 9-11. The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.

Chap. 9. Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgae attempt to pass him by a ford.

1. palūs erat, "there was a marsh"; i.e. the marshy ground along the Miette.

2. sī trānsirent: construction? App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, b: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

3. sī . . . fieret, "if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on *ut aggredereantur*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin." impeditōs: i.e. bycrossing the marsh.

3. proeliis: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

posset: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

6. nātūrā: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397:

7. prōtinus, *adv.* [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 1.

11. interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.* [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1.

6. faciunt: historical present, for the more usual perfect after *ubi*.

secundiōre proeliō: ablative absolute.

8. contendērunt: Caesar did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadīs: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.

10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc."

possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But *praeerat* is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.

A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

8. patēbat: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of means

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō

13. ego, meī (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl. nōs*, we, us, etc. *

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtōr, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsuī esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venīre, come by

necessity, happen. *

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. 2.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. 2.

12. minus, "not," as is usual after *sī*. potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as *expugnārent*.

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-

armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.

3. in eō locō: i.e. at the fords.

4. nostrī is the subject of *occidērunt*, *reppulērunt*, and *interfēcērunt*.

8. ubi introduces *intellēxērunt*, *vidērunt*, and *coepit*.

3. trānseundī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

4. aggredierentur: mode? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

6. nostrīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

10. cōsiliō: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475.

cui: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

11. lēgātus: case? App. 95, b: G.-L.

320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

13. nōbīs ūsuī: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

gerendum: construction? App. 288; 289; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503, a; 506, n. 2: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628, footnote 2.

commeātū: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 463.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Dative with adjectives

Ablative of cause

Purpose clauses

spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīqu-
ōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs 16
frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt
optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in
finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfen-
dendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs
finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūter- 15
entur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque
ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus
Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut

9. fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.

inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in*+*aequus*, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

10. prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [*gradior*, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *

11. dēficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [*faciō*, make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. *

14. potius, *adv.* [*comp. of potis*, able], rather. 2.

15. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [*certō*, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*domus*, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. 1.

16. sententia, -ae, *f.* [*sentiō*, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *

18. appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [*ad*+*propinquus*, near], come near or close, approach. *

9. ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. "when they saw that their hope about the town to be taken . . . had disappointed them" = "when they saw that they were disappointed in their hope of taking the town."

neque = *et nōn*.

nostrōs . . . prōgredi: i.e. the legions would not descend the hill to the Miete.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires thorough organization to supply so large an army. Caesar's superiority to the Gallic leaders is always evident in this matter no less than on the battle field. He sometimes marched into the heart of a hostile country, where it is hard to see how he secured supplies; but we hear only once of a failure to keep his army well fed.

11. cōstituērunt has two objects,

(1) *optimum esse*, "that it was best" (indirect discourse), and (2) (*ut*) *convenīrent*, "to assemble" (a substantive volitive clause).

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "let us assemble to protect those into whose territory the Romans shall have led."

16. cum, "in addition to."

17. Dīviciācum . . . appropinquāre: in accordance with Caesar's directions See 5, 7.

finibus: indirect object of the compound verb *appropinquāre*.

18. hīs persuādērī nōn potera, lit. "it could not be persuaded to these." Turn into English. It will be remembered that the Bellovacī had reason to be lukewarm in their allegiance to the confederation. See note on 5, 7.

diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā

1. **strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2.

2. **tumultus**, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **prīmī ōrdinēs**, centurions of the first rank. *

4. **properō**, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. 2.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. 1.

5. **statim**, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. *

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. 1.

19. **neque** = *et nōn*.

Chap. 11. The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.

1. **secundā vigiliā**: i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As the nights were short, this would be between

ten and twelve.

2. **castris**: ablative of separation.

4. **fēcērunt ut profectiō vidērētur**, "they made their departure seem." **fugae**: dative.

1. **certior**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

ab **Titūriō**: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

2. **armātūrae**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

equitātum, pontem: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

5. **eōrum (numerus)**: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

8. **expugnandō**: construction? App. 288; 289; 294: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503, a; 507: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, IV; 613, 1: H. 623; 629.

9. **intellēxērunt**: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

10. **pugnandī**: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428, R. 2: A. 501; 502; 504, b: B. 338, 1, c: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

12. **domum**: case? App. 131: G.-L.

337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H. 419, 1.

13. **intrōdūxissent**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

18. **cognōverant**: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I. 3.

his: case? App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a, b: H.-B. 362; 364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.

19. **morārentur**: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1^h 565.

suis: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 382: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective *Indirect object*
Partitive genitive *Ablative of agent*
Gerund *Gerundive*
Two objects with compound verbs
Substantive volitive (purpose) clauses
Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.
Dependent clauses in ind. discourse

insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum 10 lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō 15 vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō cōtinērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum

6. *perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr.* [*speciō, look*], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

10. *Aurunculēius, -ī, m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng"-kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 3.

11. *subsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr.* [*sequor, follow*], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. *

13. *fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, tr. and intr.* [*fuga, flight*], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

6. *quod perspexerat*: a causal clause.

7. *castrīs*, "in camp"; but the absence of *in* shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. *quī morārētur*, "to delay"; a purpose clause.

11. *lēgātum*: see Int. 38.

subsequi: the legions could not overtake the fugitives, but if the latter stopped to resist the cavalry the legions could make short work of them.

13. *fugientium*, "in their flight."

cum . . . cōsisterent, "since (those) in the rear, whom (our men) had overtaken, would stop." *cōsisterent, sustinērent*,

14. *fortiter, adv.* [*fortis, brave*], bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

15. *prior, prius, adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. 2.

16. *necessitās, -tātis, f.* [*necesse, necessary*], necessity, constraint, need. 2.

17. *exaudiō, 4, tr.* [*audiō, hear*], hear (*from a distance*). 1.

clāmōr, -ōris, m. [*clāmō, cry out*], outcry, noise, din, clamor. *

perturbō, 1, tr. [*turbō, disturb*], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. *

and *pōnerent* are imperfects of repeated action: all through the day the cavalry kept overtaking bodies of the enemy, who were killed in the manner described in the text.

14. *ventum erat* is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. *priōrēs*, "(but) those [of the enemy] in advance."

quod vidērentur neque continērentur: a causal clause; mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

16. *neque . . . neque*, "and . . . not . . . nor."

multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium;
 20 sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat
 imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex
 terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessionum, quī proximī
 Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum
 Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus,
 5 quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem
 fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre

2. **terror, -ōris, m. terreō**, fright-
 en], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2.

4. **Noviodūnum, -ī, n.**, Noviodunum
 (nō'vī-ō-dū'nūm) (Be) *the capital of the*
Suessiones, the modern Soissons. 1.

19. **quantum . . . spatium**, lit. "as
 was the length of the day" = "as the
 length of the day permitted."

Chap. 12-15. The Suessiones, the
 Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender
 to Caesar.

Chap. 12. Caesar takes the chief
 town of the Suessiones.

1. **priusquam reciperent**: mode?
 App. 236, b: G. L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1,
 b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 2. Now that
 Caesar had broken up the combination
 of states, it only remained for him to
 subdue them one by one.

1. **strepitū, tumultū, ōrdine, im-
 periō**: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412:
 B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. **peteret**: mode? App. 239: G.-L.
 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337:
 A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H.
 419, 1.

5. **vidērētur**: mode? App. 229, b:
 G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B.
 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

6. **discēderent**: mode? App. 262:
 G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B.
 537, b: H. 649, II.

11. **legiōnibus**: case? App. 140: G.-L.
 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H.
 473, 1.

5. **vacuus, -a, -um, adj.** [**vacō**, be
 empty], empty, unoccupied; free from,
 destitute of. 2.

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō au-
 diēns**, obedient. *

3. **magnō itinere**: about 28 miles.
 Caesar recrossed the Axona and marched
 along its south bank. See map facing
 p. 162.

4. **ex itinere**: i.e. before making
 camp and without letting the soldiers
 rest, although they were tired after their
 unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar
 wanted to take the town before its gar-
 rison could be reënforced. On this
 method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. **paucis dēfendentibus**, "although
 there were but few defenders": ablative
 absolute with adversative meaning.

12. **mīlia**: case? App. 130: G.-L.
 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

15. **mīlitum**: case? App. 98: G.-L.
 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H.
 440, 1.

periculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390,
 1: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, a:
 H. 461.

17. **sibi**: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350,
 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subjective genitive

Ablative of separation

Ablative of accompaniment

Ablative of manner

Indirect question

nōn potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppug-
nandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga
Suessionum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit.
Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iactō turribusque 10
cōstitūtis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante
Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Rōmānōrum permōti
lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē deditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs
ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius
Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis,
in deditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs
dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium
contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter 5
milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō

7. *vineae*, -ae, *f.* [*vīnum*, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. 4.

10. *agger, aggeris*, *m.*, material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. *

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. *

11. *magnitūdō*, -inis, *f.* [*magnus*, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (*corporum*); violence (*venti*); severity (*poenae*); *magnitū-*

dō animi, courage. *

12. *celeritās*, -tātis, *f.* [*celer*, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

14. *cōservō*, *i*, *tr.* [*servō*, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. *

4. *Bratuspantium*, -ti, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (*brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm*). 1.

6. *nātus*, -ūs, *m.* [*nāscor*, be born], birth; *maiōrēs nātū*, greater by birth, elders. 3.

7. *vineas agere*, "to move up the *vineae*." See Int. 62, d.

quaeque, "and (those things) which."

8. *usui*, dative of purpose.

9. *in oppidum*: they probably entered from the north by crossing the Axona. There may have been a bridge which Caesar had not had time to destroy.

10. *aggere turribusque*: see Int. 61.

13. *petentibus Rēmīs*: on the relations between the Remi and the Suessiōnes see 3, 11.

14. *impetrant*, "they [the Suessi-

ones] obtained their request." The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

1. *obsidibus*, "as hostages"; in apposition with *primis*, which is used as a noun, and with *filiis*.

2. *Galbae*: who had been head of the league; see 4, 20.

3. *Bellovacōs*: the strongest Belgian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 162.

6. *ex oppidō*: is *ex* needed with this verb? See 11, 2.

14. *cōservārentur*: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, e: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

impetrant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469; B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Historical present

ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum
 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā
 15 Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī principēs fuissent, quod

7. **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum** or **tēsum, tr.**, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. 1.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, *variously translated according to context*, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. *

11. **pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, tr.**, spread or stretch out, extend; **passīs capillīs**, with disheveled hair; **passīs manibus**, with outstretched hands. 2.

7. **vōce significāre**: the Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. *sēsē . . . contendere* depends on this expression.

10. **puerī**, "children," both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."

Chap. 14. Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

1. **discessum**: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.

4. **quī**: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

6. **nātū**: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226, 1: H.-B. 441: H. 480, 1.

11. **mōre**: case? App. 142, a: G.-L.

1. **discessus, -ūs, m.** [discēdō, de-part], departure, withdrawal, absence. 3.

4. **impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr.** [in + pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

5. **redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.** [red- + agō put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

indignitās, -tātis, f. [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. 1.

3. **omnī tempore fuisse**, "had always been." Diviciacus claims the Bellovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Haedui. See Int. 29.

4. **impulsōs . . . et dēfēcisse et intulisse**, "that they [the Bellovaci] instigated . . . had both revolted and made."

5. **redāctōs perferre**, "had been reduced . . . and were enduring."

7. **quī**, "those who." The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of *profūgisse*.

399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of specification
Cōordinate relative

intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitatis intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Haeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos 10 utatur. Quod si fecerit, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificatum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consueverint.

15. Caesar honoris Diviciaci atque Haeduorum causam sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservatum dixit, et, quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudinem praestabat, sescentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines 5 Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suae omnia sine mora dedit-

9. profugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugio, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

10. clementia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2.

mansuetudo, -inis, *f.* [mansuetus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. 2.

12. amplificatio, 1, *tr.* [amplus, large + facio, make], extend, enlarge, increase,

expand. 1.

13. incidere, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [cadere, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

4. sescenti, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.* [sex, six], six hundred. *

6. mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. 3.

dedit, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dare, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; se dedere, submit, surrender. *

8. quantam intulissent: indirect question.

9. Britanniam: the relations between the Belgae and the Britons appear to have been rather close. See 4, 19.

10. sua, "his usual."

11. quod si fecerit, "if he should do this." The direct form meant "if you shall have done this."

12. quorum: the antecedent is Belgas.

13. qua: the usual form of the neuter plural, nominative and accusative,

when quis is used as an indefinite.

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

1. honoris causa, *lit.* "for the sake of the honor of" = "in deference to."

2. eos, i.e. the Bellovaci, is the object of recepturum et conservatum (esse).

3. multitudine: ablative of specification.

6. Ambianorum: see map facing p. 162.

6. populo: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

10. clementia: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

11. utatur: tense? App. 202; 203; 270, a: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 482; 483; 585, b: B. 267; 318: H. 543; 544; 644, 1.

13. qua: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186. consueverint: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with utor, etc.

runt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic repēiebāt: Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercatōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque
 10 rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs
 15 neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdūum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius milia

9. **aditus**, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

vinum, -i, *n.*, wine. 2.

10. **lūxuria**, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1.

11. **relanguēscō**, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.* [re-+languēscō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. 1.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; *remissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. *

7. **quōrum**, "their."

8. **nūllum . . . mercatōribus**, "that traders had no access to them."

9. **pati**, "that (they) allowed."

vinī, rērum: partitive genitives with *nihil*.

10. **quod existimārent**: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. **dēdidissent, prōiēcissent**: may have been subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e: B. 283,

2. **erat**: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

3. **auctōritāte**: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

9. **mercatōribus**: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. **virtūtis**: case? App. 100: G.-L.

12. **increpitō**, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of increpō*, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. 2.

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [*causa*, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

13. **patrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pater*, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1.

1. **inveniō**, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *tr.* [*veniō*, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

2. **Sabis**, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā'bis). 2.

amplē, *adv.* [*amplus*, large], largely; *comp.*, **amplius**, more, farther. *

3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. **cōfirmāre sēsē neque misūrōs**, "they declared that they would neither send."

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 16. The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.

2. **Sabim**: note the accusative in -im.

365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

13. **reliquōs**: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fōrtūnam experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab iis Atuaticōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conicēsis quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

17. His rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit quī locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex his, ut postea ex captivīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt atque his dēmōstrārunt inter

6. *experior, -periri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. **

8. *aetās, aetātis, f., period of life, age. 2.*

inūtilis, -e, adj. [in- + ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. 2.

1. *centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. **

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.

mīlia: accusative of extent of space. Why not the ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

3. *trāns flūmen*: i.e. on the southern bank. For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

5. *finitimis*: in apposition with *Atrebātibus* and *Viromanduis*. See map.

6. *ab iis*: i.e. by the Nervii.

7. *quīque*, "and (the men) who."

8. *eum locum quō*, "a place to which."

9. *conicēsis*: as subject supply *eōs*, referring to the Nervii.

1. *triduum*: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

5. *his*: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, *a*: H.-B. 362, footnote. 3, *b*: H. 426, 2.

4. *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron. (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. **

5. *cōsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. **

esset: mode? App. 230, *a*: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 2.

Chap. 17. The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.

2. *ex . . . Gallis*: equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. *Caesarem . . . facerent*, "had joined Caesar and were marching along with him."

5. *eōrum . . . exercitūs*, "our army's usual order of march during those days." Both *diērum* and *exercitūs* depend on *itineris*. On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. *inter singulās legiōnēs*, "between every two legions."

9. *exercitui*: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs
Dative of possessor

singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc
 10 sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptīs, futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderēt. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent
 15 cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incīsīs atque

10. diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1.

11. adiuvo, -iuvare, -iuvī, -iutum, *tr.* [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 1.

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (or *generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. 1.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot],

on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cōpiae, infantry. *

15. praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *

16. tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. 1.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. 2.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut into. 1.

7. impedimentōrum: see Int. 46.

numerus, "amount." Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, "and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble." castra, "camping-ground."

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcinīs: see Int. 37.

11. futūrum (*esse*) ut, "the result would be that." This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, a: G.-L. 635: A. 583, b: B. 314, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, b: H. 643, 1.

adiuvābat: the subject is the clause quod . . . effecerant; "the fact that the Nervii had made, etc., assisted."

13. nihil: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 2, b: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

14. eī rei: i.e. cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpiīs, "whatever strength they have consists in infantry."

15. quō impedirent: a purpose clause. Why is not *ut* used? App. 225, a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

teneris . . . interiectis: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (*incīsīs*) and their tops bent over (*inflexīs*). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (*crēbris . . . enātīs*). In all thin spots bramble bushes were planted (*rubis . . . interiectis*).

inflexis, crebrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātis, et rubīs senti-
busque interiectis, effecerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūni-
menta praebērent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē per-
spici quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī 20

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. 1.
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.*
[nāscor, be born], be born from; spring
up. 1.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1.

sentis, -is, *m.*, briar. 1.

18. intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,
tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl
between; put or place between; inter-
iectus, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between,
intervening, interspersed; mediocrī

interiectō spatiō, not far away. 4.

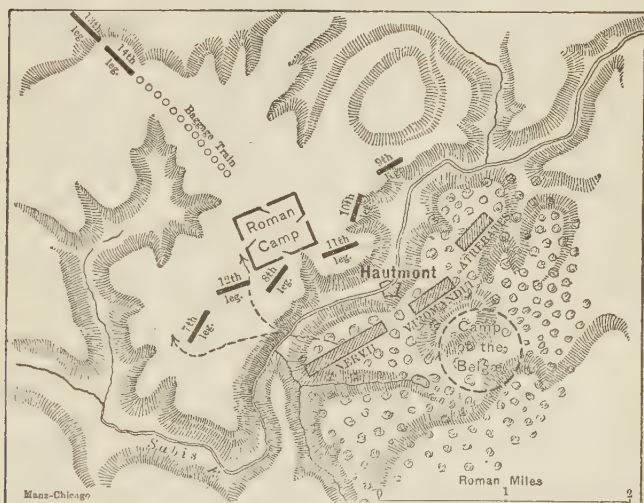
instar, *n., indecl.*, likeness; with *gen.*,
like. 1.

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. 2.

mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō, fortify],
defense, fortification. 1.

19. praebeō, 2, *tr.* [prae + habeō,
hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present.
3.

intrō, 1, *tr.*, go or walk into, enter,
penetrate. 1.



BATTLE ON THE SABIS

18. effecerant ut praebērent, "they
had made these hedges furnish."

19. quō . . . posset: a clause of

characteristic. Translate personally,
"into which one not only could not pen-
etrate, but could not even see."

impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāverunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infīmus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

21. **omittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum, tr.** [ob+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. 1.

2. **aequālīter, adv.** [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1.

dēclīvis, -e, adj. [clīvis, a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun*, slopes. 2.

3. **nōminō, 1, tr.** [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. 1.

4. **acclivitas, -tatis, f.** [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. 1.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. 3.

contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō**, on the contrary. 3.

6. **silvestris, -e, adj.** [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. 1.

intrōrsus, adv. [intrō, within+versus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on the inside. 1.

7. **occultus, -a, -um, adj.**, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

Chap. 18. Description of the battlefield.

1. **haec**, "as follows."

locum: omit in translation.

nostrī: i.e. the scouts and centurions who had been sent on ahead; 17, 1.

2. **collis**: north of the river. See

plan, p. 191.

summō, "the top"; the ablative singular of *summus*, used as a noun.

4. **collis**: south of the river.

5. **passūs . . . apertus**, "at the bottom bare of trees for two hundred paces."

2. **dēligant**: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*: 510; A. 482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. **dēmōnstrārunt**: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

11. **auderent**: mode? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

12. **quod effēcerant**: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299,

1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

21. **omittendum (esse)**: construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms

Sequence of tenses

Substantive clauses of result

dum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs 5 quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos recipere ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque 10 nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

8. *statiō, -ōnis, f.* [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; in *statiōe* esse, be on guard. 4.

2. *aliter, adv.* [alius, other], otherwise; *aliter . . . ac*, otherwise . . . than. 2.

8. *trāsgredior, -gredi, -gressus*

8. *vidēbantur*, "were seen," not "seemed."

9. *pedum trium*: descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

Chap. 19. The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.

1. *omnibus cōpiis*: why is *cum* not used? App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1. Caesar is now picking up the thread of the story which he dropped in 17, 2.

2. *aliter . . . ac*, lit. "had itself otherwise than" = "was different from what."

habēbat is singular because *ratiō ōr-*

sum, tr. [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1.

9. *identidem, adv.* [idem, the same], repeatedly. 1.

11. *porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēc-tum, tr.* [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; *porrēctus, pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. 1.

ōdōque is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement."

4. *expeditās*, "without baggage"; whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

6. *legiōnēs . . . cōscriptae erant*: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.

10. *recipere, facere*, "kept retiring, kept making."

11. *longius . . . finem*, "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead

2. *ad flūmen*: construction? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 426, 2: B. 182, 2: H.-B. 385: H. 418.

4. *acclivitāte*: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

5. *infimus*: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

6. *posset*: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Place to which

• *Descriptive ablative*

Adjectives with partitive meaning

nēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae
 primae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi
 15 primā impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī
 latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī
 convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant
 atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvo-
 lāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile
 20 pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incrēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcucur-
 rērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs
 vidērentur. Eādē autem celeritātē adversō colle ad nostra
 castra atque eōs quī in opere occupatī erant contendērunt.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum,
intr., go; go away; give way, yield,
 retreat. 2.

13. dīmētiōr, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum,
tr. [mētiōr, -measure], measure out or
 off. 2.

15. latēō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., escape
 notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2.

17. subitō, adv. [subitus, sudden],
 suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

us to expect *ad finem, ad quem*, but the
 antecedent is attracted into the relative
 clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, lit. "extended
 stretched out" = "extended." The whole
 clause *quem . . . pertinēbant* means "to
 the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs: sc. *eōs*; i.e. the enemy.

13. dīmēnsō: this is one of a few
 deponent verbs whose perfect participles
 have a passive meaning.

14. primā impedīmenta, "the head
 of the baggage train."

15. quod tempus, "the time which."

16. convēnerat, "had been agreed
 upon."

ut . . . ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant,
 "as . . . they had pledged each other

4. cōnsuetūdine: case? App. 142, a:
 G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B.
 414, a: H. 475, 3.

6. praesidiō impedimentis: con-
 struction? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A.

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush
 forth. 1.

19. prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb],
 drive in confusion; dislodge. 1.

**dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurri, -cur-
 sum, intr.** [currō, run], run down,
 hurry down. 4.

1. vexillum, -ī, n., banner, flag,
 standard. 1.

(to do)."

20. ut vidērentur: a result clause.

21. adversō colle, lit. "by way of
 the hill facing them" = "up the hill."
 For the case of *colle*, see App. 144: G.-L.
 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

22. opere: i.e. of fortifying the
 camp.

The attack was a complete surprise.
 The Roman scouts had not done their
 work properly, and Caesar himself ap-
 pears to have been careless in not keep-
 ing a part of his men under arms while
 the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of
 the Romans, and the value of their
 discipline.

1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda,

382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Double dative

Ablative of accordance

prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dāndum, ab opere revocandī milītēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, milītēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum 5 rērum magnam partem temporis brevitas et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultatibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod, superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque 10 legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castris

2. *concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum*, *intr.* [*currō*, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

3. *tuba, -ae, f.*, trumpet. 1.
revocō, 1, *tr.* [*re-+vocō*, call], call back, recall; withdraw. 2.

4. *paulō*, *adv.* [*paulus*, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [*cēdō*, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, summon, send for, invite. *

6. *brevitas, -tātis, f.* [*brevis*,

short], shortness; brevity. 2.

incursus, -ūs, m. [*incurrō*, rush into or upon], attack. 1.

7. *difficultās, -tātis, f.* [*difficilis*, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. *

scientia, -ae, f. [*sciō*, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.

8. *exercitatus, -a, -um, adj.* [*pf. part. of exercitō*, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. *praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.* [*scribō*, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

lit. "all things had to be done by Caesar" = "Caesar had to do everything."

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. *prōpōnendum*: supply *erat*. Similarly supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. *signum*: to form ranks.
qui, "(those soldiers) who."

4. *paulō longius*, "a little too far."
aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.

arcessendī: by messengers.

5. *signum*: here the signal for the attack.

7. *duae rēs*: explained by two appos-

itives, first, *scientia atque ūsus*, "the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers"; second, *quod . . . vetuerat* (l. 10), "the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc."

8. *quod poterant*: a causal clause.
proellis, "in battles"; but it is an ablative of means.

9. *quid fieri oportēret*, "what ought to be done"; an indirect question, object of *praescribere*.

10. *ab singulis . . . discēdere*, "each legate to leave a particular legion." It is not quite correct to translate "leave his legion," because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 38.

11. *nisi mūnītis castris*, lit. "unless the camp having been fortified" = "unless the camp had been fortified."

vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperātis ad cohortandōs milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit, et ad legionem decimam devēnit. Milites nōn longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinērent ne perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostes aberant quam quō telum adigi posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Tem-

12. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid.

14. administrō, 1, *tr.* [minister, servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. *

2. fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; forte, *abl.* as *adv.*, by chance, perchance. 3.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, *tr.* [ob + ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with sē, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. 3.

3. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. *

13. nihil: an emphatic nōn.

quae vidēbantur, "whatever seemed best."

Chap. 21. Caesar encourages his men.

1. ad . . . milites: with decucurrit.

2. quam in partem = in eam partem in quam. Cf. note on 19, 11.

legionem decimam: Caesar's favorite legion; cf. I, 40, 45-48. Note its position on the plan, p. 191.

3. nōn longiore oratione quam uti, "with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc."

1. Caesarī: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355; A. 374, a; B. 189, 1; H.-B. 373, 1; H. 431.

erant agenda: construction? App. 285, II, a; G.-L. 251, 1; A. 500, 2; B. 337, 7, b, 1; H.-B. 162; 600, 3; H. 237.

4. paulō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403:

devēniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come down, go, come. 2.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. *

6. adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). *

8. occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob + currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *

4. neu: the regular expression for "and not" in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.

6. quod aberant: a causal clause, explaining signum dedit.

quam . . . posset, lit. "than to which a javelin could be thrown." Omit quō in translating. For the mode of posset see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3; A. 535, c; B. 283, 1, 2, a; H.-B. 521, 2, c; H. 570, 1.

7. in alteram partem: the right wing. See plan.

8. pugnantibus occurrit, "he found (them already) fighting."

A. 414; B. 223; H.-B. 424; H. 479, 1.

* 10. quod vetuerat: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3; A. 572; B. 299, 1; H.-B. 549; 552, 1; H. 588, I, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive quod clause

poris tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmican-
dum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam
ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus
dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvenit
quaeque prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quae-
rendis suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque col-
lis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō
postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus

9. exiguitās, -tātis, f. [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. *

dimicō, 1, intr. [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. 3.

10. accommodō, 1, tr., adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. 1.

11. galea, -ae, f., a leather helmet. 1.
induō, -duere, -dui, -dūtum, tr., put on; **sē induere,** be impaled or pierced. 1.

tegimentum, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], a covering. 1.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-
tum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

12. dēsum, deesse, dēfui, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *

13. cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectrum, tr. [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *

3. dīversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dīvertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.

10. ad . . . accommodanda, "for fitting on their decorations"; especially on the helmets; see Plate I, facing p. 27. These *insignia* probably distinguished the legions.

11. galeās: these would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.

scūtis: dative of separation.

tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields.

12. dēfuerit: note the exception to sequence; App. 204, a: G.-L. 513: A. 485, c (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B. 473: H. 550.

quam in partem, "to whatever place."

13. quaeque . . . cōspexit, "and whatever standards he saw first." On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.

14. suis: sc. *signis*.

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.

1. ut, "as."

2. rei . . . ōrdō, lit. "the theory and arrangement of military matters" = "the theory of military tactics." When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.

3. cum . . . resisterent . . . impe-

4. virtūtis: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

12. dēfuerit: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H.

570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive

Result clause

Clause of characteristic

resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvīmus, 5 interiectis prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērū inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitērant, pīlis ēmissis cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed, thick, dense. 3.

5. prōspectus, -ūs, m. [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.

6. prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, tr. [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. *

8. inīquitās, -tātis, f. [inīquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.

ēventus, -ūs, m. [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.

varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. 1.

1. nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. 2.

dirētur gives the reason for the main clause, *neque . . . poterant*.

diversae, lit. "separated" = "separately."

aliae . . . parte, "some in one place, others in another."

4. ante: see 17, 12-20.

5. interiectis, "which intervened."

neque: the principal clause begins here.

certa, lit. "sure" = "so that they could be counted on."

6. quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of *prōvidērī (poterat)*.

quid: construction? App. 146, a: G.-L. 406: A. 411, b: B. 218, 2, a: H.-B. 430, 2, a: H. 477, III, n.

7. in . . . inīquitāte, "in such a diversity of circumstances."

4. resisterent: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

2. cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

lassitūdō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.

exanimō, 1, tr. [anima, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. 2.

3. obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to *by lot*. 1.

4. compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting *eventūs*.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.

1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. aciē = aciēs; App. 30, b: G.-L. 63, n. 1: A. 98, n.: B. 52, 3: H.-B. 100, 2: H. 134, 2.

pīlis: see Ilt. 36, a.

cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

cursū . . . cōfectōs: translate after *Atrebātēs*.

3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Cum causal

cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impeditam 5
interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in
locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō
proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae
legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduīs, quibus-
cum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs 10
proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte
nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab
eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervī cōnfertissimō
agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum
locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs 15
circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

9. ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [ūndecim, eleven], eleventh. 1.

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [oc-
tō, eight], eighth. 1.

prōfligō, 1, *tr.* [fligō, strike], strike
down; overcome; put to flight. 1.

10. congregior, -gredi, -gressus
sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, en-
counter, meet in battle; join (*peaceful-
ly*). *

11. proelior, 1, *intr.* [proelium, bat-

tle], join or engage in battle, fight. 3.

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

12. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the
right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*)
flank, wing. *

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*
[duodecim, twelve], twelfth. 2.

14. Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduogna-
tus (bōd"ū-ōg-nā'tūs). 1.

5. cōnantēs, "as they [the Atreba-
tes] were trying."

gladiīs: see Int. 36, b.

imeditam, "while thus embar-
rassed"; i.e. by crossing the river.

6. ipsī: the Romans of the left wing.

7. locum inīquum: up the hill south
of the river. This gave the enemy the
advantage of position.

resistentēs hostēs: object of *coniēcē-
runt*.

8. aliā in parte: the center.

dīversae: i.e. separated from the oth-
er legions.

10. ex locō superiōre, "(having
come down) from their higher position."

12. nūdātīs: by the advance of the
four legions already mentioned. See
the plan.

13. nōn magnō intervāllō, "at no

very great distance." Case? App. 142,
b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

omnēs Nervī: 60,000 in number.

14. duce Boduognātō, "under the
leadership of Boduognatus." Ablative
absolute.

summam: the noun.

15. ab apertō latere: the right flank,
because the shields were carried on the
left arm. The part which pushed on for
the camp passed the Roman left flank.
Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. summum . . . locum, lit. "the
highest place belonging to the camp" =
"the height on which the camp stood."

Chap. 24. The panic of the auxili-
aries and the camp servants.

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at
once of the fortunes of the 7th and 12th
legions, but he pauses to give a vivid

peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et
 5 cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdis-
 sent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque
 10 aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitate missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

2. **pedes, peditis**, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3.

5. **cālō, -ōnis**, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. 3.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (of the camp). 1.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. *

6. **victor, -ōris**, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

7. **respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum**, *tr.* [re- + speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, re-

gard. 1.

8. **praeceps, -cipitis**, *adj.* [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. 2.

9. **fremitus, -ūs**, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. 2.

11. **Trēvir, -erī**, *m.*, one of the Trev-eri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bēgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). *

12. **singulāris, -e**, *adj.* [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. 2.

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.

levis armātūrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of 19, 7.

2. **iīs**: the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōs pulsōs dīxeram, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." **quōs** refers to both *equitēs* and *peditēs*. **dīxī** would be more natural and more usual than **dīxeram**.

3. **adversis**, "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

4. **occurrēbant**: note how the imperfections in the first part of the chapter describe a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. **ab decumānā portā**: the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. **victōrēs**, "as victors."

8. **eōrum**: the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.

9. **aliī . . . partem**: for translation cf. note on 22, 3.

11. **virtūtis opīniō**, "reputation for courage"; an objective genitive.

13. **cum**: with *vīdiscent*.

premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere 15 vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitatī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquā- 5 rum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut

14. premō, -premere, -pressī, -pressum, tr. press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *

15. dissipō, 1, tr., spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 1.

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, f. [cohortor,

encourage], encouragement, cheering. 1.

2. urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, tr., press, press hard. 2.

5. signifer, -erī, m. [signum, standard + ferō, bear], standard-bearer. 1.

16. dēspērātīs, "despairing of."

17. castrīs: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and 12th legions in desperate straits, and reanimates them by his valor.

1. Caesar: subject of *prōcessit* (l. 15) and *iussit* (l. 16). This is an excellent Latin "period," with the subject first, the subordinate clauses in the middle, and the principal verbs toward the end. The sentence is not hard to understand in its Latin order, and is very effective; for the mass of subordinate clauses represents the impression made on Caesar when he saw all at once the many details of the fearful struggle. But it is hard to translate effectively, because such a sentence is intolerable in English. After the pupil thoroughly understands the sentence he should translate it very freely, breaking it up into a number of short sentences. Each of the following groups of words may be turned into a sentence, or two or more may be combined: *Caesar . . . profectus; ubi . . . ur-*

gērī; signis . . . vīdit; quārtae . . . āmissō; reliquārum . . . occīsīs; in his . . . posset; reliquōs . . . vitāre; hostēs . . . instāre; et . . . posset; scūtō . . . prōcessit; centuriōnibus . . . possent.

cohortātiōne: cf. 21, 2.

2. ubi, "when"; with *vīdit*, l. 4, which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on *vīdit*. Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.

signis collātīs: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. sibi . . . impedimentō, lit. "were themselves for a hindrance to themselves for fighting" = "hindered one another in fighting."

4. quārtae cohortis: this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. signō āmissō: regarded as a great disgrace.

occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis
 10 dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimis militī detractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem
 15 prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū impe-

7. **prīmipilus**, -ī, *m.* [**prīmus**, first + **pilus**, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.

Sextius, -tī, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. 2.

vir, **virī**, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. **homō**, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. *

9. **tardus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. 1.

10. **dēserō**, -serere, -serui, -ser-tum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin;

abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. *

16. **manipulus**, -ī, *m.* [**manus**, hand + **pleō**, fill], a handful (*esp. of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), manipule. 1.

laxō, 1, *tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. 1.

18. **imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō**, command], commander-in-chief, general. *

7. **prīmipilō**: see Int. 42.

8. **multis gravibusque**, "many severe." When *multī* and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by *et* or *que*.

sē sustinēre, "stand on his feet."

9. **ab novissimis**, "in the rear."

10. **dēsertō locō**, "deserting their posts."

tēla vitāre, "were getting out of the range of missiles."

neque . . . et, "not . . . and."

12. **rem . . . angustō**, "and affairs were in a critical condition."

vidit: simply repeats the *vidit* of l. 4.

13. **quod . . . posset**: a clause of characteristic.

scūtō detractō, "snatching a shield." Here begins Caesar's action.

militī: dative of separation.

14. **eō**: the adverb.

16. **signa . . . laxāre**, "to advance and (by so doing) to open out the ranks."

quō: cf. note on 17, 15.

17. **spē . . . animō**, "hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed."

18. **prō sē**, lit. "in proportion to himself" = "to the best of his ability."

rātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 20

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstitērat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim milītēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gereretur cōspiciātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

19. opera, -ae, *f.* [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. 1.

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. 1.

20. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

tardō, 1, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make

slow, delay; hinder, check. 1.

1. iūxtā, *adv.* [iungō, join], next, near. 1.

2. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. *

19. etiam . . . rēbus, "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. 26. The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. iūxtā: i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

cōstitērat, "had taken its position." Distinguish carefully between cōsistō and cōstituō.

2. tribūnōs: see Int. 41.

3. sēsē coniungerent: i.e. to close up the gap between them.

conversa signa inferrent, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the

line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. cum . . . ferret, "since they protected one another."

5. timērent: agreeing with milītēs, which is implied in alius aliī.

āversī, "in the rear."

7. quae . . . fuerant: cf. 19, 5.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, "quickening their step on hearing of the battle."

colle: at the rear of the Roman camp.

9. Labiēnus: cf. note on 23, 1.

10. quae rēs gererentur: indirect question.

11. quī cum, "when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion.

12. quō in locō, "in what condition."

rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut
5 turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī
10 superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pila inter-

2. prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. 2.

3. innitor, -niti, -nixus sum, *intr.* [nitor, rest on], lean upon. 1.

4. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.

5. turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1.

dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. 1.

6. legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

14. nihil . . . fēcērunt, lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.

2. quī, "those who." The clause is determinative, not characteristic; App. 231: H.-B. 550. The subjunctive is due to attraction; App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.*

scūtīs: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

5. circumvenirentur: construction? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 3: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. 1.

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. 1.

insistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with* ratiōnem, adopt, use. 4.

9. coacervō, 1, [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1.

10. tumultus, -i, *m.* [tumeō, swell],

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, "(though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy)."

6. etiam . . . salūtis, "even at the end of their hope of safety"; i.e. even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . insisterent, "the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate."

9. hīs: i.e. *proximi*.

quī superessent: cf. note on *quī*, l. 2.

10. ut ex tumultō, "as if from a mound."

conicerent: result. The force of *ut* (l. 7) still continues.

14. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 3: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 360: H. 425, 4.

cepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōn- **5** sēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē **1**

swelling; mound, hill. 4.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt; intercept, cut off. 1.

11. nēquiquam, adv. [nē+qui(d)-quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. 1.

1. gēns, gentis, f., race; clan, tribe, people. 3.

3. aestuārium, -rī, n. [aestus, tide],

low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2.

5. cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

8. senātor, -ōris, m. [senex, old], elder; senator. 1.

10. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

supplex, -icis, m. and f., suppliant. 1.

11. ut . . . dēberet, "so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc."; i.e. they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, "deeds which"; i.e. those summed up in the preceding infinitives.

14. ex, "instead of."

Chap. 28. The survivors submit to Caesar.

2. quōs coniectōs dixerāmus, "who, as I have said, had been, etc."; cf. note on **24, 2.**

4. victōribus . . . tūtum, "that nothing was an obstacle to the victors

and nothing safe for the conquered."

5. quī supererant: compare *quī superessent*, **27, 9.** This clause has precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vix ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5,000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

qui possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

9. ut . . . vidērētur, "that he might be seen to have shown mercy, etc."

cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suosque prohibērent.

29. Atuatucl, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērent; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsertiis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt.
- 5 Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquebātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī
- 10 erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis quae

misericordia, -ae, f. [**misereō**, pity +**cor**, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1.

1. **scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum, tr.**, write, record or make mention in writing. 1.

3. **cūctus, -a, -um, adj.** [**for cōfūctus**, joined together], all together, all. 1.

4. **ēgregiē, adv.** [**ēgregius**, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1.

5. **rūpēs, -is, f.**, rock, cliff. 1.

acclivis, -e, adj. [**ad**+**clivus**, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2.

8. **duplex, -plicis, adj.** [**duo**, two+**plicō**, fold], twofold, double. 2.

9. **pondus, -eris, n.** [**cf. pendō**, weigh], weight. 1.

saxum, -i, n., rock, large stone. 2.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj. [**pf. part. of praeacuō**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. 3.

trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber, pile. 3.

10. **prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj.** [**nāscor**, be born], born; descended, sprung. 1.

11. **iussit, imperāvit**: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. **iubeō** regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; **imperō**, the dative with **ut** and the subjunctive.

Chap. 29-33. Caesar subdues the Atuatucl.

Chap. 29. The Atuatucl take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.

1. **suprā**: in 16, 7.

cum venirent, "while coming."

omnibus cōpiīs: ablative of manner.

Such ablatives are often called "military accompaniment," but it is not logical to

say that the Atuatucl came in company with themselves.

4. **oppidum**: for its probable location see map facing p. 162.

5. **quod cum**, "although this town."

ex . . . partibus, "at all (other) points in its circumference," or simply "on all (other) sides."

7. **ducentōrum pedum**: descriptive genitive, modifying **aditus**. The comparative **minus** has no effect on the construction; cf. note on **milia**, 16, 2.

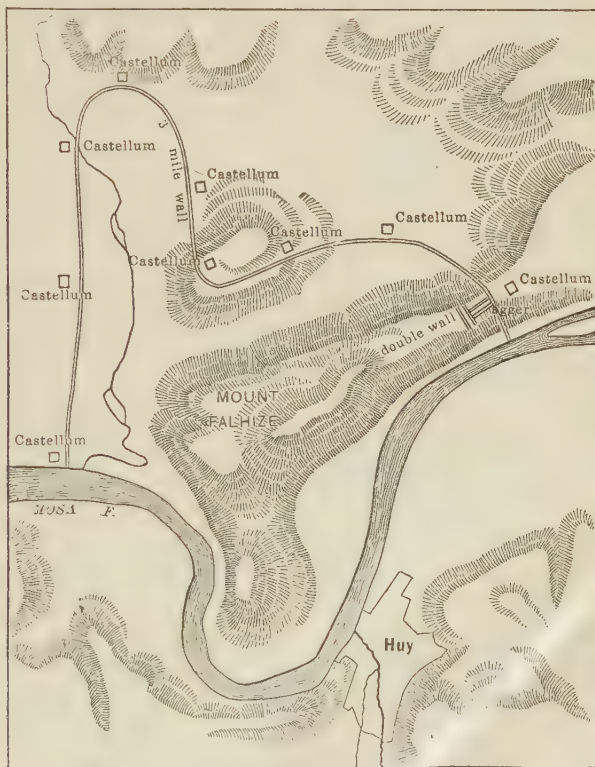
8. **duplici mūrō**: see plan, p. 207.

tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.

10. **Cimbris Teutonisque**: cf. **Int.** 27.

sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum
dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum

13. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs, guard], | *pl.*, guards, keeper. 2.
custody, guard (*state of being guarded*);



THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for *impedimentis* here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . reliquerant, *lit.* "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."

unā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā
 15 finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās illātum
 dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi
 domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō
 excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs con-
 tendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crē-
 brisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi
 5 vineis āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōstitui vīdērunt,
 primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

14. obitus, -ūs, m. [obeō, go to death], destruction. 1.

15. exagitō, 1, tr. [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. 2.

aliās, adv. [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; **aliās ... aliās**, at one time ... at another. 4.

17. domiciliū, -li, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

2. excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally,

14. eōrum: the main bodies of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. cum ... dēfenderent: some *cum* clauses are best translated by participles; so here, "sometimes making war, sometimes defending themselves against war made on them," lit. "when they ... ward off war made (on them)."

16. cōnsēnsū ... factā, "peace was made by common consent, and." *eōrum* refers to both the Atuatucae and their neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of country occupied by the Atuatucae at this time.

Chap. 30. The Atuatucae scorn the Roman preparations for attack.

2. faciēbant, "kept making"; imperfect of repeated action.

10. ex Cimbriis: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, b: H. 469, 1.

sortie. 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; **parvuli**, children. 1.

4. circummūniō, 4, tr. [mūniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.

5. exstruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, tr. [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. 2.

procul, adv., afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. 2.

6. irrīdēō, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, intr. [in+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV mīlium: supply *pedum* as a partitive genitive; "(of) 15,000 feet in circumference"; i.e. three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vineis, aggere, turrim: see Int. 61; 62, d. The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger. In this case the agger was intended only as a roadway up which to push the tower.

6. irrīdēre: on this use of the infinitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

14. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suōrum brevitas nostra contemptū est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō 10 sēsē posse collocāre cōfīderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstimāre

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, f. [*māchinor*, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3.

quisnam, quidnam, and quinam, quāenam, quodnam, interrog. pron. (App. 61 and *a*), who? which? what? who then? what pray? 1.

8. tantus, -a, -um, adj. [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. 2.

statūra, -ae, f. [*status; stō*, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1.

9. plērumque, adv. [*plērusque*, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. *

prae, prep. with abl., before, in front

of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. 1.

10. contemptus, -ūs, m. [*contemnō*, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. 1.

onus, -eris, n., load, burden; weight, size. 4.

2. inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj. [*in- + ūsītātus*, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3.

speciēs, -ēī, f. [*speciō*, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

3. modus, -ī, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modi**, of such a kind, such; **abl., modō**, with *gen.*, in the character of, like. *

7. a tantō spatiō, "so far away"; lit. "away by so great a distance," *ā* being used as an adverb. Cf. 7, 8.

instituerētur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2; 592, 3: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, *a*: H. 588, II.

quibusnam manibus . . . cōfīderent, "(asking) by what hands, pray, did they hope?"; indirect discourse for *cōfīditis*, "do you hope?" For mode see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of *cōfīderent*; "especially (as they were) men, etc."

10. contemptū est, "is an object of contempt."

in mūrō collocāre: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. 31. The Atuatuaci propose a conditional surrender.

1. movērī, "that it [the tower] moved."

3. locūtī: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. *nōn sē . . . possent* depends on *locūtī*; everything else, on *dixerunt* (l. 6), "speaking as follows . . . said." But it makes smoother English to translate *locūtī* as *locūtī sunt* and omit *dixerunt*, "spoke as follows."

7. spatiō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Abative of degree of difference

Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis
 5 māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque
 omnia eōrum potestātī permittēre dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac
 dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam
 ipsī ab aliis audīrent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōservandōs,
 nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse ini-
 10 mīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis
 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūce-
 rentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs
 per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōsueissent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōsueētūdine suā
 quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī priusquam

4. **divīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [divus, di-vine], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1.

5. **prōmoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-tum, *tr.* [moveō, movē], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

7. **dēprecor**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2.

9. **dēspoliō**, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], de-privē. 1.

10. **invidēō**, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum,

intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. 1.

12. **quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, and **quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quodvis**, *indef. pron.* (App. 63), [quī, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, any-thing, any whatever, any. 3.

13. **cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, tor-ture; crux, cross], torture, torment. *
dominor, 1, *intr.* [dominus, master], be master, rule. 1.

4. **quī possent**, "since they could," may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, c: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

6. **ūnum**, "one favor"; i.e. *nē* . . . *dēspoliāret*.

7. **sī statuisset**, "if he should de-cide." The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. "if you shall have decided."

prō, "in accordance with."

quam audīrent, "of which they kept hearing."

9. **nē dēspoliāret**: the original form was probably *nōlī dēspoliāre*; App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276,

c; 316: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.

sibi: with the adjective *inimicōs*.

10. **virtūtī**: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative?

trāditis armīs, "if they should, etc."

11. **sibi praestāre**, lit. "it was bet-ter for them" = "they preferred."

cāsum, "extremity."

Chap. 32. The Atuatuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.

1. **cōsueētūdine**: ablative of accord-ance.

2. **meritō**: ablative of cause.

8. **esse cōservandōs**: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

9. **sibi**: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2:

A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Passive periphrastic conjugation
Dative of reference

mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditi- 5 ciis populi Rōmāni iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūtiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidūm iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspec- 10 tum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iis quae reti- 5

3. ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 2.

9. acervus, -ī, *m.*, a heap, mass. 1.

10. adaequō, 1, *tr.* [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

3. ariēs: see Int. 62, c. Apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

4. nisi armīs trāditīs: cf. 20, 11, note.

in, "in the case of."

5. factūrum...que imperātūrum, "he would do...and would command" means "he would do...; namely, he would command."

6. rē, "answer."

7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

11. cēlō, 1, *tr.*, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in pass., escape observation, be unnoticed. 2.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [pateō, be open+faciō, make], make or throw open, open. 2.

5. indiligenter, *adv.* [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. 1.

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain,

8. ante: i.e. on the side where the Romans were.

9. aggeris: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

11. portīs patefactīs, "they opened the gates and."

12. pāce sunt ūsī, "remained quiet."

Chap. 33. The Atuatucae make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.

2. nē quam: cf. references on 32, 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

4. praesidia, "the outposts" in the castella (30, 4) which guarded the Roman wall.

5. cum: with both iis armīs and scūtīs.

nuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente
 10 ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in
 15 ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Post-rīdiē eius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūni-

keep; guard, watch; reserve. 2.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. 2.

6. cortex, -icis, *m., f.*, bark. 1.

7. vīmen, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. 1.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave in or together. 1.

8. pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent, *made of hides*. 4.

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. 1.

9. repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ērupō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. *

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. 1.

17. refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [re+frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. 1.

18. intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. 1.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. 1.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one+

6. ex . . . intextis, "made of bark or of osiers woven together."

8. quā: the adverb.

minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

10. imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

11. ignibus, "by signal fires."

12. concursus est, pugnātum est: translate personally.

14. ut pugnārī dēbuit, *lit.* "as it

ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."

eōs quī iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte cōsisteret, "depended on valor alone."

ad, "about," used adverbially.

18. sectiōnem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.

versam Caesar vëndidit. Ab iis qui òmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

20

34. Eòdem tempore à P. Crassò, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitatēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

5

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns

vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass.

*

19. vëndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [vēnum, sale + dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3.

1. Crassus, -ī, m., Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. *

2. Venetī, -ōrum, m. (Cb), the Veneti (vën'ë-tī). *

Venellī, -ōrum, m. (Bc), the Venelli (vë-në'lī). *

Osismī, -ōrum, m. (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sīs'mī), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. 2.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'rī-ō-söl'i-tēz). 3.

Esuviī, -ōrum, m. (Bcd), the Esuvii (ë-sū'vī-i). 2.

3. Aulerci, -ōrum, m., the Aulerci

(aw-lër'sī), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Ebuovices (ëb'ū-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd); (2) Aulerci Cenomani (së-nöm'a-nī), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brän'ō-vī'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī'a-blīn'tēz), (Bc). 3.

Redonēs, -um, m. (BCc), the Redones (rëd'ō-nēz). 1.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea]. of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; ōra, the sea shore. *

4. diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

2. barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. *

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

19. iis qui òmerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome.

numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000" = "was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus.

1. legiōne ūnā: this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, cīvitatēs.

5. esse redāctās: they gave hostages

without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. omnī Galliā: the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opīniō, "impression."

quae incolerent: for mode see note on qui, 27, 2.

Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātī-
 5 ōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Ītaliā pro-
 10 fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

5. **Īllyricum, -ī, n.**, Illyricum (ī-lŕ'ī-kūm], Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* 2.

6. **Carnutēs, -um, m.** (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz).

Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -ōrum, m. (Cc), the Andes (ān'dēz) or Andi (ān'dī). 2.

7. **Turonī, -ōrum, m.** (Cd), the Tu-

ronī (tūrō-nī). 1.

10. **supplicātiō, -ōnis, f.** [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. 2.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. 3.

3. **quī pollicērentur:** a purpose clause.

4. **datūrās:** feminine, because *sē* refers to *natiōnibus*.

5. **initā proximā aestāte,** "at the beginning of the next summer." At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubii sent hostages.

6. **in Carnutēs:** with *dēductīs*.

7. **quaeque civitātēs** = *et eās civitātēs quae*.

8. **in Ītaliā:** i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. **ex,** "in consequence of."

10. **supplicātiō:** a public thanksgiving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

quod, "(an honor) which." The antecedent is the preceding clause.

BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britanni, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-öperation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence

supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.





Campaign Map for Book III

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I**, 1-29, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for Book **II**, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Ītaliā proficīscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitatūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsīt, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent.
5 Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

1. **Servius, -vī, m.**, Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Galba, -ae, m., Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sŭl-pīsh'yūs gāl'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. *

2. **Nantuātēs, -um, m.** (CDg), the Nantuates (nān'tū-ā'tēz). 4.

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. (CDg), the Veragri (vēr'a-grī). 3.

3. **Sedūnī, -ōrum, m.** (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'nī). 3.

Chap. 1-6. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. 1. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.

1. **cum . . . proficīscerētur**: as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. **legiōne duodecimā**: this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervi; cf. II, 25.

Nantuātēs, etc. † see the map facing p. 217.

3. **mīsīt**: the pupil should notice carefully Caesar's use of the indicative tenses. The distinction between the imperfect and the perfect is difficult for English speaking people to grasp, but Caesar was as careful in their use as in the choice of modes and cases. Study App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chapter the perfect is used in every principal clause. Notice, too, that all but one of

these perfects tell something that Caesar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate events in the story.

4. **pertinent**: several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

5. **fuit**: this might have been imperfect, for it is not an event in the story. Very few such perfects will be found in Caesar.

quod volēbat, "that he wished"; a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causa*. The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but *describes* something (Caesar's feelings) as *going on* at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the *descriptive imperfect*.

iter per Alpēs: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For the other route used by Caesar see map facing p. 42.

quō: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, α: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, uti in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandi causā collocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis 10 et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, al-

teram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit. 20



GALBA'S CAMP

9. *aliquot*, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. 3.

13. *Octodūrus*, -i, m. (Cg), Octodurus (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). 1.

14. *vallēs*, -is, f., vale, valley. 2. *adi-ciō*, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.

19. *attribuō*, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, tr. [ad + tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2.

6. *periculō*: from the natives. *portōriis*, "tolls," levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.

cōsuērant: meaning of tense? App. 194, α: G.-L. 241, R.: A. 476: B. 262, A.: H.-B. 487: H. 538, 4.

7. *arbitrarētur*: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *arbitrāberis*.

11. *cohortēs duās*: for the location of these cohorts, see map.

14. *nōn . . . plānitīē*, "with a little level ground adjacent."

17. *vacuum relictam*, "left vacant."

19. *eum locum*: the western half of the village.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, detractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter
10 paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tela conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdebat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum
15 causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occu-

6. **renovō**, 1, *tr.* [re-+novus, new], renew. 2.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

8. **plēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill], full, whole, complete. 3.

9. **singillatim**, *adv.* [singulī, one

each], singly, one by one; individually. 1.

10. **paucitās**, -tātis, *f.* [paucus, few], fewness, small number. *

13. **abstrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. 1.

15. **perpetuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent,

Chap. 2. The mountaineers revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.

2. **eō**: i.e. into the winter quarters.

3. **quam . . . concesserat**: this is not a part of the quotation, but is an explanation added by the writer; therefore it is not subjunctive.

4. **montēs**: the foot-hills, bordering on the valley.

5. **aliquot dē causīs**: these reasons are (1) *quod dēspiciēbant*, l. 7; (2) *quod exīstimābant*, l. 10; (3) *accēdebat quod dolēbant*, l. 13; (4) *(accēdebat quod) habēbant*. Note that the imperfect is used in these clauses because they all describe the condition of things existing at the time the Gauls revolted.

6. **ut caperent**: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with *id*.

7. **neque eam plēnissimam**, "and that not at its full strength"; explained by the ablatives absolute which follow.

8. **complūribus singillatim**, "many men individually."

11. **cum dēcurrerent et conicerent**, "when they should, etc.," is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down . . . they cannot withstand, etc."

13. **accēdebat quod**, lit. "there was added that" = "a further reason was that" or "besides."

liberōs abstractōs (*esse*), "that their children, etc."

14. **obsidum nōmine**, lit. "under the name of hostages" = "as hostages."

15. **perpetuae possessiōnis**: ♦ **sc. causā**.

pāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidiō veniri neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī

lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. 3.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. 1.

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1.

2. plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. 1.

5. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2.

9. supportō, 1, *tr.* [sub + portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

16. finitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map.

sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere* is the object of *habēbant*, and *persuāsum* is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. "they had . . . persuaded to themselves" = "they were persuaded that."

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to defend their camp.

1. opus hibernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, *mūnitiōēs*.

3. esset prōvisum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (*esse*), "that he need have no fear."

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . veniri (*posset*), lit. "and it could not be come to their assistance."

10. eius modī, "to this effect."

dicēbantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action; App. 191, *a*: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2. H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse.

maiōrī partī placuit, "the majority determined."

placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēven-
tum experiri et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut iis rēbus quās cōstituissent collocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integrīs vīribus fortiter prō-
pugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere,
et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex

13. placeō, 2. *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

reservō, 1. *tr.* [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

1. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevi, in a short time. *

3. gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (*of the Gauls*). 1.

4. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, un-

touched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; rē integrā, before anything was done. 3.

5. frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. 3.

6. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. *

8. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2.

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack the camp in great numbers.

1. vix: placed before *ut* for emphasis.

rēbus . . . administrandis: the dative of the gerundive is not common.

quās cōstituissent: a determinative clause; App. 231: H.-B. 550. Reason for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. decurrere: an historical infinitive. In what case is its subject, *hostēs*? App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

4. integrīs vīribus: ablative absolute, "while their strength was fresh."

5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

7. hōc superārī, quod, "they were overmatched in this, that."

8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, "kept

withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of repeated action.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ablative. Contrast the construction of the same words in l. 4.

quārum . . . poterat, "while none of these things, etc."

10. poterat and dabātur are descriptive imperfects, describing a condition of things that went on all through the battle.

nōn modo dēfessō facultās dabātur, "not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted man." H. 656, 3: "Nōn modo (or solum) nōn, sed nē . . . quidem means *not only not, but not even*, and nōn modo (solum), sed nē . . . quidem, has the same meaning when the verb standing in the second clause belongs also to the first."

pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstit-
erat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur, ac
nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficērent, atque hostēs
ācrius instārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et
fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum per-
ducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīli centuriō, quem 5
Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et
item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magnī et
virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis
docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur.
Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit 10

11. saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. 1.

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak,
faint, sluggish. 1.

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum,
tr., split; tear down, destroy. 1.

5. pilus, -ī, *m.*, century of soldiers;
primus pilus, first century of a legion;
primī pīli centuriō, or primipilus,
the centurion of the first century, chief

centurion. 1.

6. Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Ner-
vius], of the Nervii. 1.

7. C., *abbr.* for praenomen Gāius
(gā'yus). *

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Voluse-
nus Quadratus (gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs
kwa-drā'tūs), a tribune of Caesar's army,
afterward commander of cavalry. 4.

11. excēdendī: gerund or gerun-
dive?

locī relinquendī: gerund or gerun-
dive?

12. suī recipiendī: construction?
App. 291, a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B.
339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba de-
cides on a sortie.

1. cum pugnārētur, "when the bat-
tle had lasted." The imperfect sub-
junctive is to be translated on the same
principle as is laid down for the imper-
fect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234:
A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

hōris: ablative after the comparative,
amplius; cf. note on *milibus*, II, 7, 10.

3. languidiōribus nostrīs, "as our
men grew weaker"; ablative absolute.

5. cāsum, "extremity."

quem . . . diximus: cf. II, 25, 7.

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in

this chapter are all historical presents.
The historical present narrates a new
event in a story just as the perfect does.
It may be followed by either the primary
or the secondary tenses of the subjunc-
tive. In this chapter the dependent
subjunctives are all imperfects, as if the
principal verbs were perfects.

ūnam . . . si experirentur, lit. "told
him that there was one hope of safety,
if they should try" = "that their only
hope of safety was to try."

9. extrēmum auxilium, "their last
resource."

experirentur: indirect discourse for
the future indicative.

10. militēs certiōrēs facit, "he di-
rected the soldiers." This phrase is fol-
lowed by indirect discourse, as usual;
but all the verbs are in the subjunctive
mode, because they represent impera-
tives of the direct form.

paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptionē factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē in castra mūnitiōnēs-

11. tantummodo, *adv.*, only. 1.

12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [*capiō*, take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. *

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*re-faciō*, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with sē*, refresh one's self, rest. 3.

13. ērumpō, -rumpere, -rupī, -rupum, *intr.* [*rumpō*, break], break forth,

sally. 1.

2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [*con-legō*, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; *sē colligere*, collect one's self, rally. 3.

6. cōstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [*stō*, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. *

9. fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. 1.

12. exciperent, *lit.* "catch," on their shields = "shield themselves from."

post: the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. quod iussī sunt faciunt, "they did as they had been commanded." *iussī sunt* is used instead of a pluperfect, just as *faciunt* is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except *iussī sunt* are in the imperfect or pluperfect.

2. suī colligendī: cf. note on 4, 12.

3. commūtātā fortunā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because the Romans, like other men, fought with

more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.

4. potiundōrum castrōrum: how can the intransitive verb *potior* be used in the gerundive construction? App. 289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, 4, n.: H. 623, 1.

circumventōs: translate by a coordinate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on *tertiā parte*. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. armīs: ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.

que suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam 10
temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse
meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī
commeātusque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī
aedificiis incēnsis, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō
hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in 15
Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. His rēbus gestis, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātā
Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis
in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus
esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere
volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius belli 5

12. **memini**, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. 1.

15. **dēmoror**, 1, *tr.* [moror, delay], hinder, delay. 1.

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

3. **hiems**, -mis, *f.*, winter time,

winter. *

5. **subitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden.

coorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co- + orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. 2.

10. **quod . . . nōlēbat**: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. **aliō cōnsiliō**, "with one purpose"; namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. **aliīs . . . rēbus**, "that he had met a different state of affairs"; namely, a dangerous battle.

15. **in Nantuātēs**: there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legion.

Chap. 7-11. The Aremorian states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a wide-spread uprising of Gaul.

The events of the preceding six chap-

ters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. The Aremorian states revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.

1. **omnibus dē causis**, "for every reason"; explained by the absolutes *superātis* . . . *Sedūnis*, which should be translated by causal clauses.

pācātā (esse) Galliam: this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

2. **superātis Belgis**: cf. II, 1-33.

expulsis Germānis: cf. I, 30-54.

victis Sedūnis: cf. 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. **quod . . . volēbat**: under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmentī causā dīmisit; quō
 10 in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scien-
 tiā atque ūsū rērum nauticarum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in
 5 magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus inter-
 iectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō mari ūtī cōsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sili atque

6. *adulēscēns, -entis, m.* [*pres. part. of adulēscō, grow up*], youth, young man. 4.

7. *mare, -is, n.*, sea; *mare Ōceanum*, the ocean. *

8. *praefectus, -ī, m.* [*praeficiō, place over,*] overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). 4.

10. *Terrasidius, -dī, m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī'tūs tēr'a-sid'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Trebius, -bī, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

11. *Velānius, -nī, m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwīn'tūs vē-lā-nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Silius, -lī, m., Titus Silius (tī'tūs

sīl'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

2. *ōra, -ae, f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. 4.

3. *nāvigō, 1, intr.* [*nāvis, ship*], set sail, sail. *

4. *nauticus, -a, -um, adj.* [*nauta, sailor*], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. 1.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr. [*cēdō, go*], go before, precede, excel, surpass. 3.

5. *vāstus, -a, -um, adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. 3.

portus, -ūs, m. [*cf. porta, gate*], harbor, haven, port. *

7. *vectigālis, -e, adj.* [*vehō, carry*], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. 2.

7. *proximus . . . Ōceanum*: i.e. nearer than any other officer. For case see App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

9. *in finitimās civitatēs*: especially the sea-board states of the northwest, called Aremorean states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremorean states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. *huius civitātis*: the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. *ōrae*: *partitive genitive*, depending on *amplissima*.

regiōnum: depending on *ōrae*.

quod: belongs with *habent*, 1. 2; *antecēdunt*, 1. 4; and *habent*, 1. 7.

4. *in magnō . . . interiectīs*, "there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch (lit. great violence) of vast and open sea."

7. *habent vectigālēs*, "they treat

Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōnsilia, eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālīnt. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īstituī,

9. recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain.
1.

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. 2.

15. permanēō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr.* [manēō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

as tributaries"; i.e. the ship owners paid a tax for the privilege of using the harbors.

ab . . . retinendī, lit. "a beginning is made by these of arresting" = "they began by arresting."

9. finitimī: the Eſuvii and the Coriosolites.

10. ut, "as," almost "since."

12. commūnī cōnsiliō, "by common agreement."

13. āctūrōs (*esse*), "that they would do."

14. ut permanēre quam perferre mālīnt, "to prefer to remain (rather) than to endure."

15. accēperint: implied indirect discourse.

18. sī velit, remittat: the direct form was *sī vīs, remitte*.

16. mālō, mälle, māluī, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [magis, more+volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1.

2. aedificō, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house+faciō, make], build, construct. 1.

3. Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the river Liger (li'jēr), better the Loire. 1.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [cf. rēmus, oar] oarsman, rower. 1.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The Veneti make preparations to resist him.

2. aberat longius, "was too far off," to take command in person.

nāvēs longās: cf. Int. 64.

in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing p. 217, notice that there are three towns along the Liger, connected by a line of march. These were the winter quarters of the army, and no doubt ships were built at all of them.

3. ex prōvinciā: the Gauls were not competent oarsmen, for their ships were managed by sails, not oars; otherwise oarsmen might have been secured from the friendly maritime states, the Andes and the Pictones.

īstituī, "to be procured."

nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeritē
 5 administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad
 exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cog-
 nitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus ad-
 mīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nā-
 tiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et
 10 in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine periculī bellum parāre
 et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre
 instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidē-
 bant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, nāvigatiōnem
 15 impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque por-
 tuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī ino-
 piam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut
 omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus
 posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque
 eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, insulās

4. nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for* nāvita; nāvis, ship], sailor. 1.

gubernātōr, -ōris, *m.* steersman, pilot. 1.

7. facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

9. sancio, sancire, sānxī, sānctum, *tr.* [*cf.* sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, *pf. part. as*

adj., sacred, inviolable, established. 2. inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-*+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. 1.

13. nāvigatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvīgō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. 3.

14. inscientia, -ae, *f.* [insciēns, ignorant], ignorance. 3.

19. insula, -ae, *f.*, island. *

5. cum primum . . . potuit: probably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L. 561: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 557, a.

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 217), and then marched west, thus concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.

7. quantum . . . admīsissent, "how great a crime they had committed"; an indirect question.

8. lēgātōs retentōs (*esse*), "(namely), that envoys had been arrested," explains facinus; syntactically it is indirect discourse after intellegēbant.

quod nōmen, "a name which"; i.e.

lēgātōs.

10. prō, "in proportion to."

12. hōc: relation of cause, explained by quod . . . cōfidēbant.

nātūrā: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

13. pedestria itinera, "land routes."

14. impeditam (*esse*), "was difficult."

15. neque posse cōfidēbant, "and they trusted that . . . would not be able."

16. iam, "even."

ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608: A. 527, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 586, II.

17. sē posse, sc. sciēbant.

18. facultātem, "supply."

19. locōrum, depends on vada, etc.

nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari²⁰ atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. His initis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellio facta post deditiōnem, defectiō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, in primis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem⁵ licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbilitē celeriterque

20. nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.* learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvī, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; nōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. 4.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, close], shut up; conclūsum mare, an inland sea. 1.

23. Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vō-nē'shya), the country of the Veneti. 1.

25. Lexovii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lēk-sō'vī-i). 4.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (nām'nē-tēz). 1.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ām''bī-lī'a-tī). 1.

26. Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī'a-blīn'tēz). 1.

3. rebellio, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. 3.

4. defectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1. tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. 1.

5. neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

7. mōbilitē, *adv.* [mōbilis, mov-

20. aliam esse atque, "was different from (what it was)."

in conclūsō mari: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.

23. in Venetiam: probably in the bay of Quiberon. See map, p. 232.

primum: the adverb.

25. Ambiliatōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. suprā: in chap. 9.

2. multa, "many considerations."

3. iniūria . . . equitum, lit. "the outrage of knights arrested" = "the outrage of arresting knights."

5. nē, "the fear that." This clause, like the nouns *iniūria*, etc., is in apposition with *multa*.

hāc parte neglēctā: translate by a conditional clause.

sibi idem licēre, "that the same course was open to them."

6. cum: causal.

7. rēbus: what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?

excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condicionem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs civitātēs cōnspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germanōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgis arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficiscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs,

able], readily, easily. 1.

excitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). 3.

9. cōspirō, 1, *intr.* [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. 1.

10. partior, 4, *tr.* [pars, part], part, share, divide. 1.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, *tr.* [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. 3.

3. officium, -ci, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō**, to remain faithful. *

8. autem, "moreover."

9. cōspirārent: translate this clause after the principal clause. The subjunctive was probably used in the direct form; App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 1.

10. partiendum (esse) sibi, lit. "must be divided by him" = "he must divide." Remember that the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.

lātius distribuendum: so as to overawe several parts of Gaul at the same time.

Chap. 11. Accordingly he sends divisions of his army into various parts of Gaul, and himself marches against the Veneti.

2. flūminī: what other case may *proximus* govern? See note on 7, 7.

mittit: probably the various expeditions mentioned in this chapter all

started from Angers. See map facing p. 217.

mandat adeat: note the primary sequence after the historical present; cf. note on *accurrunt*, 5, 8. Note also the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 565, 4.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the hatred of the other Belgae in the preceding year, and it may have needed support.

4. arcessitī: sc. *esse*.

5. cōnentur is a part of Caesar's instructions to Labienus, and is therefore implied indirect discourse. But *dicēbantur* is not a part of the instructions, and is therefore indicative.

6. cohortibus legiōnāriis: Roman soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry, which was Gallic.

7. in Galliam: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. 10
Brūtum adulēscēntem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus quās ex Pic-
tonibus et Santōnis reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre
iusserat praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficīsci
iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in ex-
 trēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habē-
 rent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper
 hōrārū XXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente
 aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflictarēntur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum 5
 oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis

10. D., *abbr. for praenomen Decimus*
 (dēs'i-mūs). 1.

11. Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius
 Brutus (dēs'i-mūs jū'nī-ūs brū'tūs), *one*
of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war,
and in the war with Pompey. He took
part in the conspiracy against Caesar,
and was killed by order of Antony. 2.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. *

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ced), the Pictones
 (pīk'tō-nēz). 1.

1. situs, -ūs, *m.* [sinō, put down],
 situation, site, position. 1.

2. lingula, -ae, *f.* [lingua, tongue],

a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [prēmīnēō,
 project], promontory, headland. 1.

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling,
 surging; tide; minuente aestū, at ebb
 tide. *

bis, *num. adv.* [for duis, from duo,
 two], twice. 3.

5. afflicto, 1, *tr.* [freq. of affligō,
 strike against, damage], damage great-
 ly, shatter, injure; harass, distress.
 2.

6. quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any
 time. 1.

10. quī . . . cūret, "to see that that
 force be kept away." For the construc-
 tion of *distinendam*, see App. 285, II, b:
 G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B.
 612, III: H. 622.

11. classī, nāvibus: indirect ob-
 jects of the compound verb *praeficit*.
 The fleet had probably assembled in the
 Liger, near its mouth.

14. eō: i.e. in Venetōs. He probably
 moved along the coast, laying siege to
 the towns in succession. After the dis-
 tribution of troops described in this
 chapter, Caesar had left three legions
 and eight cohorts. One legion was
 probably assigned to the fleet, leaving
 Caesar two legions and eight co-
 horts with which to attack the Veneti.

cōpiīs: why may *cum* be omitted?
 App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B.

222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Chap. 12-16. Caesar crushes the
 Veneti.

Chap. 12. Situation of the towns of
 the Veneti.

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the small
 plan in the lower left hand corner of the
 map on p. 232.

extrēmīs, "the end of."

2. pedibus, "on foot"; i.e. by land.
 At high tide the low ground between
 the towns and the mainland was over-
 flowed.

3. sē incitāvisset, "had rushed in."

4. nāvibus: sc. *aditum habērent*.

5. in vadīs afflictarēntur, "were
 stranded on the shallows." The sub-
 junctive is due to attraction.

6. sī quandō . . . coeperant, . . .
 dēportābant, "whenever they began

forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidi moenibus adaequātis, suis fortūnis dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habē-

7. extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trumsum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. 1

9. appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.



OPERATIONS AGAINST THE VENETI

... they would carry off, etc." *dēportābant* is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. *coeperant* is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.

operis, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. *extrūsō* . . . *adaequātis*: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town,

completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (*extrūsō*) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggers.

aggere ac mōlibus: ablatives of means.

8. *fortūnis*: indirect object. The ablative with *dē* is more common.

9. *cuius rei*: i.e. ships.

bant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipi- 10
ēbant; ibi sē rūrsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant.
Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nos-
trae nāvēs tempēstātibus dētinebantur, summaque erat vāstō
atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs porti-
bus, difficultās nāvigandī.

15

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nā-
vium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent;
prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem
flūctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae 5
ex rōbre ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trāns-

10. dēportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry off or away. 1.

11. opportunitās, -tātis, *f.* [oppo-
tūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportu-
nity; advantage; with loci, favorable
situation or position; with temporis,
favorable opportunity. 3.

13. tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [tempus,
time], time, season; weather, usually
bad weather, storm, tempest. *

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
tr. [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hin-
der, detain. 1.

14. rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered,
far apart; in small detachments, a few
at a time; few. 1.

1. namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. 3.

2. carina, -ae, *f.*, keel. 1.

aliquantō, *adv.* [aliquantus, some],
somewhat, a little. 1.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level,
flat, plain. 2.

3. dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, de-
part], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). 1.

4. prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. 1.

admodum, *adv.* [modus, measure],
up to the measure; very much, very; with
num., fully; with neg., at all. 1.

ērīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.*
[regō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, *pf.*
part. as *adj.*, standing upright, high. 1.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. 2.

5. flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood,
billow, wave. 3.

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf.*
part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapt-
ed, appropriate. 2.

6. rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. 1.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam,
thwart. 1.

12. partem: duration of time.

13. summa agrees with difficultās.

vāstō . . . portibus: ablatives abso-
lute with causal meaning.

Chap. 13. Description of the ships
of the Veneti.

1. namque introduces the reason for
the ability of the enemy's ships to oper-
ate while the Roman ships were help-
less.

2. carinae . . . nāvium, "the bot-
toms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc."
In such cases Latin never inserts a

word for "those."

3. quō: when is quō used in purpose
clauses?

excipere, "meet," "encounter."
They were less likely to strike bottom,
and if stranded they would not heel
over.

5. tōtae, "entirely."

6. ex rōbre: construction? App.
136: G.-L. 396: A. 403, 2: H.-B. 406, 4: H.
470.

quamvis: accusative of quivīs.

trānstra: these heavy timbers, set in

tra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim

7. **pedālis**, -e, *adj.* [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. 1.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fasten. 1.

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. 1.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 2.

8. **digitus**, -ī, *m.*, finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. 1.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, with or without digitus. 1.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness. 1.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; in ancorīs, at anchor. *

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. 3.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. 3.

9. **revinciō**, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinc-

tum, *tr.* [re-+vinciō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. 3.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. 1.

tenuiter, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. 1.

10. **linum**, -ī, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. 1.

11. **similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. 1.

12. **ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind. *

regō, regere, **rēxi**, **rēctum**, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. 1.

14. **congressus**, -ūs, *m.*, [congre-dior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. 1.

15. **pulsus**, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. 1.

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. 4.

16. **aptus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. 1.

across the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and helped them to withstand the Roman *rōstra* (l. 17). In Roman ships they were rowers' benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. **in altitūdinem**, "in thickness."

8. **crassitūdine**: this descriptive ablative is modified by a genitive instead of the usual adjective.

prō, "instead of."

9. **pellēs . . . cōnfectae**, "skins and thinly dressed leather (served) as sails."

11. **quod**: explaining *eō*.

12. **tanta onera nāvium**, "such heavy ships."

13. **nōn satis commodē**, "not very well."

14. **classi**: dative of possessor.

ūnā celeritāte, "only in speed."

15. **pulsū rēmōrum**, "in rowing"; i.e. "in having oars." In the battle which followed the fact that the Roman ships had oars was an immense advantage.

reliqua, "all other things."

prō "in view of."

16. **illis**: the ships of the enemy.

iis nostrae rôstrô nocēre poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdô), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādē dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tem-²⁰ pestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidis reprimī neque iis nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quæ ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimæ atque omnī genere⁵ armōrum ōrnātissimæ profectæ ex portū nostris adversæ cōn-

17. rôstrum, -ī, *n.* [rôdô, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. 2.

noceô, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt; nocēns, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. 4.

firmitūdô, -inis, *f.* [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2.

19. cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. 1.

20. saeviô, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. 1.

21. tūtô, *adv.* [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. 2.

22. cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. 1.

23. extimēscô, -timēscere, -timuī, —, *tr.* [timēscô, *incept. of* timeô, fear], dread. 1.

3. reprimô, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [re-+premô, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. 1.

5. genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

6. ōrnô, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; ōrnātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1.

17. nostræ: *sc. nāvēs.*

18. adigēbātur, "could be thrown."

19. cōpulīs: *see Int. 64.*

accēdēbat ut et ferrent et cōsisterent et timērent, "there was the additional advantage that they weathered, etc.," or simply, "besides, they weathered, etc."

20. sē ventō dedissent, "ran before the wind."

21. cōsisterent, "came to anchor."

22. relictæ, "when left."

quārum rērum cāsus, "the danger of these things."

23. nāvibus: *dative of the agent.*

Chap. 14. The naval battle. The

Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

1. expugnātis: by the method described in chap. 12.

2. neque . . . posse, "and that they could not be injured." What is the literal translation? App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

6. armōrum, "equipment," including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostris: *sc. nāvibus.*

cōstitērunt, "took their position"; from cōsistō. *See the map on p. 232.*

stitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classi praecerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtāe, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtāe insertae affixae-
 15 que longuriis nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrāliū falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adduc-

14. praeparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1.

falx, falcis, *f.* sickle, pruning-hook; nook (for pulling down walls). 2.

inserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. 1.

affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [ad + figō, fix], fasten to. 1.

15. longurius, -rī, *m.* [longus, long], a long pole. 2.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. 1.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. 1.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrāle pīlum, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1.

16. antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. 3.

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (upright). 1.

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō, (prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). 2.

7. Brūtō, tribūnīs, centuriōnibus: indirect objects of cōnstābat.

9. quid . . . insisterent, "what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt." These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559 4.

10. rōstrō: ablative of means.

nocērī: sc. nāvibus hostium; cf. references on neque . . . posse, l. 2.

turribus excitātis, "even when the towers were erected." These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space.

11. ex, "on."

12. neque . . . et = et (both) nōn . . . et. In translating, omit the first et.

13. missa, "those thrown."

erat magnō ūsuī, "was very useful." In fact this device saved the day.

15. longuriis: dative with insertae and affixae.

nōn . . . falcium, "of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks."

hīs . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell.

hīs: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means.

cum . . . comprehēnsī erant: mode? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4. For the

tique erant, nāvigio rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vclīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum 20 erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur. 25

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antennīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. 5

17. nāvigium, -gī, *n.* [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rūptum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. 1.

18. abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. 1.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall down, fall. 1.

19. armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2.

21. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. 1.

23. factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of faciō*, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. 1.

25. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. 1.

1. bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 3.

2. ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], flock or rally around, surround, hem in. *

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb over; board. 1.

tenses cf. note on sī quandō . . . dēportābant, 12, 6.

17. quibus: i.e. fūnibus.

18. cum: causal.

19. nāvibus, "of the ships"; a dative of reference modifying the whole clause, where a genitive might have been used instead; cf. Caesarē, I, 31, 4.

22. in cōspectū, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 232.

23. paulō fortius, "a little braver than usual."

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. cum circumsteterant: for mode see note on cum comprehēnsi erant, 14, 15.

singulās . . . ternae, "two or three . . . each." Only the disabled Gallic ships were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. quod, eī rei: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant.

Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expug-
 10 nāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenirent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum
 5 coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaeque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. 1. tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. 1.

existō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. 1.

9. cōsector, 1, *tr.* [sector, *freq.* of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4.

10. interventus, -ūs, *m.* [intervenīō, come between], coming; aid. 1.

11. terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (*pl.*) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3.

6. in . . . ferēbat, "in that direction toward which the wind was blowing."

9. singulās, "one by one."

11. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had been going on." For this translation of the imperfect see note on cum pugnārētur, 5, 1.

hōrā quārtā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.

2. cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with *ad*, until. 3.

2. iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. 1.

3. dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

4. ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. 1.

8. vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. 1.

3. in quibus . . . fuit, "who had any ability to advise or any rank." eō: to the seat of war.

4. nāvium . . . fuerat, "whatever [of] ships they had had anywhere."

5. quibus, refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, "did not know where to take refuge, etc." For construction see note on quid . . . insisterent, 14, 9.

7. eō gravius, quō, *lit.* "more severely on this account, in order that" = "the more severely, etc."

barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

10

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēceraut, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus Aulerci 5 Eburovicēs Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs prae-dandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre 10 revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē

10. **necō**, 1, *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; **sub corōnā vēndere**, sell at auction. 1.

3. **Viridovix**, -icis, *m.*, Viridovix **viridō-viks**), a chief of the Venelli. 4.

6. **Eburovicēs**, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-vi'sēz). 1.

auctor, -ōris, *m.* [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates;

promoter, instigator, adviser, author: **auctor esse**, advise. 1.

8. **praetereā**, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. **perdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give over, ruin; **perditus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 1.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, freebooter, bandit, robber. 1.

10. **agricultūra**, -ae, *f.* [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3.

10 **reliquōs**: i.e. all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatucl (II, 33, 18) seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

1. **dum geruntur**: for mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 604, 1.

Sabīnus: see 11, 8.

5. **his paucis diēbus**, "a few days before"; i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

7. **nōlēbant**: the senators.

8. **undique ex Galliā**, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremorian states. This was the Romans' third year in Gaul, and the long-continued war had unsettled everything.

11. **idōneō . . . tenēbat**, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ablatives: **rēbus** is an ablative of specification; **locō** is an ablative of place, App.

tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōn-
sēdisset cotīdiēque prōductis cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret,
ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret,
15 sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur;
tantamque opīniōnem timōris prae-buit ut iam ad vāllum
castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat,
quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente
quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte
20 aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn exīstimābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam
hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxili causā
sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque
persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī
5 ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, qui-
bus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius
abesse quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum

13. **prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-
tum.** *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead out or forth,
bring forth; prolong, protract; produce;
with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. *

14. **contemptiō, -ōnis, f.** [contem-
nō, despise], disdain, contempt. 1.

15. **carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum,** *tr.*, pluck: censure, jeer
at. 1.

18. **absēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part.*
of absum be absent], absent, at a dis-
tance. 2.

19. **aequus, -a, -um. adj.** even.

level, equal; equitable, impartial, just;
aequus animus, equanimity, compo-
sure. 3.

2. **callidus, -a, -um, adj.**, shrewd. 1.

3. **praemium, -mī, n.**, distinction,
prize, reward *

pollicitātiō, -ōnis f., [polliceor,
promise], promise, offer. 2.

4. **ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doc-
tum, tr.** [doceō, teach], teach thorough-
ly, inform in detail, explain. 1.

7. **clam, adv.**, secretly. 3.

151, b: *castris* appears to be an ablative
of place, but is an ablative of means,
App. 151, c.

12. **cum, "although."**

millum; sc. passuum.

spatiō: ablative of degree of differ-
ence; lit. "opposite by a distance,
etc."

14. **hostibus:** dative of reference.

18 **eō absente, "in the absence of
the man"; i.e. Caesar.**

20. **lēgātō:** dative of the agent with
dīmīcandum (esse); "that a legate ought
to fight."

Chap. 18. Sabinus tricks the ene-
my into attacking his camp.

2. **Gallum, "a Gaul."**

ex iīs, " (one) of those."

5. **prō perfugā, "pretending to be a
deserter."**

6. **docet** has as objects the two sub-
stantive clauses *quibus . . . premātur*
(indirect question) and *abesse*, etc. (in-
direct discourse).

neque . . . nocte, lit. "and that it
was not farther off but that on the next
night," = "and that no later than the
next night."

ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiiscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōti bene gerendī amittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportere. Multae 10 rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabini cūctatiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adducti nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex con- 15 ciliō dīmittunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut

9. **conclāmō**, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen, occasion, opportunity. 1.

bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, melius; *sup.*, optimē. 2.

12. **cūctatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2.

cōfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōfirmō, assert], assurance. 1.

13. **parum**, *adv.* [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Ven-

eti, Venetian. 2.

14. **libenter**, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

17. **laetus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. 1. **explōrātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain 1.

18. **sarmentum**, -i, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. 1.

virgultum, -i, *n.*, thicket, brush, brushwood. 1.

19. **pergō**, **pergere**, **perrēxi**, **perrēctum**, *intr.* [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. 1.

9. **negōti . . . gerendī**, "of winning a victory."

10. **irī**, **oportere**, "(but) that they must go."

11. **superiōrum diērum**, "during the preceding days."

13. **spēs . . . bellī**, "the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc." The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

14. **quod . . . crēdunt**: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with *rēs*, 1. 11.

15. **prius quam . . . concessum**, "until they had granted them permission." The fate of the senate, 17, 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. *Mode?* App. 236, b: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, b, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, c: H. 605, I.

17. **ut . . . victōriā**, "as if victory were assured."

18. **quibus . . . compleant**: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.

1. **ab imō**, "from the bottom."

quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique pervēnerunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus milītēs nostrī cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitatēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam per-

7. dēfatigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. 1.

8. exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exercitō, *freq. of* exerceō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

9. tergum, -i, *n.*, the back; terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergō, in the rear. *

10. vertō, vertere, verti, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. *

12. ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [vādō, go], escape. 1.

13. nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1.

15. alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. 2.

prōptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. 1.

16. mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. 1.

17. mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animōsque, minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. 4.

3. quam . . . spatī, "the least possible time."

5. cupientibus, lit. "to them desiring," = "as they eagerly awaited it."

6. onera: the bundles of brush; 18, 18.

7. factum est opportunitāte, "it resulted from the advantage, etc." The subject of *factum est* is *ut . . . verterent*.

8. militum: the Romans.

9. ac, "but." Latin usually says "and," when such an affirmative clause follows a negative one; English usually says "but."

11. equitēs: nominative.

13. Sabīnus: sc. *certior factus est*.

14. Titūriō: Titurius Sabinus.

15. ut . . . sic, "while . . . yet."

16. animus, "impulse."

17. mēns, "will-power."

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.

Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.

1. Crassus: read 11, 5-8, and see map facing p. 217.

vēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis 5 profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentariā prōvisā, auxiliis equitatūque comparatō, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae his regionibus, nōminatim ēvocātis, in Sotiātium finēs exercitum 10 intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnis cōpiis coactis equitatūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde equitatū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis collocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. Praeconinus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs vā-lē' (i-ūs prēk''ō-nī'nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. 1.

5. Manlius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs mǎn'li-ūs), proconsul in 78 B.C. 1.

prōcōnsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. 1.

6. mediocris, -cre, *adj.* [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.

diligentia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking,

care. 4.

8. Tolosā, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. 1.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kār'kə-sō). 1.

9. Narbō, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. 1.

10. ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, *pf. part. as noun*, reenlisted veteran. 3.

Sotiātēs, -um, *m.* (DEed), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). 4.

15. convallis, -is, *f.* [vallīs, valley], enclosed valley, defile. 1.

2. ante: see I, 1, 2.

3. paucis annis: twenty-two or twenty-three years before, in 78 or 79, B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praeconinus.

6. nōn mediocrem, "unusual."

8. viris: ablative absolute with

ēvocātis. These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.

Tolosā: place from which, with ēvocātis.

9. civitatēs, "cities." finitimae agrees with it.

his regionibus: Aquitania. The dative depends on finitimae.

12. quō: ablative of specification.

13. primum: the adverb.

16. disiectōs, "while scattered," in pursuit of the cavalry.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscenulō duce efficere possent perspicī
 5 cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius rei sunt longē
 10 perītissimī Aquitānī, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentīā nostrōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt: Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs,

2. frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. 1.

4. adulēscenulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* adulēscēns, youth], a very young man. 1.

9. cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. 1.

11. aerāria, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. 1.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting;

shaft, mine. 1.

12. prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. 2.

1. intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; intentus, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. 3.

Chap. 21. Crassus defeats the Sotiates and takes their town.

1. superiōribus victōriis: those mentioned in 20, 4-5. Case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431, a: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 432: H. 476, 1.

3. quid . . . possent: subject of *perspicī*.

imperātōre, "commander-in-chief."

sine . . . legiōnibus: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers.

4. adulēscenulō duce: ablative absolute.

5. cuperent: like *putārent*, with *cum*, l. 1.

6. ex itinere: as in II, 12, 4.

8. aliās: the adverb.

9. cuniculis āctīs, "having driven tunnels." They probably tried to set fire to the agger from beneath, as it was made largely of wood.

cuius rei, "an art in which." Case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 451, 1.

11. diligentīā: ablative of cause The Romans may have dug countermines, thus meeting the enemy before they got under the agger.

14. faciunt, "they did so."

Chap. 22. The chief of the Sotiates vainly attempts to escape.

1. rem: the surrender of the arms.

aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtīs (quōs illi solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut om̄ibus in vitā commodis unā cum iīs fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādē dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, m., Adiatunnus (ā'dī-a-tūn'ūs), the leader of the Sotiates. 2.

3. dēvovēō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr. [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus, pf. part. as noun,** a sworn follower. 2.

soldurius, -rī, m., vassal. 1.

4. commodum, -ī, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

fruo, fruī, fructus sum, intr., en-

joy. 1.

7. adhūc, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. 1.

8. recūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum**, shrink from. *

10. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

1. Vocātēs, -um, m. (Ded), the Vocates (vō-kā'tēz). 2.

3. quōrum . . . condiciō, ut fruantur, "whose position is this, that they enjoy."

4. ut . . . fruantur . . . ferant . . . cōnsciscant: substantive clauses of fact (result).

commodis: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

unā: the adverb.

5. quōrum . . . dēdiderint: a determining clause, App. 231. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

sī . . . accidat: the mode is due to the same reason as that of *dēdiderint*. Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative; App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, δ: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. memoriā: ablative of time within which.

quisquam: why is this the proper indefinite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

8. devōvisset: cf. note on *quōrum* . . . *dēdiderint*, l. 5.

recūsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

cum his: this simply repeats *cum DC dēvōtīs*, l. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. tamen, "nevertheless"; i.e. in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuci, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.

12. eādē: i.e. the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.

1. in finēs, etc.: see map facing p. 217.

et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quō-
 5 queversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auc-
 tōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere
 10 cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interelūdere īnsti-
 tuunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter
 15 exiguitātem nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquare, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūctandum existimāvit quīn

2. **Tarusātēs, -ium, m.** (DEc), the Tarusates (tār''ū-sā'tēz). 2.

4. **quōqueversus, adv.**, in every direction, all around. 1.

10. **Sertōrius, -rī, m.**, Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'rī-ūs) a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72

B.C. 1.

15. **didūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.** [dūcō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. 1.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr. [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. 2.

18. **cūctor, 1, intr.**, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2.

3. **oppidum**: subject of *expugnātum* (*esse*).

paucīs . . . erat, lit. "within the few days within which it had been come there." = "within a few days after his arrival."

7. **citeriōris Hispāniae**: Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

finitimae agrees with *quae* and governs *Aquītāniae*.

8. **auctōritāte**, "assurance."

10. **ducēs**, "as commanders."

Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under

him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.

12. **cōsuētūdine**: ablative of accordance.

loca capere, "to choose suitable positions."

14. **quod**, "therefore"; conjunction, not pronoun.

15. **nōn facile didūcī**, "could not easily be divided." This and the following infinitives, through *augērī*, depend on *animadvertit*.

18. **nōn . . . dēcertāret**, "he thought he must not delay to fight a de

pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

20

24. Primā lūce prōductis omībus cōpiīs, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsili caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine ullō vulnere victoriā potiri et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūctatiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs milītēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nō oportēre quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii multis telis con-

3. etsī, conj. [et + sī, if], even if, although. *

8. cōgitō, 1, tr. and intr. [co + agitō,

cisive battle."

On the quā clause, see App. 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 298: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

19. cōnsilium, "a council of war."

20. pugnae: dative.

Chap. 24. Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.

1. duplici aciē: The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line.

2. auxiliis . . . coniectis: the longer line of the enemy might be expected to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legionaries. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. sē . . . dimicātūrōs, "that it would be safe to fight."

consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

5. tūtius esse, "that it was still safer."

obsessis . . . interclūsō, "by blocking . . . and cutting off."

7. coepissent: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. impeditōs: both by their heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.

10. suā refers to the subject, *hostēs*.

11. opiniōne, lit. "impression" which they gave, = "appearance."

13. exspectāri . . . oportēre, "that they ought not to delay longer."

quā . . . irētur: cf. 23, 18, note.

14. omnibus cupientibus, 'to the delight of all.'

Chap. 25. The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.

1. coniectis, "by throwing."

iectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēs-
 que, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat,
 lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus
 5 comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium praebērent,
 cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur
 tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs
 circumitis hostium castris Crassō renūtiāvērunt nōn eādē
 esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque
 10 aditum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnis
 praemiis pollicitatiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet
 ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iis cohortibus quae
 praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant et longiōre
 5 itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent,
 omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad
 eas quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnerunt atque his prōrutis

2. dēpellō, -pellere, -pull, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive from or away, ward off. 1.

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. 1.

4. subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3.

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. 1.

6. timidē, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1.

8. circumeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. 1.

4. intritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. 1.

5. circumducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

7. prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], overthrow. 1.

3. quibus: the dative, since with cōnfidō the dative (App. 115) is regularly used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, a) of things.

4. subministrandis: to the legionary soldiers.

ad aggerem, "for an agger." The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

8. circumitis castris, "having ridden around the camp."

9. ab, "at."

Chap. 26. The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.

1. cohortātus ut excitārent, "urging . . . to stimulate."

4. intritæ ab labōre, "not worn out by fighting." *ab labōre* is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.

longiōre, "roundabout."

7. diximus: in 25, 9.

prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid rei gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nōstrī redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in 10 spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coopērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātis omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus ex milium L numerō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix 15 quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsæ, quod hiems suberat, id facere 5 neglēxērunt.

8. **plānē**, *adv.* [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.

11. **impugnō**, 1. *tr.* [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

14. **campus**, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space or country. 1.

15. **Cantabrī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn'ta-bri). 1.

2. **ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. *

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bēl'i). 1.

3. **Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the

Bigerriones (bi-jēr'ī-ō'nēz or bi'jē-rī-ō'nēz). 1.

Ptianī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā'nī-i). 1.

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā'tēz). 1.

4. **Auscī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci aw'si). 1.

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gā-rūm'nī). 1.

Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). 1.

ex . . . numerō depends on *quārtā parte*.

15. **quæ (milia) convēnisse** is the subject of the impersonal *cōnstābat*, "who were known to have gathered."

16. **multā nocte**, "late at night."

Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.

4. **paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs**, "only a few tribes, the most remote"; probably those living among the Pyrenees.

5. **tempore**: cf. note on *quibus*, 25, 3.

8. **prius . . . quam**: see App. 236, c. **vidērī**: supply *possent* from *posset*.

9. **quid rei gererētur**, "what was going on"; subject of *posset*.

10. **nōstrī**: i.e. those who were attacking in front.

quod, "a thing which." The antecedent is *redintegrātis viribus*.

12. **per**, "over."

14. **campis**: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

28. Eodem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiique supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as *noun*, those in the rear. 2.

1. **exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.** [agō, drive], finish, pass. 1.

3. **umquam, adv.**, at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never. 2.

8. **continēns, -entis, adj.** [pres. part. of *contineō*, hold together], holding

together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; as *noun*, mainland, continent. *

11. **dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -spersum, tr.** [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

12. **ēvolō, 1, intr.** [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.

15. **dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, tr.** [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.

1. **exācta**, "past"; the participle used as an adjective.

2. **omnī Galliā**: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, 1, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.

3. **quī essent, mīssissent**: a clause of characteristic.

5. **eō**, "against them."

exercitum: on his march from the

Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 217.

quī, "but they."

ac, "than," or "from"; cf. *aliā* atque, 9, 20.

7. **contendissent**: the mode is due only to indirect discourse.

9. **initium**, "edge."

11. **dispersis nostris**: just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, 19 and 20.

13. **complūribus**: of the enemy.

14. **longius**, "too far."

imeditiōribus, "very difficult."

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallō ad utrumque latus extruēbat. Incredibili celeritate magnō spatiō paucis 5 diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae uti opus necessariō intermitteretur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus milites continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicis 10 aedificiisque incēnsis Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus quae proximā bellum fēcerant, in hibernis collocavit.

1. deinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. 1.

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, *tr.*, cut; kill, slay. 2.

2. imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+prūdēns, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. 1.

3. mātēria, -ae, *f.*, material; wood,

timber. 4.

6. pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2.

9. continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. 1.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. nē quis impetus, "that no attack."

inermibus . . . militibus: ablative absolute.

4. conversam ad hostem, "with their tops turned toward the enemy."

pro vallō, "to serve as a rampart."

Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. cōfectō, lit. "finished," = "cleared."

7. ipsi: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. sub pellibus: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.

BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (**I, 31**), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reënforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against

the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I**, 1-29, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book **III**, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.



LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula milia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsē-

1. Cn., *abbr. for Gnaeus* (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Pompēius, -ī, *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), *better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C.* 1.

2. Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes (ū-sīp'ē-tēz). 4.

Tēncterī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-rī). 4.

5. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.* of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun, Suēbī* (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bī), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

8. quotannīs, *adv.* [quot, as many as+annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.

9. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. quī agrees with *annus*, though its antecedent is *hieme*; cf. *quod*, I, 38, 3, note.

quī . . . cōsulibus, "in the year when, etc."

Cn. Pompēiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned

at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and, he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.

quō: the adverb.

8. singula: i.e. a thousand from each canton.

10 **runt**, *sē* atque *illōs* alunt; *hī* rursus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maxi-
 15 mam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitāe, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā assuefactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē
 20 cōsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs

10. **vicis**, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; only in the *adv. phrase in vicem*, alternately, in turn. 1.

11. **remaneo**, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr. [re- + maneo, remain]*, stay or remain behind, remain. *

12. **sēparō**, 1, *tr. [sē- + parō, prepare]*, prepare apart; separate; **sēparātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. 1.

14. **colō**, colere, colui, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. 1.

15. **lāc**, lactis, *n.*, milk. 1.

vivō, vivere, vixī, victum, *intr.*, live; subsist on. 2.

16. **vēnatiō**, -ōnis, *f. [vēnor, hunt]*, hunting, the chase. 1.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. 1.

17. **disciplina**, -ae, *f. [discō, learn]*, learning; discipline; instruction, system. 2.

assuefactiō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. 2.

19. **immānis**, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. 1.

20. **frigidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. 1.
vestītus, -ūs, *m. [vestiō, clothe]* clothing. 1.

10. **illōs**: i.e. those who are fighting.
annō post, lit. "afterwards by a year," = "the following year."

12. **ratiō atque ūsus**, "the [theoretical] training and practice in."

privātī . . . est: i.e. all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.

14. **frūmentō**, "on grain"; ablative of means with *vivunt*.

maximam partem: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 2: A. 397, a: B. 185, 1: H.-B. 388: H. 416, 2.

15. **multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus**, "are devoted to hunting."

16. **quae res**, "a practice which"; subject of *alit* and *efficit*.

17. **quod . . . faciunt** explains *libertate*.

ā puerīs, "from boyhood."

nullō officiō assuefactī, "trained by no service"; ablative of means.

19. **hominēs**: predicate accusative; "makes (them) men of, etc."

in eam . . . addūxērunt, lit. "have brought themselves into this custom." = "have trained themselves to such hardness."

20. **locīs frigidissimīs**, "though their climate is extremely cold"; ablative absolute.

vestītūs depends on *quicquam*. On the choice of indefinites, see App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercatōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dē- 5 fōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis 10

22. lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, *tr.*, wash; *in pass.*, bathe. 1.

3. dēsiderō, 1. *tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.

dēlectō, 1. *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. 1.

4. impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; *with pretium*, great. 1.

5. dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.

7. dēsiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum,

intr. [salīō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. *

8. vēstigiū, -gī, *n.* [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.

10. turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+ars, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1.

ephippiū, -pī, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

21. habērent, lavārentur: translate by presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here *addūxērunt*) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 2. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.

1. mercatōribus: dative of possessor.

eō, ut habeant, "on this account, that they may have."

cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

2. quibus vēndant: a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of *quibus* and the object of *habeant*.

quam quō dēsiderent, "than because they desire." *Nōn quō* with the subjunctive is used to reject a reason. In

this sentence *magis quam* takes the place of *nōn*. The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."

3. iūmentis importātis nōn ūtuntur: the important word is the participle *importātis*, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."

4. quaeque = *et quae*.

6. haec: antecedent of *quae* (*iūmenta*). summī . . . efficiunt, lit. "make that they be (capable) of the greatest labor." See App. 104.

7. pedibus, "on foot."

9. eōrum mōribus, "according to their standards."

10. habētur, "is considered."

ephippiis: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they had no stirrups.

ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatōrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum omninō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter milia passuum sescenta agrī vacāre dicuntur.
 5 Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis finibus expellere nōn

11. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. 1.

12. quamvis, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1.

13. remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. 1.

14. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.

15. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubi (ū'bī-i). *

16. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, in-

fluential. 2.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. 1.

17. hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. 1.

18. ventitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of veniō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. 2.

19. amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. 1.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1.

12. quamvis pauci, "however few (they may be)." Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 3. Their treatment of the Ubii.

1. pūblicē, "for the state."

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of esse.

3. ūnā ex parte: i.e. on the east of the Suebi.

4. sescenta: this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal knowledge of the interior of Germany.

5. ad alteram partem: i.e. the northwest. See map.

fuit, "was (once)"; i.e. before their feat by the Suebi.

6. paulō: with hūmāniōrēs.

10. cum, "although."

multis . . . expertī, "in spite of many attempts in numerous wars."

potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, 5 aedificia, vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iīs aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāvērunt, et eis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custodiās 10 Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīdui viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō insciōs inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs 15

12. *humilis*, -e, *adj.* [*humus*, the ground], *on the ground*; low, humble, abject, weak. 1.

13. *infirmus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-*+ *firmus*, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2.

3. *Germānia*, -ae, *f.* *Germania* (*jēr-mā'nī-a*), *better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine.* 1.

4. *triennium*, -ni, *n.* [*trēs*, three+ *annus*, year], three years. 1.

7. *dēmigrō*, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate,

remove. 2.

11. *sēdēs*, -is, *f.* [*sedeō*, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4. *simulō*, 1, *tr.* [*similis*, like], make like; pretend. 2.

13. *inscius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sciō*, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. 1.

15. *metus*, -ūs, *m.* [*metuō*, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; *metū territāre*, terrify; *hōc metū = metū huius rei*, from fear of this. 2.

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.

1. *in eādem causā*, "in the same condition"; i.e. of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebi.

2. *suprā*: in 1, 2.

6. *multitudinis*: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.

7. *trāns*? on the German side.

habuerant: before the arrival of the Germans.

9. *vī contendere*, "force a passage."

10. *inopiam nāvium*: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.

13. *equitātū*: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.

vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occu-
pātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat
certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedi-
ficiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis
20 aluērunt.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gal-
lōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs
plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit.
Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam in-
vitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē
audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vul-
gus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi
rēs cognōverint prōnūtiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiō-
nibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum
10 eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus
serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

16. remigrō, 1, *intr.* [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. 2.

1. infirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

2. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. 1.

4. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. 1.

8. prōnūtiō, 1, *tr.* [nūtiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with *sententia*, pronounce. 1.

auditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 1.

19. eōrum cōpiis, "on their supplies"; those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 5. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.

3. nihil . . . committendum, "that no confidence should be placed in them."

4. cōsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

10. paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, —, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as *pers. verb.*, repent (App. 109). 1.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2.

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. 2.

11. serviō, 4, *intr.* [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to, pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. 1.

figō, fingere, finxi, fictum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

utī: with cōgant, quarant, circumsistat, and cōgat.

8. quāsque = et quōs.

8. rēbus, "stories."

9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est, lit. "of which it must repent them"; App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, b: B. 209, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457.

11. plērique . . . respondeant, "give answers shaped to their wishes"; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset; ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nūllis civitatibus ad Germānōs, invitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: omnia quae postulās-
sent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque impe-
rātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat.

2. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3

3. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *

4. invitō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

9. dissimulō, 1, *tr.* [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. 1.

10. permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.* [mulceō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. 1.

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

2. ad exercitum: where? was it? See III, 29, 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. ea facta (*esse*), "that/those things had happened"; explained by the following clauses.

5. ab Rhēnō discēderent: i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulāssent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. fore parāta, lit. "would be in a prepared condition." This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, *parātum iri*. The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in *invitatōs*.

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them

had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map facing p. 254). The main body remained among the Menapii, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. quī refers only to *Condrūsōrum*.

10. permulsis et cōfirmātis: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitātū: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. cōstituit, "announced his decision." He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. dēlēctis, "having levied."

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.

Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs
vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs
5 populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī laces-
santur, quā armīs contendat, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō
sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere
neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere: vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs
domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse
10 amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs
armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī
quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in
terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus
fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiā esse posse, sī in
Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn
potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs
5 quī darī tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed
licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sint
lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxi-
lium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

8. ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*
[iactō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive
out, expel; cast up; sē ēicere, rush out,
sally. 2.

9. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful,

3. ā quibus: the Germans.

4. haec, "as follows." The haughty
tone of the speech recalls the speeches
of Dīvico, I, 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.

priōrēs, "first"; i.e. they were not
the aggressors.

5. recūsāre quīn, "refuse to"; App.
228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B.
502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

7. quicumque = omnibus (dative
with resistere) quī.

8. haec tamen dicere, "this, how-
ever, they would say."

10. attribuant: the subjunctive rep-
resents an imperative of the direct
form.

11. ūnīs, "alone."

serviceable. 1.

11. possidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -ses-
sum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. 1.

3. tueor, tuērī, tātus sum, *tr.*,
watch, guard, protect. 1.

12. reliquum nēminem, "no one
else."

13. quem possint: a clause of char-
acteristic.

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic
land, but offers to let them settle
among the Ubiī.

1. quae vīsum est, "what seemed
best." quae is the object of respondēre,
to be supplied from respondit.

exitus, "the conclusion."

3. vērū, "right," "just."

quī: supply eōs as the antecedent.

7. Suēbōrum iniūriīs, "the wrongs
done them by the Suebi."

8. hoc: i.e. that they allow the Usip-
etes and the Tencteri to settle among

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlibērātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castrā movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique 5 causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs expectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

3. **propius**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of prope*, near], nearer. *

5. **frūmentor**, 1, *intr.* [frūmentum, grain], get grain, forage. 4.

6. **Ambivaritī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivaritī (ām'bi-vār'i-tī). 1.

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. *

7. **interpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place be-

tween, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge. 4.

1. **prōfluō**, -fluere, -fluxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1.

Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vōs'ē-gūs), better, the Vosges Mountains. 1.

3. **Vacalus**, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'a-lūs) river, now the Waal. 1.

Batāvi, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vī). 1.

them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubii were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubii, Usipetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. **post diem tertium**, "on the third day"; i.e. the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

3. **propius sē**: App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. **diēbus**: ablative of degree of difference.

6. **trāns**: to the west.

expectārī equitēs: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar's, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is quite possible that the envoys were honest in asking time to

consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar's proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.

1. **ex monte Vosegō**: more correctly from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. **parte quādam**, etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.

3. **inde**: from the confluence.

6 Lepontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōibus
10 incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressi magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs
5 quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia

5. Lepontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Oh), the Lepontii (lē-pōn'shyi). 1.

6. Mediomatrici, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'dī-ō-māt'ri-sī). 1.

Triboci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trīb'ō-sī). 2.

7. citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* citō, put in motion], swift. 1.

8. diffuō, -fluere, -flūxi, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

10. piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. 1.

ōvum, -i, *n.*, egg. 1.

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. 1.

5. longō spatiō, "in a long course."

Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.

8. insulis effectis, "making islands."

10. sunt quī, "there are some who," is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.

Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubiī. Caesar grants a short truce.

2. ut erat cōstitūtum: translate after *ad* . . . *revertuntur*. See 9, 2.

5. antecessissent: implied indirect

discourse.

6. quōrum sī, "and if their."

7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.

8. eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, "that they would accept the terms"; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubiī.

9. trīduī spatiū: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubiī were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubiī, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.

daret: for the imperative of the direct form.

Caesar eodem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut tridui morā inter- 10
positā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē
nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prō-
cessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī
convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad
praefectōs, quī cum omni equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī 15
nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur,
sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt,
quōrum erat quīnque milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius
octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā
ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris,
quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is 5
diēs indūtiis erat ab hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs
perturbāvērunt; rūsus hīs resistentibus cōsuētūdine suā ad
pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossis equis complūribusque nostris dē-

10. *illō*, *adv.* [*old dat. of ille*],
thither, to that place, there (= thither). 1.

12. *aquātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water],
getting water. 1.

13. *frequēns*, -entis, *adj.*, in great
numbers, in crowds. 2.

14. *postulātum*, -i, *n.* [*postulō*, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

10. *eodem illō pertinēre*, "tended
to that same object." See 9, 6, and
note. It is quite likely that Caesar was
mistaken. At any rate their request
for time to consult the Ubii was
perfectly natural, for they could not
know whether the Ubii would respect
Caesar's command (8, 8).

13. *hūc*: i.e. to the camping ground.

14. *convenirent*: see *daret*, l. 9. note.

15. *quī nūntiārent*, "men to give
orders."

17. *sustinērent*: i.e. they were
simply to defend themselves.

accessisset: implied indirect dis-
course for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry
treacherously attack and rout Cae-

17. *quoad*, *adv.* [*quō*, whither+*ad*,
to], to where; as long as, as far as; till,
until. 2.

3. *octingenti*, -ae, -a, *card. num.*
adj. [*octō*, eight], eight hundred. 1.

6. *indūtia*, -arum, *f.*, truce. 2.

8. *suffodiō*, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus,
tr. [*sub+fodiō*, dig], dig under; stab
underneath. 1.

sar's cavalry.

1. *ubi primum*, "as soon as."

3. *equitēs*: why not the ablative after
the comparative *amplius*? App. 139, b.
For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5,000,
compare 2, 11.

quī ierant: cf. 9, 5.

6. *impetū factō*: this attack cannot
have been authorized by the German
leaders. They certainly wanted a truce,
whatever their motives may have been,
and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was
not important enough to tempt them to
break it. Either the German cavalry
had failed to receive orders, or it could
not resist the delight of attacking a
despised foe.

7. *cōsuētūdine*: cf. 2, 7.

iectis reliquos in fugam coniecērunt atque ita perterritos
 10 ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum
 agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris
 interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus,
 Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitate
 suā rēgnū obtinuerat amicus ā senātū nostrō appellātus.
 15 Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum
 ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit
 fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep-
 tis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat,
 procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque
 20 interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs au-
 diendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī
 per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent;
 expectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque
 5 reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gal-
 lōrum infirmitate quantum iam apud eōs hostēs unō proeliō
 auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia
 capienda nihil spatī dandum existimābat. Hīs cōstitutīs
 rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē

12. septuāgintā (LXX), card. num.
adj., indecl. [**septem**, seven], seventy.
 1.

13. Pisō, -ōnis, m., Piso (pī'sō), an
Aquitanian. 1.

5. dēmentia, -ae, f. [**mēns**, mind],
 madness, folly. 1.

9. quaestor, -ōris, m. [**quaerō**,
 seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a
 class of officers in charge of the public
 revenues or the finances of the army. 3.

commūnicō, 1, tr. [**commūnis**, com-
 mon], make common, communicate,
 impart, share. 1.

9. ita . . . ēgērunt, "drove them
 back in such a panic."

10. prius quam vēnissent: the sub-
 junctive is probably due to attraction,
 but may be explained by App. 236, b.

13. genere: case? App. 135: G.-L.
 395: A. 403, a: B. 215: H.-B. 413: H. 469, 2.

15. interclūsō: translate by a rela-
 tive clause.

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on venge-
 ance and detains the German leaders,

who have come to apologize.

1. neque iam, "no longer."

4. expectāre: subject of *esse*.
dum augērentur: App. 235, b.

5. summae . . . esse, "was (an act)
 of the utmost folly."

6. quantum auctōritātis, "what
 prestige."

9. quaestōre: see Int. 39.

nē . . . praetermitteret, "not to let
 any opportunity for battle go by."

quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, 10
 quod postridiē eius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne
 ūsi Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque
 nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbā-
 tur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et
 ipsī petissent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid 15
 possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar
 oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit, ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs
 ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse
 existimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Acīē triplici institūtā et celeriter VIII milium itinere
 cōfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur
 Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī,

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. 1

11. māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early. 1.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dis-

honesty. 2.

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. 1.

11. quod, "(namely) that."

13. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

14. suī pūrgandī causā, "to excuse themselves." Construction? App. 291, a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

contrā atque, "contrary to what."

15. ut . . . impetrārent, "to obtain whatever [lit. "if anything"] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him."

16. quōs oblātōs (*esse*), "that they had come into his power."

17. retinēri: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as

follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.

1. acīē . . . institūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. prius quam possent: App. 236, b.

et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsili
 5 habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpi-
 āsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā
 salutem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et
 concursū significārētur, milites nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā
 incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma
 10 capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter
 carrōs impedimentaue proelium commisērunt; at reliquā
 multitudō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis
 domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere
 coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre auditō cum suōs inter-
 fici vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex
 castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī per-
 vēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā magnō numerō interfectō
 5 reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitū-

6. *-ne, interrog. enclitic; in direct ques-
 tions, simply sign of a question (App. 213,
 a); in indirect questions, whether; -ne
 . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne,
 whether . . . or. 2.*

*adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus,
 turned against], opposite to, against.
 1.*

*an, conj., used to introduce the second
 member of alternative questions, or, or
 rather. **

9. *irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
 tum, tr. [in+rumpō, break], break in-*

*to, rush into; force a way into, storm.
 1.*

13. *passim, adv., in all directions.
 1.*

2. *abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.
 [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or
 down; hurl. 2.*

3. *cōfluēns, -entis, f. [cōfluō,
 flow together], a flowing together, con-
 fluence. 1.*

5. *praecipitō, 1, tr. [praeceps, head-
 long], throw or hurl headlong, precipi-
 tate. 1.*

4. *et . . . et, "both . . . and."
 suōrum: i.e. their leaders, who had
 been detained by Caesar.*

5. *perturbantur -ne praestāret,
 "were in great confusion, (not know-
 ing) whether it was better." On the
 kind of question see App. 214; 264, c.*

9. *quī: sc. ū as antecedent.*

14. *cōsectandōs: the beginning of
 the next chapter shows that the object
 was massacre, not the taking of prison-
 ers.*

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed
 and slaughtered.

3. *Rhēnī: i.e. the Vacalus; see parte
 quādam, 10, 2, note.*

4. *reliquā, "further."*

5. *reliquī perierunt: some must
 have escaped. At any rate in later
 years there were Usipetes and Tencteri
 living east of the Rhine, not far from
 this battlefield. But they may be ac-
 counted for by the escape of the cav-
 alry.*

line, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcīt. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, 10 quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ūt in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum 5 Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum quam suprā commemorāvi prae-dandī frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs 10

6. pereō, -īre, -lī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. 2.

1. Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. 1.

6. oppressī, "overwhelmed."
ad ūnum, "to a man."

7. ex, "after," "relieved of."

9. discēdendī . . . fēcīt: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. libertātem, "permission" to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V, 55) that the thing had been tried twice, by Ariovistus and by the Tenc-teri; they would tempt fortune no more.

2. iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with fūnera, appropriate. 4.

10. Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). 4.

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.

2. iūstissima, "most valid," "strongest."

3. quod . . . voluit: in apposition with illa.

4. suis . . . rēbus, "for their own possessions too." The possessive usually follows its noun; why does it here precede?

cum intellegerent, "(as they would) when they should see"; implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. accessit etiam quod, lit. "there was added also the fact that," = "moreover," "and besides."

7. suprā: see 9, 5.

cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, responderunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam
 15 esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae prohibē-
 20 rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amicitīā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse
 25 possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum

13. finīō, 4, *tr.* [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. 1.

14. cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānsrhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. 1.

12. (*ut*) dēderent: object of *postulārent*.

13. sē refers to the subject of *existimāret*, not to the speaker; so *suī*, l. 14.

14. cūr postulāret: mode? App. 268, III; 210, a.

suī . . . Rhēnum, "that anything across the Rhine belong to (lit. "be of") his authority or control."

17. obsidēs dederant: see II, 35, 5, note.

ōrābant, "kept begging." The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see 8, 7.

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. 2.

20. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. *

22. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.* Ariovistus (ā'ri-ō-vīs'tūs), a king of the Germans.

*

19. occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae, "affairs of state."

20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as *ferret*, l. 18.

21. reliquī temporis, "for the future."

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in *ōrābant*.

Chap. 17. Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.

esse arbitrābatur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbatur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque 5 flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen 10 dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē ut secundum nātūram

5. **rapiditās, -tātis, f.** [**rapidus**, swift], **swiftness. 1.**

8. **tignum, -i, n.,** log, timber, beam, pile. 2.

sēsquipedālis, -e, adj. [sēsqui, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.

10. **immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.** [in + mittē, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; **trabibus immissis**, beams being let in. 2.

11. **dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.**

[**figō, fix**], **fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. 1.**

fistūca, -ae, f., pile-driver. 1.

sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake. 2.

dērēctē, adv. [**dērēctus**, straight], straight. 1.

12. **perpendiculum, -i, n.,** plummet, plumb line. 1.

prōnē, adv. [**prōnus**, inclined], sloping downwards. 1.

fastigātē, adv. [**fastigātus**, sloping], sloping. 1.

3. **neque suae . . . statuēbat**, "he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc." *dignitatis* is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. **summa prōpōnēbatur**, "presented itself as very great."

5. **lātitudinem**: the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.

6. **id contendendum**, "that he ought to make the effort."

8. **bīna**, "two." The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, *a, a*.

dīmēnsa ad, "measured according to"; i.e. they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river

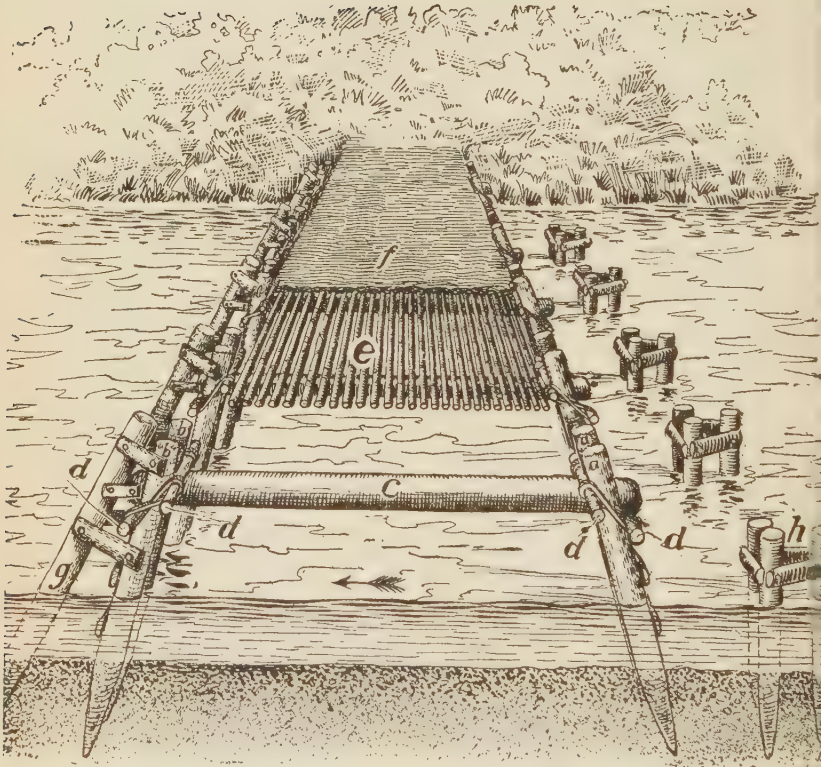
where they were driven into its bed.

9. **intervāllō . . . iungēbat**, "he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet [between them]." See plan and the pile-driver p. 273. *Intervāllō* is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. **haec . . . dēfixerat**, "when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there." They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile-driver (p. 273) stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. *dēfixerat*: mode? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

11. **nōn . . . perpendiculum**, "not vertically, like a pile"; i.e. as piles are usually driven.

12. **ut . . . prōcumberent**: i.e. sloping down-stream.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE

a, a, tigna bina, l. 8.

b, b, iis contraria duo (tigna), l. 13.

c, bipedālis trabs, l. 16.

d, d, d, d, fibulae, l. 17.

e, dērecta materia, l. 21.

f, longurii crātēque, l. 22.

g, sublica obliquē ācta, l. 23.

h, aliae (sublicae) suprā pontem, l. 25.

flūminis prōcumberent, iis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pēdum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. 15 Haec utraque, insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnetūra distābat, binīs utrimque fibulīs ab

14. quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num.* *adj.* [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. 1.

16. insuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 1.

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1.

17. iūnctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. 1.

distō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. 1.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of

13. iis . . . statuēbat: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet down-stream (ab inferiōre parte), but sloping against the current. See plan, b, b.

duo: we should expect bīna, as in i. 8.

14. quadrāgēnum: form? App. 16, e: G.-L. 33, 4: A. 49, d: B. 25, 6: H.-B. 71, 4: H. 84, 3.

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. haecutraque, "these two pairs," is the subject of *distinēbantur*.

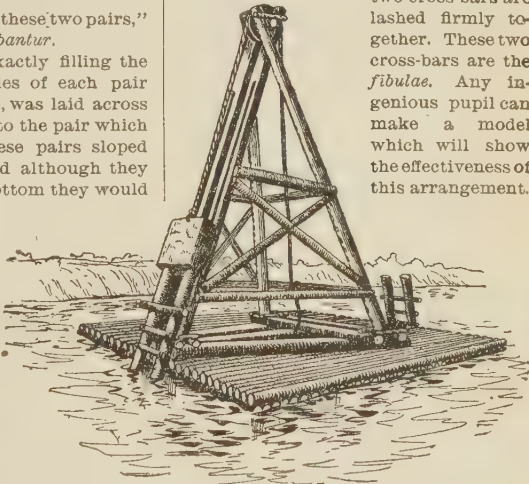
A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (*distinēbantur*) by a pair of fastenings (*fibulae*) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. "as much as the joining of the

timbers stood apart." *quantum* is an accusative of extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. fibulīs: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (d, d) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot cross-beam rests on a cross-bar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another cross-bar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the

two cross-bars are lashed firmly together. These two cross-bars are the *fibulae*. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.



PILE-DRIVER

extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-
 20 riam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea
 rērum nātūra ut quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset hōc artius
 illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēban-
 tur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius
 sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur,
 25 quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūctae vim
 flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spa-
 tiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā

two], on each side, on both sides. 2.

fibula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; brace, fasten-
 ing. 1.

18. *disclūdō*, -clūdere, -clūsī,
 -clūsum, *tr.* [*claudō*, shut], shut off,
 hold or keep apart, separate. 1.

20. *aqua*, -ae, *f.*, water. 2.
artē, *adv.* [*artus*, close], closely, firm-
 ly. 1.

21. *illigō*, 1, *tr.* [*ligō*, bind], attach,
 hold or bind together. 1.

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dērigō*, put
 in line], straight. 1.

iniiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*
 [*iaciō*, hurl. App. 7], throw into or up-
 on; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

contexō, -texere, -texui, -textum,
tr. [*texō*, weave], weave or bind to-
 gether, connect. 1.

22. *crātēs*, -is, *f.*, wicker-work;
fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling*
trenches, etc.). 1.

cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī,
 -strātum, *tr.* [*sternō*, strew], strew
 over, cover over. 2.

sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; *nihilō*
sētius, none the less, nevertheless, like-
 wise. 2.

23. *obliquē*, *adv.* [*obliquus*, slant-
 ing], obliquely, slantwise. 1.

26. *truncus*, -ī, *m.*, trunk of trees.
 1.

18. *quibus* refers to *fibulis*. It is in
 the ablative absolute with *disclūsīs* and
revinctīs.

disclūsīs: by the cross-beam and the
 piles.

in . . . *revinctīs*, "bound together
 in the opposite direction"; i.e. opposite
 to the direction of their separation.

19. *ea rērum nātūra*, "such was the
 nature of the structure."

20. *incitāvisset* is subjunctive by
 attraction.

hōc . . . tenērentur, "the more firm-
 ly the parts of the structure were bound
 together."

21. *haec* refers to the part of the
 structure already described, for which
 Caesar has no name. In modern engi-
 neering it is called a trestle-bent. There
 were probably between fifty and sixty

such trestle-bents. They were connect-
 ed by timbers laid from one cross-beam
 to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (*dē-
 rēctā māteriā*). Plan, e.

22. *nihilō sētius*: i.e. although the
 bridge was already very strong.

23. *et* is correlative with *et* in l. 25.

obliquē: i.e. they were driven in with
 a greater slant than the double piles
 had. See plan, g.

24. *quae prō ariete subiectae ex-
 ciperent*, "which, set below as a but-
 tress, were to withstand, etc."

25. *aliae*: sc. *sublicae agēbantur*.
 There is nothing in the text to show the
 number of these piles, but the plan (h)
 suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of measure of differ-
 ence with *suprā*.

essent ā barbaris missae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter 5 respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambri ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iis quōs ex Tēncteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ā Suēbis premerentur, haec ab iis cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explorātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō 5 habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse uti dē oppidīs dēmi-grārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās

9. exportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out or away. 1.

10. sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. 1.

2. succidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.* [sub+caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2.

4. posteāquam, *adv.* [postea, afterwards+quam, than], after. 4.

27. essent missae is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.

28. neu: why not *neque*?

Chap. 18. Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambri.

1. diēbus decem quibus, *lit.* "within ten days within which," = "within ten days after"; cf. *paucis diēbus quibus*, III, 23, 3.

coepta erat: why passive? App. 86, a.

5. quibus petentibus: translate by a clause, "and when they, etc."

7. hortantibus iis, *lit.* "those urging," = "on the advice of those."

8. quōs . . . habēbant; i.e. the cavalry. 16, 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, 15, 5, note.

Chap. 19. Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.

3. si premerentur: implied indirect discourse for the future.

6. nūntiōs dīmisisse uti, "had sent messengers (urging) that."

9. hunc . . . ferē, "that this place had been chosen almost in the middle."

10 Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō
 15 XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia
 5 intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābatur, sī modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē

10. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place; (*of an incident just mentioned*) then, at this time. 1.

14. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.

liberō, 1, *tr.* [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2.

16. ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [ūtilis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.

1. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. 1.

8. incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. 2.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

10. hīc, ibi: both words refer to the same place.

12. iīs rēbus: explained by the substantive volitive (*ut*) clauses which follow.

13. ut . . . iniceret: cf. note at the end of chap. 15.

16. prōfectum: notice the *ō*; from what present?

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. exiguā . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: "although only a small part . . . , (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early."

4. hostibus nostrīs: indirect object of *subministrāta*.

subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.

6. magnō . . . fore, "it would be of great advantage to him."

si adisset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae . . . incognita: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4, 19, we learn that a king of the Suessi-

praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā 10 Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs reperire poterat. 15

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiec- 5 tus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenire. Interim, cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō 10 populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum

5. trāiectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.

9. Britannus, -a, -um, adj., of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni

(brī-tān'i); *better*, the Britons. 1.

11. obtemperō, 1, intr. [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. 1.

ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, 13, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

9. illō: the adverb.

his ipsīs: the traders; dative with *nōtum*.

11. vocātis mercatōribus, "although he summoned, etc."

12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on *reperire*.

Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.

2. Volusēnum: either the subject of *esse* or the object of *praemittit*; supply *eum* in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, 5, 7;

he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. hūc: at a harbor among the Morini. This was probably Wissant, the point of France which is nearest to Britain: see map facing p. 254. The harbor is now filled with sand, but was in use during the middle ages.

10. quī polliceantur: a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative, *sē datūrōs esse*.

remittit et cum iis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsilium
 15 probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbatur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis dari
 20 potuit quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō
 5 Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat ne-

13. Commius, -mī, m., Commius (kōm'i-ūs), a chief of the Atrebates. 3.

15. fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1.

3. excūsō, 1. tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. 1.

4. imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

6. opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus, fit], opportunely, seasonably. 1

13. Atrebātibus superātis: in the battle with the Nervii, II, 23.

14. ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates.

15. sibi fidēlem: but Commius became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says *arbitrābatur*.

16. in hīs regiōnibus: i.e. in Belgium.

magnī: genitive of value.

18. fidem sequantur lit. "follow the protection (of)," = "surrender (to)."

sē: i.e. Caesar.

19. quantum . . . potuit, lit. "(as much) as of opportunity could be given to a man," = "as much as a man could."

20. quī . . . audēret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to

blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.

3. cōsiliō, "behavior"; see III, 28. **hominēs:** in apposition with the omitted subject; "being barbarians."

4. cōsuētūdinis: of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.

5. fēcissent, imperāset: implied indirect discourse for the perfect indicative and the future perfect, respectively.

que hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iudicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contractisque, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs, praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem

9. antepōnō, -pōnere. -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. 1.

12. onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; *with* nāvis, transport, freight ship. *

contrahō. -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.

16 quōminus, *conj.* [quō, so that+

minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

20. Sulpicius, -ci, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pish'yūs ruf'fūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 1.

1. nanciscor nanciscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without* nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.

9. hās . . . occupātiōnēs, "engaging in such trivial matters."

12. eoāctīs contractisque, "having levied and brought together."

13. quod . . . habēbat, *lit.* "whatever of ships of war he had besides," = "the ships which he had."

15. hūc accēdēbant, *lit.* "there were added to this number," = "he had in addition."

ā . . . octō, "eight miles[away]." If the chief harbor was Wissant, the smaller was Sangatte, east of Wissant.

16. tenēbantur quōminus possent, "were kept from being able": App. 228, c.

18. exercitum dūcendum dedit: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

Chap. 23-27. After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.

Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. tertiā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been

portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. A quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi
 5 circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum
 10 locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs expectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque militum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem
 15 mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventum et aestum ūnō

3. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr.* [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 1.

4. tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly; *comp.* tardius, too slowly. 1.

6. expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. 2.

7. angustē, *adv.* [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. 1.

8. litus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. 3.

drawn up on the sandy beach, and in embarking.

4. tardius, "too late." The wind changed and delayed them for three days.

hōra quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: probably at or near Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs.

7. haec, "such."

10. dum convenīrent: mode? App. 235, b.

ad hōram nōnam: somewhere near 3 P.M.

11. in ancorīs, "at anchor."

9. nēquāquam, *adv.* [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. 1.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. 1.

instabilis, -e, *adj.* [in-+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. 1.

15. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. 3.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. 2.

13. ut . . . postulārent, "as military science, and especially as seaman-ship requires"; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

14. ut quae habērent, *lit.* "as (things) which have," "since it has to do with"; a causal relative clause, App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e, n. 1: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523, b: H. 592, 1.

15. (ut) administrārentur: the object of monuit.

ad tempus, "on the instant."

16. ventum et aestum secundum: on other grounds it is supposed that Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it has been proved that at this time the tide was running southwest. Possibly

tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nō poterant, militibus autem ignōtis locīs, impeditīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditīs nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī nō eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsuērunt ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior,

2. *essedarius, -rī, m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 1.

6. *ignōtus, -a, -um, adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. 1.

9. *āridus, -a, -um, adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. 3.

10. *membrum, -ī, n.*, member of the body, limb. 1.

11. *insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj.* [suēs-cō, become accustomed + faciō, make] accustomed, trained. 1.

13. *alacritās, -tātis, f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

Caesar means that the tide was decreasing and the wind was so favorable that he could sail against the slackening current.

Chap. 24. The Britons try to prevent the landing.

2. *quō genere*, "a kind of troops which."

5. *nisi . . . pōterant*, "could be stationed only in deep water."

6. *militibus*: dative of the agent with *dēsiliendum*, etc., *erat*.

ignōtis . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

7. *oppressis*, "weighed down as they were"; in agreement with *militibus*.

8. *cōsistendum*, "keep their footing."

9. *cum illī*, "while the enemy."

12. *nōn ūtēbantur*, "did not display."

13. *quō* agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his warships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.

2. *inūsitiōr*, "less familiar" than that of the transports. The latter were

paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad
 5 latus apertum hostium cōstituī atque inde fundis, sagittis,
 tormentis hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō
 ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et
 inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac
 paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris mīlitibus
 cūctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae
 10 legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī feli-
 citer ēvenīret, 'Dēsilitē,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis
 aquilam hostibus prōdere; egō certē meum rei pūblīcae atque
 'imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset,
 sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum
 15 nostrī, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-
 versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum
 cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod
 neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa sub-

4. funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. 1.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. 1.

6. figūra, -ae, *f.* [fīgō, form], form, shape, figure. 1.

10. aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 3.

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1.

fēliciter, *adv.* [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. 1.

11. ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
 tum, *intr.* [veniō, come], turn out, re-
 sult. 1.

more like the trading vessels, with which
 the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expeditior, lit. "whose
 motion was freer for use," = "which
 were more easily managed."

4. latus apertum, "the right flank,"
 which was unprotected by shields.

9. quī, "the man who."

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate
 I, 6, facing p. 27.

13. praestiterō: note the force of

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb. tr.*, used
 only with direct quotations and following
 one or more words of the quotation. say. 1.

commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* [mīles, soldier],
 fellow soldier, comrade. 1.

12. certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], cer-
 tainly; at least, at all events. 1.

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [cf.
 oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my
 own. 1.

15. dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus,
 honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1.

2. firmiter, *adv.* [firmus, strong],
 firmly. 1

the tense. "(whatever the result shall
 be) I at least shall have done my duty."

15. inter sē, "one another."

16. ex proximīs nāvibus, "those
 who were in the nearest ships."

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the
 Britons are put to flight.

2. firmiter insistere, "get a firm
 footing."

signa subsequi: i.e. keep their for-
 mation by cohorts.

sequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscumque signis
 occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs
 vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex
 nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impedītōs adori-
 ēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumstībant, alii ab latere apertō in
 ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar,
 scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus
 complēri iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia
 submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus
 cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam de-
 dērunt, neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum
 tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad
 pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpē-
 runt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs
 datūrōs, quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs sēsē polliciti sunt. Ūnā
 cum hīs lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōn-
 strāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi ē
 nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta

4. aggregō, 1, *tr.* [ad+grex, flock],
unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach.
 1.

9. scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. 1.
 speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [specu-
 lator, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1.

3. alius . . . nāvi, "men from dif-
 ferent ships."

quibuscumque . . . aggregābat,
 "gathered about whatever standards
 they chanced upon"; as in the battle
 with the Nervii, II, 21, 13.

5. ubi cōspexerant: the pluper-
 fect instead of the usual perfect with
ubi, expressing repeated action, just as
 the following imperfects do.

7. plūrēs, "several" of the enemy.
 in ūniversōs, "upon the main body."

9. scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia:
 these boats could be rowed into shallow
 water.

11. simul = *simul atque*.

10. labōrō, 1, *intr.* [labor, toil], toil,
 work hard; be anxious, troubled, or per-
 plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed.
 3.

6. ōrātōr, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak],
 speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1.

13. neque, "but . . . not."
 longius, "very far."

14. capere, "reach." See note on
tardius, 23, 4.

hoc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry
 was an important part of every regular
 engagement.

Chap. 27. The Britons sue for peace.

3. datūrōs, factūrōs sēsē: the reg-
 ular construction after verbs of promis-
 ing; see note on *dare*, 21, 10.

4. suprà: see 21, 13.

6. cum, "although."

modō, "in the capacity of," "as."

dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōs-
 10 cerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continētem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā
 15 suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenīre et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex
 5 castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectione referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est

8. culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt.

1.

9. imprudentia, -ae, *f.* [imprūdēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 2.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [in-+(g)nōscēns, knowing; nōs-

cō], forgive, pardon. 3.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

16. commendō, 1, *tr.* [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. 1.

3. lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild, smooth. 1.

8. eius rei: the treatment of Com-mius.

9. ut ignōscerētur, "that they be pardoned." In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, d.

10. cum lēgātis missis petissent, "after they had sent hostages and begged"; see 21, 10.

14. arcessitam, "for whom they had sent."

15. in agrōs, "to their farms."

Chap. 28-31. A storm turns back Caesar's cavalry and wrecks his fleet. Although he partially repairs the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to attack him.

Chap. 28. The cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.

1. post . . . quam = diē quārtō postquam. When postquam is divided, post is usually an adverb, "afterwards . . . than." Here it is a preposition. The day was August 30th, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning.

2. suprā, see 22, 15 and 23, 4.

6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have come from the north or northeast. The ships that were farthest out at sea were driven back at once; the others got some shelter west of Dover, but as the storm proved too severe they preferred to return to Gaul rather than land on the hostile shore of Britain, miles from Caesar's camp.

propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis, cum flūctibus complērentur, neces-
sariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petierunt. 10

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs mari-
timōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuevit; nostrisque
id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in
āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad
ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nos- 5
trīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Com-
plūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancoris,
reliquisque armāmentis āmissis ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna,
id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta
est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, 10
et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod

10. *prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-
tum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry forward;
pass., be carried forward, sail. 1.*

1. *lūna, -ae, f., the moon. 2.*

5. *dēligō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or
tie down, fasten, moor. 2.*

6. *auxilior, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid],
give aid, help, assist, render assistance.
1*

7. *frangō frangere, frēgi, frāc-
tum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discour-
age. 2.*

9. *perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [perturbō,
disturb], disturbance, disorder, confu-
sion. 1.*

10. *reportō, 1, tr. [re-+portō,
carry], carry, carry or bring back, convey.
1.*

8. *occāsum*: for construction see
note on *propius sē*, 9, 3.

9. *cum complērentur*, "since they
'began to fill."

10. *adversā nocte*, "in the face of
the night."

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide
wreck Caesar's fleet.

1. *lūna plēna*: there was a full moon
on the night of August 30th. This is
what enables us to calculate the day of
Caesar's arrival in Britain.

2. *aestūs maximōs*: the "spring"
tide. The average rise and fall of the
tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This
tide, helped by the wind, rose much
higher.

nostrīs . . . incognitum: the Ro-
mans were best acquainted with the

Mediterranean, where the tides rise only
a few inches. Yet they had had some
experience with the tides in the war with
the Veneti.

4. *quae . . . dēligatae*, "which were
riding at anchor." The transports were
heavier than the war-ships and Caesar
had not thought it worth the effort to
beach them.

6. *administrandī*, "of managing
them."

9. *id quod* or *quae res* is commonly
used instead of *quod* when the antece-
dent is a clause.

10. *quibus possent*: a clause of
characteristic.

11. *omnia quae erant ūsuī*, "all the
things which were needed"; a determin-
ing clause. App. 231.

omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēmīnem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam transitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūratiōne factā paulatim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspiciābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidie in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubē-

8. reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. 1.

5. affligō, -fligere, -fixi, -flictum, *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage,

injure. 1.

6. aes, aeris, *n.* copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; aes aliēnum, another's money, debt. 1.

12. hiemārī oportēre, "that they must pass the winter."

13. in hiemem, "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

1. prīncipēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 6.

5. hōc, "on this account."

etiam, "still."

6. optimum: predicate adjective with esse, the subject being prohibēre and prōducere.

factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.

7. factā: translate as an infinitive, coördinate with prohibēre.

rem, "operations."

8. his superātīs, "if these (troops) were overpowered."

Chap. 31. Caesar repairs his fleet.

2. ex . . . eō, "from the disaster to his ships and from the fact."

3. quod accidit, "which really did happen."

4. cāsūs, "emergencies."

5. quāe nāvēs, eārum, "of those ships which."

6. aere: iron was not much used in the construction of ships, because it rusts.

bat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvīgārī commodē posset effēcit.

10

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectis reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

5. pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. 1.

10. cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. 1.

14. dēmētō, -metere, -messuī, -messum, *tr.* [metō, reap], mow, reap. 1.

15. dēlitescō, -litescere, -lituī,

—, *intr.* [latescō, *incept. of* lateō, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. 1.

16. metō, metere, messuī, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. 1.

18. essedum, -ī *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 2.

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.

9. reliquīs . . . effēcit, *lit.* "made that it could be sailed by the rest," = "made the others fit to sail in."

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.

1. frūmentātum: App. 295.

3. interpositā, "having arisen."

in agrīs remanēret: ostensibly en-

gaged in labor on the farms near the camp.

6. quam . . . ferret, "than usual."

7. id quod erat, "what was really the case"; explained by the clause *aliquid . . . consilī*, "that some new plan had been entered upon."

8. cohortēs: probably four, one at each gate.

10. succēdere, "to take their places." armārī, "to arm themselves."

14. ūna, "only one."

17. incertīs ordinibus: owing to

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et
 5 pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, sī illi ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in
 10 dēclivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte pugnae tem-

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

2. perequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. 1.

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. 1.

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalymen. 1.

insinuō, 1, *tr.* [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1.

5. auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer. 1.

6. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. 2.

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive, retreat; refuge, shelter. 1.

8. stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. 1.

11. moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. 1.

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. 1.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). 1.
 percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run along or over. 1.

12. citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. 1.

1. novitās, -tātis, *f.* [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. 1.

the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war-chariots in battle.

2. equōrum, "caused by the horses."

4. equitum turmās: the cavalry of the enemy, whom they thus attacked. Caesar had no cavalry this year, but this is a general description; in the next expedition his cavalry were thus defeated.

6. illī: the warriors, who had alighted.

7. expeditum receptum, "a ready retreat."

8. praestant, "display."

10. ac, "and even."

incitātōs, "when at full speed."

sustinēre, "to check"; depending on cōnsuērint.

brevī, "quickly."

11. per, "along."

iugō: the crossbar attached to the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks.

Chap. 34. Caesar rescues the imperiled legion, and the Britons march against his camp.

1. rēbus: ablative of means.

nostrīs: indirect object of tulit. perturbātis agrees with it.

novitāte, "because of the strangeness."

more opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendū hostem et ad committendū proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī 5 tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsē- 10 runt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērērunt. 15

35. Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius 5 nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et

8. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [*contineō*, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

11. praedicō, 1, tr. [*dicō*, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

5. aliēnum, lit. "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." *suō*, "his own," almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, "favorable."

6. dum haec geruntur, "in the meantime."

7. quī . . . reliquī: mentioned in 32, 3.

9. quae continērent: App. 230, *a*, examples.

12. praedae faciendae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans

12. praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder, spoil. 2.

14. peditātus, -ūs, m. [*pedes*, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. 1.

3. effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, tr. and intr. [*ex*+*fugiō*, flee], flee from or away, escape. 1.

had left their baggage in Gaul; **30, 5. suī liberandī**: see note on *suī purgandī*, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.

1. idem fore, ut, "that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that."

4. ante: in 21, 14 and 27, 4.

5. diūtius, "very long."

6. ac, "but"; for this translation see note on III, 19, 9.

7. tantō spatiō quantum . . . po-

vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem
5 subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā delātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī
5 sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe

3. duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. 1.

4. aequinoctium, -tī, n. [aequus, equal + nox, night], the equinox. 1.

9. infā, adv. [inferus, below], below; prep. with acc., below, smaller

than. 1.

2. trecentī, -ae, -a (CCC), card. num. adj. [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. 1.

5. orbis, -is, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the world. 1.

tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." spatiō is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 426, c.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.

2. hīs: dative of reference.

3. eōs . . . iussit: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.

4. propinquā diē: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.

hiemī . . . subiciendam, "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."

8. quōs reliquae, "as the rest." capere, "reach," "make." et, "but."

9. infā: to the south. They may have landed at Ambleteuse.

Chap. 37-38. The Morini revolt and are conquered.

Chap. 37. The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.

1. quibus ex nāvibus: i.e. the two transports.

2. in castra: at Wissant.

3. pācātōs: see 22, 1-11.

4. primō: the adverb.

ita, "so very," "very."

5. pōnere, "to lay down."

orbe: a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.

factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt. Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs 10 ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsīt. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titū- 6 rius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātis, frūmentis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitatēs 10 ex Britannia obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litteris Caesaris diērum viginti supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

3. siccitās, -tātis, *f.* [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. 1.

4. perfugium, -gī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1.

6. hominum: with *milia*.

Chap. 38. Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

3. siccitatēs: translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. "had not where they could retreat," = "had nowhere to retreat"; App. 230, c.

4. quō perfugiō erant ūsī, lit. "which refuge they had used," = "the

refuge [i.e. the swamps] which they had used." For the fact see III, 28, 8.

6. quī . . . dūxerant: see 22, 18.

9. in Belgis: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. diērum viginti supplicatiō: see note on II, 35, 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.

THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt* Helvētiī ubi eōs *tū cōstitueris* atque esse *volueris*; sīn bellō persequī *persevērābis*, *remi-nāscere* et veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum iī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* magnopere virtūtī *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere*; *nōs* ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut insidiīs *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī committere* ut *hīc* locus ubi *cōstitimus* ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut *memoriam prōdat*.

I, 14, 1-20. Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs quās *vōs commemorāvistis* memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō* quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī *accidērunt*; quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi cōsciens fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intellegēbat* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putābat*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivīscī *velit*, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *revāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *potest*? Quod *vestrā* victoriā tam insolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās *intulisse admirāminī*, eōdem *pertinent*. Cōsuēvērunt enim *dī immortālēs*, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbis mihi dabuntur*, utī ea quae *pollicēminī vōs* factūrōs *intellegam*, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis

sociisque *intulistis*, item si Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *vōbiscum* pācem *faciam*.

20-23. Ita *Helvētiī* ā maiōribus suis *īnstitūtī sunt* uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērīnt; *huius* rei *populus Rōmānus* *est testis*.

I, 17, 2-13. *Sunt* nōn *nullī* quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. *Hī* sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem *dēterrent* nē frūmentum cōferant quod *dēbent*: [these men say] “Praestat, si (Haedui) iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn *possunt*, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque *dubitāmus* quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduis libertātem sint ēreptūrī.” Ab īdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castris *geruntur* hostibus *ēnūntiantur*. *Hī* ā *mē* cōercērī nōn *possunt*; quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus *tibi* *ēnūntiāvī*, *intellegō* quantō id cum periculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*.

I, 18, 6-24. *Ipse est Dumnorīx*, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītatem grātiā, *cupīdus* rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēpta *habet*, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī *audet* nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit*; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet*; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nobilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit*, ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem ex mātrem et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs *collocāvit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātie atque honoris *est* restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *venit*; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam *habet* grātiā *dēspērat*.

I, 20, 2-12. *Sciō ista esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quid ei ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur.*

I, 30, 3-10. *Intellegimus, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetieris, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi reliquērunt, utī . . . habērent.*

I, 31, 5-8. *Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur quam utī ea quae volumus impetrēmus, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.*

8-56. *Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trāsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārent, trāductī sunt plūrēs. Nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērāt, omnem nobilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amīcitīā plūrimū ante in Galliā potuerant, coactī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . . imperiō essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs*

obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte *profūgī* et Rōmam ad sēnātum *vēnī* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrando neque obsidibus *tenēbar*. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Hæduīs victīs *accidit*, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus *cōnsēdit* tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtius Galliae, *occupāvit* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere *iubet*, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum *vēnērunt*, quibus locus ac sēdēs *parantur*. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus *pellentur* atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt*; neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* victūs cum illā *comparanda*. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vicit*, quod proelium factum *est* ad Magetobrigam, superbē et *crūdēliter imperat*, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs *poscit* et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit*, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntatem eius facta *est*. *Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius*; nōn *possunt* eius imperia diūtius sūstinērī. Nisi quid in *tē* populōque Rōmānō *erit* auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt*, ut domō . . . experiantur. Haec sī *ēnūntiāta* Ariovistō *erunt*, nōn *dubitō* quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum *sunt* gravissimum supplicium sūmat. *Tū* vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dētterrere *potes* nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā *potes* dēfendere.

I, 32, 8-15. Hōc *est* *miserior* et *gravior fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre *audent* absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātem, velut sī cōram *adsit*, *horrent*, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur*, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt*, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt*, omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

I, 34, 5-12. Sī quid *mihi* ā Caesare opus esset, *ego* ad eum *vēnissem*; sī quid ille *mē* *vult*, illum ad *mē* venīre *oportet*.

Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre *audeō* quās Caesar *possidet*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mirum *vidētur* quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī *sit*.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantō meō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiā *refert*, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus *gravētur* neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum *putet*, haec *sunt* quae ab eō *postulō*: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcat*; deinde, obsidēs quōs *habet* ab Haeduīs *reddat* Sēquanisque *permittat* ut quōs ipsī *habent* voluntāte eius reddere illīs *liceat*; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā *laccessat*, nēve hīs sociisque eōrum bellum *īferat*. Sī ita *fēcerit*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque amīcitia *cum* eō *erit*; sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus *cēnsuit* utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

I, 36. Iūs est bellī ut quī *vīcerint* iīs quōs *vīcerint* quem ad modum *velint imperent*; item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre *cōnsuevit*. Sī ego populō Rōmānō nōn *praescribō* quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur*, nōn *oportet* mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri. *Haeduī mihi*, quoniam bellī fortūnam *temptāvērunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt*, *stipendiārīi sunt facti*. Magnam Caesar iniūriam *facit*, quī suō adventū vectīgālia *mihi* dēteriōra *facit*. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam*, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īferam*, sī in eō *manēbunt* quod *convēnit* stipendiumque quotannis *pendent*; sī id nōn *fēcerint*, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*. Quod *mihi* Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglētūrum*, *nēmō mēcum* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volet*, *congre-*

diātur: intellet quid invicti Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint.

I, 40, 3-47. Primum (*vōs incūsō*) quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō *dūcāminī vōbis* quaerendum aut cōgitandum putātis. Ariovistus mē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetiit; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem *persuādētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereāminī?* aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* diligentīā *dēspērētis?* Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nobīs *accēperant sublevābant*. Ex quō iūdicārī *potest* quantum habeat in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā *timuistis*, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs *superāvistis*. Dēnique hī sunt *īdem* Germānī quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque *superāvērunt*, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn *potuērunt*. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum *commovet*, hī, sī *quaerent*, reperire possunt . . . vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus *fuit*, hāc nē ipse quidem *spērat* nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris *cōferunt faciunt* arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris *dēspērāre* aut praescribere *videantur*. Haec *mihi* sunt cūrae: frūmentum *Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant*, iamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere *ipsī* brevī tempore *iūdicābitis*. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī *diciminī*, nihil eā rē *commoveor*; sciō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiens nōn fuerit, aut male *rē*

gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, felicitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta*. Itaque quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuī *repraesentābō* et hāc nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam primum intellegere *possim* utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs *valeat*. Quod sī praetereā nēmō *sequētur*, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne *ibō*, dē quā nōn *dubitō*, *mihique ea praetōria cohors erit*.

I, 44. *Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquī; sēdēs habēō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capiō iūre bellī quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērunt*. Nōn ego Gallis, sed *Galli mihi bellum intulērunt*; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad mē oppugnandum *vēnērunt* ac contrā mē castra *habuerunt*; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō *pulsae ac superatae sunt*. Sī iterum experiri *volunt*, iterum *parātus sum* dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti *volunt*, inīquum est dē stipendiō *recūsare*, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus *pependērunt*. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī *mihī* ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse *oportet*, atque hāc spē *petiī*. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium *remittētur* et dēditiciī *subtrahentur*, non minus libenter *recūsābō* populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam *appetiī*. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcō*, id meī mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā *faciō*; eius rei testimoniū est quod nisi rogātus nōn *vēnī* et quod bellum nōn *intulī*, sed *dēfendī*. Ego prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus*. Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus *ēgressus est*. Quid tibi *rīs*? Cūr in *meās* possesiōnēs *venīs*? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa *vestra*. Ut *mihī* concēdī nōn *oporteat*, sī in *vestrōs* finēs impetum *faciam*, sic item vōs *estis inīquī*, quod in *meō* iūre *mē interpellātis*. Quod frātres ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs *dīcis*, nōn tam *barbarus* neque tam *imperītus sum* rerum ut nōn *sciam* neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis

auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī *mēcum* et cum Sēquanīs *habuērunt* auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. *Dēbeō* suspicārī simulatā *tē* amicitīā, quod exercitum in Galliā *habēs*, *meī* opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi *dēcēdēs* atque exercitum *dēdūcēs* ex hīs regiōnibus, *tē* nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste *habēbō*. Quod sī *tē interfēcero*, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum *faciam*; id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum *habeō*, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam *tuā* morte redimere *possum*. Quod sī *dēcesseris* et liberā possessiōnem Galliae *mihī trādideris*, magnō *tē* prae-miō *remūnerābō* et quaecumque bella gerī *volēs* sine ūllō *tuō* labōre et periculō *cōnficiam*.

I, 45, 2-11. Neque *mea* neque populī Rōmānī *cōnsuētūdō* patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs *dēseram*, neque ego iūdicō Galliam potius esse *tuam* quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī* sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus *ignōvit* neque in prōvinciam *redēgit* neque stipendium *imposuit*. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī *oportet*, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum *est* in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī *oportet*, *libera* *dēbet* esse *Gallia*, quam bellō victā suis lēgibus utī *voluit*.

II, 3, 4-14. *Nōs* *nostraque* omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus*. Neque (*nōs*) cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēnsimus*, neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus*, *parātique* *sumus* et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. *Reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs *sunt*, *Germānique* quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt* sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt*; *tantusque* est eōrum omnium *furor* ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nobiscum* *habent*, dēterrere *potuerīmus* quā cum hīs consentīrent.

II, 4, 2-28. *Plērīque* *Belgae* *sunt* *ortī* ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus *trāductī* propter locī fertilitātem ibi *cōnsēdērunt*, Gallōsque quī ea loca *incolēbant* *expulērunt*, *sōlique*

sunt quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā *ex rē fit* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritatem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmant. Dē numerō eōrum omnia (nōs) *habēmus* explorāta, proptereā quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognōvimus*. Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent*; hī *possunt* cōficere armāta milia centum; *polliciti sunt* ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi *postulant*. Suessiōnēs *nostrī sunt finitimī*; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs *possident*. Apud eōs *fuit* rēx *nostrā* etiam memoriā *Dīviciācus*, tōtius Galliae *potentissimus*, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtinuit*; nunc *est* rēx *Galba*; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiāque *summa* tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida *habent* numerō XII; *pollicentur* milia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem *Nerviī*, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs *habentur* longissimēque *absunt*; quīndecim milia *Atrebātēs*, *Ambiānī* decem milia, *Morinī* xxv milia, *Menapiī* vii milia, *Caleti* x milia, *Velocassēs* et *Viromandui* totidem, *Atuatuci* xix milia; *Condrūsī*, *Eburōnēs*, *Cae-rōsī*, *Caemānī*, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrāmur* ad xl milia.

II, 14, 2-13. *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia cīvitātis Haeduae *fuērunt*; *impulsi* ab suis principibus, quī *dīcēbant* Haeduōs ā tē in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt*. Quī eius consilī principēs *fuērunt*, quod *intelligēbant* quantam calamitatem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgērunt*. *Petunt* non solum *Bellovacī* sed etiam prō hīs *Haeduī* ut tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in cōs *ūtāris*. Quod sī *fēceris*, Haeduōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis*; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, *sī* qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōsuērunt*.

II, 15, 8-15. *Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiuntur vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; incerpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcērint; cōfirmant sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.*

II, 16, 2-9 *Sabis flūmen ā castrīs tuīs nōn amplius milia passuum x abest; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervī cōnsēdērunt adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectant ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis; expectantur etiam ab iīs Atuatu-cōrum cōpiae atque sunt in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidēbantur in eum locum cōniēcērunt quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.*

II, 31, 3-13. *Nōn existimāmus Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possint. Nōs nostraque omnia eōrum potestātī permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: sī forte prō tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam nōs ab aliīs audīmus, statueris nōs esse cōservandōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē finitimī sunt inimicī ac nostrae virtūtī invident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possumus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in eum cāsum dēducēmur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōsuēvimus.*

II, 32, 1-6. *Magis cōsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōservābō, sī priusquam mūrū ariēs attigerit vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiō nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nervīs fecī faciam finitimisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferant.*



APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of *Belium Helveticum* (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
 - a. Before another vowel, or *h*; as *eō*, *nihil*.
 - b. Before *nd* and *nt*; as *laudandus*, *laudant*.
 - c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than *s*; as *laudem*, *laudat*.
2. A vowel is long:
 - a. Before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*; as *īnferō*, *cōnsul*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctum*.
 - b. When it results from contraction; as *īssēt*, for *iisset*.
3. A vowel is usually long:
 - a. In monosyllables not ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, *m*, or *t*; as *mē*, *hīc*, but *ab*, *ad*.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| a = <i>a</i> in <i>Cuba</i> | ā = <i>ah!</i> |
| e = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i> | ē = <i>e</i> in <i>they</i> |
| i = <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i> | ī = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> |
| o = <i>o</i> in <i>for</i> (not as in <i>got</i>) | ō = <i>oh!</i> |
| u = <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> | ū = <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> |
| y = French <i>u</i> or German <i>ü</i> ; it rarely occurs. | |

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

- ae** = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*
au = *ow* in *how*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-ez*. The diphthong appears in **cui**, **huic**, **cuius**, and **huius**.

a. When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in **maior**, **eius**, **Troia**, and **cuius**, though **i** was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior**, **eiius**, **Troiia**, and **cuiius**. The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

ai = *ai* in *aisle*

ei = *ey* in *they*

oi = *oi* in *oil*

ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can*, *go*

i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*

n before **c**, **g**, **q**, and **x** = *ng* in *sing*

r pronounced distinctly

s as in *this*, never as in *these*

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*

v = *w*

x = *ks*

ch, **ph**, **th** = *c*, *p*, *t*

bs, **bt** = *ps*, *pt*

qu = *qu* in *quart*

ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*

su = *sw* in *suādeō*, *suāvis*, *suēscō*, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō**, **annus**, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk*, *pen-knife*. We sound only one consonant in *ditty*, *penny*.

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō**, the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as **dēiciō**, pronounced as if **dēiiciō**; **abiciō**, as if **abiiciō**.

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (*b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph, or th*, followed by *l* or *r*) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as *pa-tris*, *a-grī*. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as *pat-ris*, *ag-rī*.

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, *magis-trī*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of *laudō*, and the first syllable of *eius* (5, a).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants *x* and *z*. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: *est* is *est*, not *ēst*. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c) lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (6, a), *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tēs*, *nos-ter*.

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then *pat-ris*, *ag-rī* (8, b). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as *om'nis*.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as *divi' sꝫ*, *appel' lō*, *in' colunt*.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as *Gallia'que*.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative

ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

| DECLENSION | FINAL LETTER OF STEM | ENDING OF GEN. SING. |
|------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| I. | ā | -ae |
| II. | o | -i |
| III. | { consonant i | -is |
| IV. | u | -ūs |
| V. | e | -ēi or -ei |

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in **-ā**; the nominative in **-a**. The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, f., tongue, language

| | SINGULAR | ENDINGS |
|-------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Nominative</i> | lingua | a language (as subject) -a |
| <i>Genitive</i> | linguae | of a language, language's -ae |
| <i>Dative</i> | linguae | to or for a language -ae |
| <i>Accusative</i> | linguam | a language (as object) -am |
| <i>Vocative</i> | lingua | O (or thou) language -a |
| <i>Ablative</i> | linguā by, from, in, or with a language | -ā |

PLURAL

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|-------|
| <i>Nominative</i> | linguae | languages (<i>as subject</i>) | -ae |
| <i>Genitive</i> | linguārum | of languages, languages' | -ārum |
| <i>Dative</i> | linguīs | to or for languages | -īs |
| <i>Accusative</i> | linguās | languages (<i>as object</i>) | -ās |
| <i>Vocative</i> | linguae | O (<i>or ye</i>) languages | -ae |
| <i>Ablative</i> | linguīs | by, from, in, or with languages | -īs |

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as *Belgae*, *m.*, *the Belgae*; *Matrona*, *m.*, *the (river) Marne*.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as *Samarobrivae*, *at Samarobriva*.

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>animus, m.,</i> <i>mind</i> | <i>puer, m.,</i> <i>boy</i> | <i>ager, m.,</i> <i>field</i> | <i>vir, m.,</i> <i>man</i> | <i>bellum, n.,</i> <i>war</i> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|

SINGULAR

| | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>N. animus</i> | <i>puer</i> | <i>ager</i> | <i>vir</i> | <i>bellum</i> |
| <i>G. animī</i> | <i>puerī</i> | <i>agrī</i> | <i>virī</i> | <i>bellī</i> |
| <i>D. animō</i> | <i>puerō</i> | <i>agrō</i> | <i>virō</i> | <i>bellō</i> |
| <i>A. animum</i> | <i>puerum</i> | <i>agrum</i> | <i>virum</i> | <i>bellum</i> |
| <i>V. anime</i> | <i>puer</i> | <i>ager</i> | <i>vir</i> | <i>bellum</i> |
| <i>A. animō</i> | <i>puerō</i> | <i>agrō</i> | <i>virō</i> | <i>bellō</i> |

PLURAL

| | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>N. animī</i> | <i>puerī</i> | <i>agrī</i> | <i>virī</i> | <i>bella</i> |
| <i>G. animōrum</i> | <i>puerōrum</i> | <i>agrōrum</i> | <i>virōrum</i> | <i>bellōrum</i> |
| <i>D. animīs</i> | <i>puerīs</i> | <i>agrīs</i> | <i>virīs</i> | <i>bellīs</i> |
| <i>A. animōs</i> | <i>puerōs</i> | <i>agrōs</i> | <i>virōs</i> | <i>bella</i> |
| <i>V. animī</i> | <i>puerī</i> | <i>agrī</i> | <i>virī</i> | <i>bella</i> |
| <i>A. animīs</i> | <i>puerīs</i> | <i>agrīs</i> | <i>virīs</i> | <i>bellīs</i> |

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>filius, m.,</i> <i>son</i> | <i>Gāius, m.,</i> <i>Gaius</i> | <i>Bōī, m.,</i> <i>the Boīī</i> | <i>deus, m.,</i> <i>god</i> |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

SING.

SING.

PLUR.

SING.

PLUR.

| | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|------------------|
| <i>N. filius</i> | <i>Gāius</i> | <i>Bōī</i> | <i>deus</i> | <i>dīī, dī</i> |
| <i>G. filiī</i> | <i>Gāī</i> | <i>Bōīōrum</i> | <i>deī</i> | <i>deōrum</i> |
| <i>D. filiō</i> | <i>Gāiō</i> | <i>Bōīs</i> | <i>deō</i> | <i>dīīs, dīs</i> |
| <i>A. filium</i> | <i>Gāium</i> | <i>Bōiōs</i> | <i>deum</i> | <i>deōs</i> |
| <i>V. filiī</i> | <i>Gāī</i> | <i>Bōī</i> | <i>deus</i> | <i>dīī, dī</i> |
| <i>A. filiō</i> | <i>Gāiō</i> | <i>Bōīs</i> | <i>deō</i> | <i>dīīs, dīs</i> |

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). *Vulgus*, *crowd*, is usually neuter. *Locus*, *M., place*, has plural *loca*, *N., places*.

b. The locative singular ends in *-ī*; as *Agedincī*, *at Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in *-ius* regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in *-ī*, instead of *-īi* and *-ie*, and nouns in *-ium* form the genitive in *-ī*. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; *cōn-si'li*, *of a plan*; *ini'ti*, *of a beginning*.

d. Proper names ending in *-āius*, *-ēius*, and *-ōius* are declined like *Gāius* and *Bōi*.

e. A few words have *-um* instead of *-ōrum* in the genitive plural; *socium* (or *sociōrum*), *of allies*.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in *-i*. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, *-s* or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, *b* or *p*. The nominative ending is *-s*.

princeps, *M., chief*
Stem *prīncip-*

| SING. | PLUR. |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>N. princeps</i> | <i>prīncipēs</i> |
| <i>G. principis</i> | <i>prīncipum</i> |
| <i>D. principī</i> | <i>prīncipibus</i> |
| <i>A. principem</i> | <i>prīncipēs</i> |
| <i>V. princeps</i> | <i>prīncipēs</i> |
| <i>A. principe</i> | <i>prīncipibus</i> |

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, *d* or *t*. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is *-s*, and the final *d* or *t* of the stem is dropped before it.

| <i>laus</i> , <i>F., praise</i> Stem <i>laud-</i> | | <i>mīles</i> , <i>M., soldier</i> Stem <i>milit-</i> | | <i>caput</i> , <i>N., head</i> Stem <i>capit-</i> | |
|--|-----------------|---|------------------|--|------------------|
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| <i>N. laus</i> | <i>laudēs</i> | <i>mīles</i> | <i>militēs</i> | <i>caput</i> | <i>capita</i> |
| <i>G. laudis</i> | <i>laudum</i> | <i>militis</i> | <i>militum</i> | <i>capitis</i> | <i>capitum</i> |
| <i>D. laudī</i> | <i>laudibus</i> | <i>militī</i> | <i>militibus</i> | <i>capitī</i> | <i>capitibus</i> |
| <i>A. laudem</i> | <i>laudēs</i> | <i>militem</i> | <i>militēs</i> | <i>caput</i> | <i>capita</i> |
| <i>V. laus</i> | <i>laudēs</i> | <i>mīles</i> | <i>militēs</i> | <i>caput</i> | <i>capita</i> |
| <i>A. laude</i> | <i>laudibus</i> | <i>militē</i> | <i>militibus</i> | <i>capite</i> | <i>capitibus</i> |

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, **g** or **c**. The nominative ending is **-s**, which unites with the final **g** or **c** of the stem to form **x**.

| lēx, F., law Stem lēg- | | dux, M., leader Stem duc- | |
|---------------------------|---------|------------------------------|---------|
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| N. lēx | lēgēs | dux | ducēs |
| G. lēgis | lēgum | ducis | ducum |
| D. lēgī | lēgibus | duci | ducibus |
| A. lēgem | lēgēs | ducem | ducēs |
| V. lēx | lēgēs | dux | ducēs |
| A. lēge | lēgibus | duce | ducibus |

21. Stems ending in a liquid, **l** or **r**. There is no nominative case-ending.

| cōsul, M., consul Stem cōsul- | | pater, M., father Stem patr- | | aequor, N., sea Stem aequor- | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|------------|
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| N. cōsul | cōsulēs | pater | patrēs | aequor | aequora |
| G. cōsulis | cōsulum | patris | patrum | aequoris | aequorum |
| D. cōsulī | cōsulibus | patrī | patribus | aequorī | aequoribus |
| A. cōsulem | cōsulēs | patrem | patrēs | aequor | aequora |
| V. cōsul | cōsulēs | pater | patrēs | aequor | aequora |
| A. cōsule | cōsulibus | patre | patribus | aequore | aequoribus |

22. Stems ending in a nasal, **m** or **n**. There is no nominative case-ending, except in **hiems**, the only stem in **-m**. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final **n** and changes the preceding vowel to **ō**.

| homō, M., F., human being Stem homin- | | ratiō, F., reason Stem ratiōn- | | flūmen, N., river Stem flūmin- | |
|--|-----------|-----------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------|------------|
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| N. homō | hominēs | ratiō | ratiōnēs | flūmen | flūmina |
| G. hominis | hominum | ratiōnis | ratiōnum | flūminis | flūminum |
| D. hominī | hominibus | ratiōnī | ratiōnibus | flūminī | flūminibus |
| A. hominem | hominēs | ratiōnem | ratiōnēs | flūmen | flūmina |
| V. homō | hominēs | ratiō | ratiōnēs | flūmen | flūmina |
| A. homine | hominibus | ratiōne | ratiōnibus | flūmine | flūminibus |

23. Stems ending in *s* (apparently *r*, because *s* changes to *r* between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in *s*, sometimes in *re*.

| mēs, <i>we</i> , custom Stem mēs- | | honor, <i>u</i> , honor Stem honōs- | | tempus, <i>s</i> , time Stem tempōs- | |
|--------------------------------------|---------|--|-----------|---|------------|
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| <i>N.</i> mēs | mōrēs | honor | honōrēs | tempus | tempora |
| <i>G.</i> mēis | mōrium | honoris | honōrium | temporis | temporum |
| <i>D.</i> mēi | mōribus | honori | honōribus | tempori | temporibus |
| <i>A.</i> mēm | mōrē | honorem | honōrē | tempus | tempora |
| <i>V.</i> mēs | mōrēs | honor | honōrēs | tempus | tempora |
| <i>A.</i> mōre | mōribus | honore | honōribus | tempore | temporibus |

B. I-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs* if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

25. Theoretically the *i* should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculine and feminine, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters, but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., *-em*, abl., *-e*, and plural either *-ēs* or *-is*. Neuters have abl. *-i*.

| turris, <i>s</i> , tower Stem turri- | hostis, <i>u</i> , <i>s</i> , enemy Stem hosti- | caedēs, <i>s</i> , slaughter Stem caedi- |
|---|--|---|
| SINGULAR | | |
| <i>N.</i> turris | hostis | caedēs |
| <i>G.</i> turris | hostis | caedis |
| <i>D.</i> turri | hosti | caedi |
| <i>A.</i> turrim or <i>-em</i> | hostem | caedem |
| <i>V.</i> turris | hostis | caedēs |
| <i>A.</i> turri or <i>-e</i> | hoste | caede |
| PLURAL | | |
| <i>N.</i> turrēs | hostēs | caedēs |
| <i>G.</i> turrium | hostium | caedium |
| <i>D.</i> turribus | hostibus | caedibus |
| <i>A.</i> turris or <i>-ēs</i> | hostēs or <i>-is</i> | caedēs or <i>-is</i> |
| <i>V.</i> turrēs | hostēs | caedēs |
| <i>A.</i> turribus | hostibus | caedibus |

cubile, N., couchStem **cubili-****vectigal, N., tax**Stem **vectigāli-**

SINGULAR

| | |
|-------------------|------------|
| N. cubile | vectigal |
| G. cubilis | vectigālis |
| D. cubilī | vectigālī |
| A. cubile | vectigal |
| V. cubile | vectigal |
| A. cubilī | vectigālī |

PLURAL

| | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| N. cubilia | vectigālia |
| G. cubilium | vectigālium |
| D. cubilibus | vectigālibus |
| A. cubilia | vectigālia |
| V. cubilia | vectigālia |
| A. cubilibus | vectigālibus |

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), **M.**, *the Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), **M.**, *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, **M.**, *fire*, and **nāvis**, **F.**, *ship*, often have **abl.-I**. **Mare**, **N.**, *sea*, is declined like **cubile**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās**, **-tātis**.

cliēns, M., retainerStem **client-**

SINGULAR PLURAL

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| N. cliēns | clientēs |
| G. clientis | clientium |
| D. clientī | clientibus |
| A. clientem | clientēs or -īs |
| V. cliēns | clientēs |
| A. cliente | clientibus |

urbs, F., cityStem **urb-**

SINGULAR PLURAL

| | |
|-------|---------------------|
| urbs | urbēs |
| urbis | urbium |
| urbī | urbibus |
| urbem | urbēs or -īs |
| urbs | urbēs |
| urbe | urbibus |

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

| senex, M., old man | os, N., bone | vīs, F., force | bōs, M., F., ox, cow | Iuppiter, M., Jupiter |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| SINGULAR | | | | |
| N. senex | os | vīs | bōs | Iuppiter |
| G. senis | ossis | vīs | bovis | Iovis |
| D. senī | ossī | vī | bovī | Iovī |
| A. senem | os | vim | bovem | Iovem |
| V. senex | os | vīs | bōs | Iuppiter |
| A. sene | osse | vī | bove | Iove |

| | | | | |
|------------|---------|---------|----------------|--|
| PLURAL | | | | |
| N. senēs | ossa | vīrēs | bovēs | |
| G. senum | ossium | vīrium | bovum or boum | |
| D. senibus | ossibus | vīribus | bōbus or būbus | |
| A. senēs | ossa | vīrēs | bovēs | |
| V. senēs | ossa | vīrēs | bovēs | |
| A. senibus | ossibus | vīribus | bōbus or būbus | |

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13).
There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

- Masculine* are nouns in *ō* (except those in *-dō, -gō, -iō*) *-or, -ōs, -er, -es*.
- Feminine* are nouns in *-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x*, and in *-s* when preceded by a consonant.
- Neuter* are all others; namely, nouns in *-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us*.

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in *-u*; nominative masculine in *-us*, nominative neuter in *-ū*.

| passus, M., pace | | cornū, N., horn | |
|------------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| N. passus | passūs | cornū | cornua |
| G. passūs | passuum | cornūs | cornuum |
| D. passui | passibus | cornū | cornibus |
| A. passum | passūs | cornū | cornua |
| V. passus | passūs | cornū | cornua |
| A. passū | passibus | cornū | cornibus |

- Domus, house, manus, hand, Idūs, Ides*, are feminine.
- The dative singular of nouns in *-us* sometimes ends in *-ū*.
- The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in *-ibus*.

d. *Domus*, *F.*, *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

| | SING. | PLUR. |
|-------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>domus</i> | <i>domūs</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>domūs</i> | <i>domuum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>domui or domō</i> | <i>domibus</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>domum</i> | <i>domōs</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>domus</i> | <i>domūs</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>domō or domū</i> | <i>domibus</i> |
| <i>Loc.</i> | <i>domī (at home)</i> | |

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in *-ē*; nominative in *-ēs*. Usually feminine.
diēs, *M.*, *day* *rēs*, *F.*, *thing*

| | SING. | PLUR. | | SING. | PLUR. |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|------------|--------------|
| <i>N.</i> | <i>diēs</i> | <i>diēs</i> | | <i>rēs</i> | <i>rēs</i> |
| <i>G.</i> | <i>diēi</i> | <i>diērum</i> | | <i>rei</i> | <i>rērum</i> |
| <i>D.</i> | <i>diēi</i> | <i>diēbus</i> | | <i>rei</i> | <i>rēbus</i> |
| <i>A.</i> | <i>diem</i> | <i>diēs</i> | | <i>rem</i> | <i>rēs</i> |
| <i>V.</i> | <i>diēs</i> | <i>diēs</i> | | <i>rēs</i> | <i>rēs</i> |
| <i>A.</i> | <i>diē</i> | <i>diēbus</i> | | <i>rē</i> | <i>rēbus</i> |

a. *Diēs* in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is *-ēi* after a vowel, *-ei* after a consonant. *-ē* is sometimes used instead of either.

c. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. *Aciēs*, *spēs*, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

| SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N.</i> <i>magnus</i> | <i>magna</i> | <i>magnum</i> | <i>magnī</i> | <i>magnae</i> | <i>magna</i> |
| <i>G.</i> <i>magnī</i> | <i>magnae</i> | <i>magnī</i> | <i>magnōrum</i> | <i>magnārum</i> | <i>magnōrum</i> |
| <i>D.</i> <i>magnō</i> | <i>magnae</i> | <i>magnō</i> | <i>magnīs</i> | <i>magnīs</i> | <i>magnīs</i> |
| <i>A.</i> <i>magnum</i> | <i>magnam</i> | <i>magnum</i> | <i>magnōs</i> | <i>magnās</i> | <i>magna</i> |
| <i>V.</i> <i>magne</i> | <i>magna</i> | <i>magnum</i> | <i>magnī</i> | <i>magnae</i> | <i>magna</i> |
| <i>A.</i> <i>magnō</i> | <i>magnā</i> | <i>magnō</i> | <i>magnīs</i> | <i>magnīs</i> | <i>magnīs</i> |

liber, free

| SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. liber | libera | liberum | liberī | liberae | libera |
| G. liberī | liberae | liberī | liberōrum | liberārum | liberōrum |
| D. liberō | liberae | liberō | liberīs | liberīs | liberīs |
| A. liberum | liberam | liberum | liberōs | liberās | libera |
| V. liber | libera | liberum | liberī | liberae | libera |
| A. liberō | liberā | liberō | liberīs | liberīs | liberīs |

noster, our

| SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| N. noster | nostra | nostrum | nostrī | nostrae | nostra |
| G. nostrī | nostrae | nostrī | nostrōrum | nostrārum | nostrōrum |
| D. nostrō | nostrae | nostrō | nostrīs | nostrīs | nostrīs |
| A. nostrum | nostram | nostrum | nostrōs | nostrās | nostra |
| V. noster | nostra | nostrum | nostrī | nostrae | nostra |
| A. nostrō | nostrā | nostrō | nostrīs | nostrīs | nostrīs |

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in *alter* usually -ius) and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are *alius, another, sōlus, only, tōtus, whole, ūllus, any, nūllus, no, ūnus, one, alter, the other, uter, which (of two), neuter, neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in *magnus*. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of *alius*.

SINGULAR

| <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| N. ūnus | ūna | ūnum | tōtus | tōta | tōtum |
| G. ūnīus | ūnīus | ūnīus | tōtīus | tōtīus | tōtīus |
| D. ūnī | ūnī | ūnī | tōtī | tōtī | tōtī |
| A. ūnum | ūnam | ūnum | tōtum | tōtam | tōtum |
| A. ūnō | ūnā | ūnō | tōtō | tōtā | tōtō |
| N. alius | alia | aliud | alter | altera | alterum |
| G. alīus | alīus | alīus | alterius | alterius | alterius |
| D. alī | alī | alī | alterī | alterī | alterī |
| A. alium | aliam | aliud | alterum | alteram | alterum |
| A. aliō | aliā | aliō | alterō | alterā | alterō |

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and *i*-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of *two* or *three terminations* have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

| fortior, braver | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------|-------------|
| SING. | | PLUR. | |
| Mas. and Fem. | Neuter | Mas. and Fem. | Neuter |
| N. fortior | fortius | fortiōrēs | fortiōra |
| G. fortiōris | fortiōris | fortiōrum | fortiōrum |
| D. fortiōrī | fortiōrī | fortiōribus | fortiōribus |
| A. fortiōrem | fortius | fortiōrēs | fortiōra |
| V. fortior | fortius | fortiōrēs | fortiōra |
| A. fortiore | fortiore | fortiōribus | fortiōribus |

a. Here belong all comparatives; but *plūs*, *more*, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

| SING. | | PLUR. | |
|-----------|---------------|----------|--|
| Neuter | Mas. and Fem. | Neuter | |
| N. plūs | plūrēs | plūra | |
| G. plūris | plūrium | plūrium | |
| D. | plūribus | plūribus | |
| A. plūs | plūrēs or -is | plūra | |
| A. plūre | plūribus | plūribus | |

35. One termination.

| vetus, old | | | |
|---------------|---------|---------------|-----------|
| SING. | | PLUR. | |
| Mas. and Fem. | Neut. | Mas. and Fem. | Neut. |
| N. vetus | vetus | veterēs | vetera |
| G. veteris | veteris | veterum | veterum |
| D. veterī | veterī | veteribus | veteribus |
| A. veterem | vetus | veterēs | vetera |
| V. vetus | vetus | veterēs | vetera |
| A. vetera | vetere | veteribus | veteribus |

a. Here belongs *princeps*, *chief*. *Dives*, *rich*, also belongs here, but has *ditia* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

acer, *sharp*

| SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Mas. | Fem. | Neut. | Mas. | Fem. | Neut. |
| N. <i>acer</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācre</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| G. <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācrium</i> | <i>ācrium</i> | <i>ācrium</i> |
| D. <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> |
| A. <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācre</i> | <i>ācrēs or -is</i> | <i>ācrēs or -is</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| V. <i>acer</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācre</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| A. <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> |

a. Here belong *celeber*, *famous*, *equester*, *equestrian*, *pedester*, *pedestrian*; names of months in *-ber*; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, *all*

| SING. | | PLUR. | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Mas. and Fem. | Neut. | Mas. and Fem. | Neut. |
| N. <i>omnis</i> | <i>omne</i> | <i>omnēs</i> | <i>omnia</i> |
| G. <i>omnis</i> | <i>omnis</i> | <i>omnium</i> | <i>omnium</i> |
| D. <i>omnī</i> | <i>omnī</i> | <i>omnibus</i> | <i>omnibus</i> |
| A. <i>omnem</i> | <i>omne</i> | <i>omnēs or -is</i> | <i>omnia</i> |
| V. <i>omnis</i> | <i>omne</i> | <i>omnēs</i> | <i>omnia</i> |
| A. <i>omnī</i> | <i>omnī</i> | <i>omnibus</i> | <i>omnibus</i> |

a. Here belong all adjectives in *-is*, *-e*.

38. One termination.

audāx, *bold*

| SING. | | PLUR. | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| Mas. and Fem. | Neut. | Mas. and Fem. | Neut. |
| N. <i>audāx</i> | <i>audāx</i> | <i>audācēs</i> | <i>audācia</i> |
| G. <i>audācis</i> | <i>audācis</i> | <i>audācium</i> | <i>audācium</i> |
| D. <i>audācī</i> | <i>audācī</i> | <i>audācibus</i> | <i>audācibus</i> |
| A. <i>audācem</i> | <i>audāx</i> | <i>audācēs or -is</i> | <i>audācia</i> |
| V. <i>audāx</i> | <i>audāx</i> | <i>audācēs</i> | <i>audācia</i> |
| A. <i>audācī</i> | <i>audācī</i> | <i>audācibus</i> | <i>audācibus</i> |

oriēns, *rising*

| SING. | | PLUR. | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|
| Mas. and Fem. | Neut. | Mas. and Fem. | Neut. |
| N. oriēns | oriēns | orientēs | orientia |
| G. orientis | orientis | orientium | orientium |
| D. orientī | orientī | orientibus | orientibus |
| A. orientem | oriēns | orientēs or -is | orientia |
| V. oriēns | oriēns | orientēs | orientia |
| A. oriente or -ī | oriente or -ī | orientibus | orientibus |

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in -āns and -ēns. Participles usually have the ablative singular in -ī only when used as adjectives, in -e when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are -ior, -ius; superlative, -issimus, -a, -um. They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: altus, *high*; altior, -ius, *higher*; altissimus, -a, -um, *highest*; fortis, *brave*; fortior, *braver*; fortissimus, *bravest*.

40. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding -rimus to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: ācer, *sharp* (base, ācr-), ācior, ācerrimus.

41. Most adjectives in -ilis are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding -limus to the *base* of the positive. They are facilis, *easy*; difficilis, *difficult*; similis, *like*; dissimilis, *unlike*; humilis, *low*; gracilis, *slender*. Example: facilis, faciliior, facillimus.

42.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, *good, better, best*.

malus, peior, pessimus, *bad, worse, worst*.

magnus, maior, maximus, *great, greater, greatest*.

parvus, minor, minimus, *small, less, least*.

multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most*.

dexter, dexterior, dextimus, *on the right, dexterous, etc.*

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

- (*citrā*, adv., *on this side*) *citerior*, *citimus*, *hither*, *hithermost*.
 (*dē*, prep., *down*) *dēterior*, *dēterrīmus*, *worse*, *worst*.
 (*intrā*, prep., *in, within*) *interior*, *intimus*, *inner*, *inmost*.
 (*prae*, prep., *before*) *prior*, *prīmus*, *former*, *first*.
 (*prope*, adv., *near*) *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *next*.
 (*ultrā*, adv., *beyond*) *ulterior*, *ultimus*, *farther*, *farthest*.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

- exterus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus* (*extimus*), *outer*, *outmost*.
inferus, *inferior*, *īfīmus* (*īmus*), *lower*, *lowest*.
posterus, *posterior*, *postrēmus* (*postumus*), *latter*, *last*.
superus, *superior*, *suprēmus* (*summus*), *higher*, *highest*.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*. Example: *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding -ē to the base; as *lātus*, *wide*, *lātē*, *widely*; from adjectives of the third declension by adding -ter or -iter to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in nt add only -er; as *audāx*, *audācis*, *bold*, *audācter*, *boldly*; *fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*, *bravely*; *prūdēns*, *prūdētis*, *prudent*, *prūdentē*, *prudently*. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as *multum*, *much*, *facile*, *easily*.

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as *lātius*, *more widely*, *audācius*, *more boldly*, *fortius*, *more bravely*, *prūdētius*, *more prudently*, *plūs*, *more*, *facilius*, *more easily*.

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the *superlative* of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as *lātissimē*, *most widely*, *audācissimē*, *most boldly*, *fortissimē*, *most bravely*, *prudentissimē*, *most prudently*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *facillimē*, *most easily*.

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

| Roman | | | |
|----------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Numerals | Cardinal | Ordinal | Distributive |
| I. | ūnus, -a, -um | prīmus, -a, -um | singulī, -ae, -a |
| II. | duo, -ae, -o | secundus or alter | bīnī |
| III. | trēs, tria | tertius | ternī or trīnī |
| IV. | quattuor | quārtus | quaternī |
| V. | quīnque | quīntus | quīnī |
| VI. | sex | sextus | sēnī |
| VII. | septem | septimus | septēnī |
| VIII. | octō | octāvus | octōnī |
| IX. | novem | nōnus | novēnī |
| X. | decem | decimus | dēnī |
| XI. | ūndecim | ūndecimus | ūndēnī |
| XII. | duodecim | duodecimus | duodēnī |
| XIII. | tredecim | tertius decimus | ternī dēnī |
| XIV. | quattuordecim | quārtus decimus | quaternī dēnī |
| XV. | quīndecim | quīntus decimus | quīnī dēnī |
| XVI. | sēdecim | sextus decimus | sēnī dēnī |
| XVII. | septendecim | septimus decimus | septēnī dēnī |
| XVIII. | duodēvigintī | duodēvicēsimus | duodēvicēnī |
| XIX. | ūndēvigintī | ūndēvicēsimus | ūndēvicēnī |
| XX. | vīgintī | vicēsimus | vicēnī |
| XXI. | ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus) | vicēsimus prīmus | vicēnī singulī |
| XXVIII. | duodētrīgintā | duodētricēsimus | duodētricēnī |
| XXIX. | ūndētrīgintā | ūndētricēsimus | ūndētricēnī |
| XXX. | trīgintā | tricēsimus | tricēnī |
| XL. | quadrāgintā | quadrāgēsimus | quadrāgēnī |
| L. | quīnquāgintā | quīnquāgēsimus | quīnquāgēnī |
| LX. | sexāgintā | sexāgēsimus | sexāgēnī |

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| LXX. septuāgintā | septuāgēsīmus | septuāgēnī |
| LXXX. octōgintā | octōgēsīmus | octōgēnī |
| XC. nōnāgintā | nōnāgēsīmus | nōnāgēnī |
| C. centūm | centēsīmus | centēnī |
| CI. centum (et) | centēsīmus (et) | centēnī (et) |
| ūnus | primus | singulī |
| CC. ducentī, -ae, -a | ducentēsīmus | ducentī |
| CCC. trecentī | trecentēsīmus | trecēnī |
| CCCC. quadringentī | quadringentēsīmus | quadringēnī |
| D. quīgentī | quīgentēsīmus | quīgēnī |
| DC. sescentī | sescentēsīmus | secentī |
| DCC. septingentī | septingentēsīmus | septingēnī |
| DCCC. octingentī | octingentēsīmus | octingēnī |
| DCCCC. nōngentī | nōngentēsīmus | nōngēnī |
| M. mille | millēsīmus | singula milia |
| MM. duo milia | bis millēsīmus | bīna milia |

a. The ending *-ēsīmus* is often used for *-ēsīmus*.

48. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined; *quattuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable; *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, inclusive, are declined like the plural of *magnus* (31); *mille* as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of *cubile* (25) and generally spelled *milia*. Ordinals are declined like *magnus*, distributives like the plural of *magnus*.

49. For the declension of *ūnus* see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

| duo, two | | | trēs, three | |
|--------------|--------|--------|-------------|--------|
| Mas. | Fem. | Neut. | M. and F. | Neut. |
| N. duo | duae | duo | trēs | tria |
| G. duōrum | duārum | duōrum | trium | trium |
| D. duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus |
| A. duōs, duo | duās | duo | trēs, trīs | tria |
| A. duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus |

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by *et*; as *trēs et quadrāgintā*, *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an *et*; as *quadrāgintā trēs*, *forty three*. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without *et*; as *ducentī (et) vīgintī*, *two hundred and twenty*. In com-

binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without *et*; as *duo milia sescenti viginti sex*, *two thousand six hundred and twenty six*.

PRONOUNS

51.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, *ego, I*Second person, *tū, you (thou)*

SING.

PLUR.

SING.

PLUR.

N. *ego**nōs**tū**vōs*G. *meī*{ *nostrum*
*nostrī**tuī*{ *vestrum*
*vestrī*D. *mihi**nōbīs**tibi**vōbīs*A. *mē**nōs**tē**vōs*A. *mē**nōbīs**tē**vōbīs*

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is*, *he*, *ea*, *she*, *id*, *it*, 57; or, when *him*, *them*, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. *nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostrī* and *vestrī*, as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, *nōbīs-cum*, *with us*.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject; therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, *meī*,
*of myself*Second person, *tuī*,
*of yourself*Third person, *suī*,
of himself, etc.

SING.

PLUR.

SING.

PLUR.

SING.

PLUR.

G. *meī*{ *nostrum*
*nostrī**tuī*{ *vestrum*
*vestrī**suī**suī*D. *mihi**nōbīs**tibi**vōbīs**sibi**sibi*A. *mē**nōs**tē**vōs**sē**sē*A. *mē**nōbīs**tē**vōbīs**sē**sē*

a. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, *sēcum*, *with himself*.

53.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

| | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>1st pers.</i> | <i>meus, -a, -um, my</i> | <i>noster, -tra, -trum, our</i> |
| <i>2d pers.</i> | <i>tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)</i> | <i>vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)</i> |
| <i>3d pers.</i> | <i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)</i> | <i>suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)</i> |
| | <i>eius (gen. sing. of is) his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)</i> | <i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) their (when not referring to the subject)</i> |

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54.

hic, this (near the speaker)

| | SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N. hic</i> | | <i>haec</i> | <i>hoc</i> | <i>hī</i> | <i>hae</i> | <i>haec</i> |
| <i>G. huius</i> | | <i>huius</i> | <i>huius</i> | <i>hōrum</i> | <i>hārum</i> | <i>hōrum</i> |
| <i>D. huic</i> | | <i>huic</i> | <i>huic</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> |
| <i>A. hunc</i> | | <i>hanc</i> | <i>hoc</i> | <i>hōs</i> | <i>hās</i> | <i>haec</i> |
| <i>A. hōc</i> | | <i>hāc</i> | <i>hōc</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> | <i>hīs</i> |

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, *hoc*, is pronounced *hocc* when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, *a.*

55.

iste, that (near the person spoken to)

| | SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N. iste</i> | | <i>ista</i> | <i>istud</i> | <i>istī</i> | <i>istae</i> | <i>ista</i> |
| <i>G. istius</i> | | <i>istius</i> | <i>istius</i> | <i>istōrum</i> | <i>istārum</i> | <i>istōrum</i> |
| <i>D. istī</i> | | <i>istī</i> | <i>istī</i> | <i>istīs</i> | <i>istīs</i> | <i>istīs</i> |
| <i>A. istum</i> | | <i>istam</i> | <i>istud</i> | <i>istōs</i> | <i>istās</i> | <i>ista</i> |
| <i>A. istō</i> | | <i>istā</i> | <i>istō</i> | <i>istīs</i> | <i>istīs</i> | <i>istīs</i> |

56. Ille, that (something more remote) is declined like iste.

57.

is, this, that, he, she, it (unemphatic)

| | SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N. is</i> | | <i>ea</i> | <i>id</i> | <i>iī, eī</i> | <i>eae</i> | <i>ea</i> |
| <i>G. eius</i> | | <i>eius</i> | <i>eius</i> | <i>eōrum</i> | <i>eārum</i> | <i>eōrum</i> |
| <i>D. eī</i> | | <i>eī</i> | <i>eī</i> | <i>iīs, eīs</i> | <i>iīs eīs</i> | <i>iīs, eīs</i> |
| <i>A. eum</i> | | <i>eam</i> | <i>id</i> | <i>eōs</i> | <i>eās</i> | <i>ea</i> |
| <i>A. eō</i> | | <i>eā</i> | <i>eō</i> | <i>iīs, eīs</i> | <i>iīs, eīs</i> | <i>iīs eīs</i> |

58.

Idem, the same

| | SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N. idem</i> | | <i>eadem</i> | <i>idem</i> | <i>Idem or</i> <i>eīdem</i> | <i>eadem</i> | <i>eadem</i> |
| <i>G. eiusdem</i> | <i>eiusdem</i> | <i>eiusdem</i> | <i>eiusdem</i> | <i>eōrundem</i> | <i>eārundem</i> | <i>eōrundem</i> |
| <i>D. eīdem</i> | <i>eīdem</i> | <i>eīdem</i> | <i>eīdem</i> | <i>īdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i> | <i>īdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i> | <i>īdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i> |
| <i>A. eundem</i> | <i>eandem</i> | <i>idem</i> | <i>idem</i> | <i>eōsdem</i> | <i>eāsdem</i> | <i>eadem</i> |
| <i>A. eōdem</i> | <i>eādem</i> | <i>eōdem</i> | <i>eōdem</i> | <i>īdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i> | <i>īdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i> | <i>īdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i> |

59.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

| | SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N. ipse</i> | | <i>ipsa</i> | <i>ipsum</i> | <i>ipsī</i> | <i>ipsae</i> | <i>ipsa</i> |
| <i>G. ipsīus</i> | <i>ipsīus</i> | <i>ipsīus</i> | <i>ipsīus</i> | <i>ipsōrum</i> | <i>ipsārum</i> | <i>ipsōrum</i> |
| <i>D. ipsī</i> | <i>ipsī</i> | <i>ipsī</i> | <i>ipsī</i> | <i>ipsīs</i> | <i>ipsīs</i> | <i>ipsīs</i> |
| <i>A. ipsum</i> | <i>ipsam</i> | <i>ipsum</i> | <i>ipsum</i> | <i>ipsōs</i> | <i>ipsās</i> | <i>ipsa</i> |
| <i>A. ipsō</i> | <i>ipsā</i> | <i>ipsō</i> | <i>ipsō</i> | <i>ipsīs</i> | <i>ipsīs</i> | <i>ipsīs</i> |

60.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

| | SING. | | | PLUR. | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
| <i>N. quī</i> | | <i>quae</i> | <i>quod</i> | <i>quī</i> | <i>quae</i> | <i>quae</i> |
| <i>G. cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>quōrum</i> | <i>quārum</i> | <i>quōrum</i> |
| <i>D. cui</i> | <i>cui</i> | <i>cui</i> | <i>cui</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |
| <i>A. quem</i> | <i>quam</i> | <i>quod</i> | <i>quod</i> | <i>quōs</i> | <i>quās</i> | <i>quae</i> |
| <i>A. quō</i> | <i>quā</i> | <i>quō</i> | <i>quō</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |

a. *Quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The *quī* of *quicumque* is declined regularly. *Quisquis*, *quicquid* (*quidquid*), and *quōquō* are the only common forms of *quisquis*.

b. The preposition *cum* is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

61.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, *quae*, *quod*, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. *Quis*, *quid*, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, who?

SING.

| <i>Mas. and Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|----------------------|--------------|
| N. quis | quid |
| G. cuius | cuius |
| D. cui | cui |
| A. quem | quid |
| A. quō | quō |

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; **quisnam**, *who, pray?*

b. **Cum** is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quis**, **quī**, and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE

ADJECTIVE

quis, quid, *any one*
aliquis, aliquid, *some one*
quispiam, quidpiam, *some one*

quī, quae (qua), quod, *any*
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, *some*
quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam,
some

quisquam, quicquam (quidquam),
any one (abl. sing. and entire
 plural supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**)

(adjective supplied by **ūllus**)

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis }
quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet }
any one etc., you like

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis }
quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet }
any you like

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain man*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain*

quisque, quidque, *each*

quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua**.

b. In the declension of **quīdam**, **m** becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam**.

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

| CONJUGATION | FINAL VOWEL OF STEM | PRESENT INFINITIVE |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| I. | ā | -āre |
| II. | ē | -ēre |
| III. | e (i, u) | -ere |
| IV. | i | -ire |

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive*,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active*,—present participle; gerund: *passive*,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: *active*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive*,—future infinitive; *active*,—future participle; supine: *passive*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of *laudō* are :

laudō, laudāre (present stem, *laudā*).

laudāvī (perfect stem, *laudāv*).

laudātum (supine stem, *laudāt*).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui*

| INDICATIVE | | SUBJUNCTIVE | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Present</i> | | <i>Present</i> | |
| SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
| sum | sumus | sim | simus |
| es | estis | sīs | sītis |
| est | sunt | sit | sint |
| <i>Imperfect</i> | | <i>Imperfect</i> | |
| eram | erāmus | essem (or forem) | essēmus (or forēmus) |
| erās | erātis | essēs (or forēs) | essētis (or forētis) |
| erat | erant | esset (or foret) | essent (or forent) |
| <i>Future</i> | | | |
| erō | erimus | | |
| eris | eritis | | |
| erit | erunt | | |
| <i>Perfect</i> | | <i>Perfect</i> | |
| fui | fuimus | fuerim | fuerimus |
| fuisti | fuistis | fueris | fueritis |
| fuit | fuērunt or -ēre | fuerit | fuerint |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> | | <i>Pluperfect</i> | |
| fueram | fuerāmus | fuissem | fuissēmus |
| fuerās | fuerātis | fuissēs | fuissētis |
| fuerat | fuerant | fuisset | fuissent |
| <i>Future Perfect</i> | | | |
| fuerō | fuerimus | | |
| fueris | fueritis | | |
| fuerit | fuerint | | |

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. es este

Future

2d pers. estō estōte

3d pers. estō suntō

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus

INFINITIVE

*Pres. esse**Perf. fuisse**Fut. futūrus (esse) or fore*

67.

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.

PLUR.

laudō

laudāmus

laudās

laudātis

laudat

laudant

Imperfect

laudābam

laudābāmus

laudābās

laudābātis

laudābat

laudābant

Future

laudābō

laudābimus

laudābis

laudābitis

laudābit

laudābunt

Perfect

laudāvī

laudāvimus

laudāvistī

laudāvistis

laudāvit

laudāverunt

or -ēre

Pluperfect

laudāveram

laudāverāmus

laudāverās

laudāverātis

laudāverat

laudāverant

Future Perfect

laudāverō

laudāverimus

laudāveris

laudāveritis

laudāverit

laudāverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.

PLUR.

laudem

laudēmus

laudēs

laudētis

laudet

laudent

Imperfect

laudārem

laudārēmus

laudārēs

laudārētis

laudāret

laudārent

Perfect

laudāverim

laudāverīmus

laudāverīs

laudāverītis

laudāverit

laudāverint

Pluperfect

laudāvissem

laudāvissēmus

laudāvissēs

laudāvissētis

laudāvisset

laudāvissent

IMPERATIVE

| | | |
|----------|----------------|-----------|
| | <i>Present</i> | |
| 2d pers. | laudā | laudāte |
| | <i>Future</i> | |
| 2d pers. | laudātō | laudātōte |
| 3d pers. | laudātō | laudantō |

INFINITIVE

| | |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | laudāre |
| <i>Perf.</i> | laudāvisse |
| <i>Fut.</i> | laudātūrus (<i>esse</i>) |

PARTICIPLE

| | |
|--------------|------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | laudāns |
| <i>Fut.</i> | laudātūrus |

SUPINE

| | |
|-------------|----------|
| <i>Acc.</i> | laudātum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | laudātū |

GERUND

| | |
|-------------|-----------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | laudandī |
| <i>Dat.</i> | laudandō |
| <i>Acc.</i> | laudandum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | laudandō |

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-----------------|-----------|
| laudor | laudāmur |
| laudāris or -re | laudāminī |
| laudātur | laudantur |

Imperfect

| | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| laudābar | laudābāmur |
| laudābāris or -re | laudābāminī |
| laudābātur | laudābantur |

Future

| | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| laudābor | laudābimur |
| laudāberis or -re | laudābiminī |
| laudābitur | laudābuntur |

Perfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| laudātus sum | laudātī sumus |
| laudātus es | laudātī estis |
| laudātus est | laudātī sunt |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-----------------|-----------|
| lauder | laudēmur |
| laudēris or -re | laudēminī |
| laudētur | laudentur |

Imperfect

| | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| laudārer | laudārēmur |
| laudārēris or -re | laudārēminī |
| laudārētur | laudārentur |

Perfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| laudātus sim | laudātī simus |
| laudātus sis | laudātī sītis |
| laudātus sit | laudātī sint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| laudātus eram | laudāti erāmus |
| laudātus erās | laudāti erātis |
| laudātus erat | laudāti erant |

Pluperfect

| | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| laudātus essem | laudāti essēmus |
| laudātus essēs | laudāti essētis |
| laudātus esset | laudāti essent |

Future Perfect

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| laudātus erō | laudāti erimus |
| laudātus eris | laudāti eritis |
| laudātus erit | laudāti erunt |

IMPERATIVE

Present

| | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 2d pers. laudāre | laudāmini |
|------------------|-----------|

Future

| | |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 2d pers. laudātor | |
| 3d pers. laudātor | laudantor |

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudārī*Perf.* laudātus esse*Fut.* laudātum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. laudātus*Fut.* laudandus

68.

SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monui, monitum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-------|---------|
| moneō | monēmus |
| monēs | monētis |
| monet | monent |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|--------|----------|
| moneam | moneāmus |
| moneās | moneātis |
| moneat | moneant |

Imperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| monēbam | monēbāmus |
| monēbās | monēbātis |
| monēbat | monēbant |

Imperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| monērem | monērēmus |
| monērēs | monērētis |
| monēret | monērent |

Future

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| monēbō | monēbimus |
| monēbis | monēbitis |
| monēbit | monēbunt |

Perfect

| | |
|----------|----------------------|
| monuī | monuimus |
| monuisti | monuistis |
| monuit | monuērunt or -ēre |

Perfect

| | |
|----------|------------|
| monuerim | monuerimus |
| monueris | monueritis |
| monuerit | monuerint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|----------|------------|
| monueram | monuerāmus |
| monuerās | monuerātis |
| monuerat | monuerant |

Pluperfect

| | |
|-----------|-------------|
| monuissē | monuissēmus |
| monuissēs | monuissētis |
| monuisset | monuissent |

Future Perfect

| | |
|----------|------------|
| monuerō | monuerimus |
| monueris | monueritis |
| monuerit | monuerint |

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. monē monēte

Future

2d pers. monētō monētōte

3d pers. monētō monentō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns Fut. monitūrus

SUPINE

Acc. monitum Abl. monitū

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre

Perf. monuisse

Fut. monitūrus (esse)

GERUND

Gen. monendī

Dat. monendō

Acc. monendum

Abl. monendō

SECOND CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneor, monērī, monitus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|----------------|----------|
| moneor | monēmur |
| monēris or -re | monēmini |
| monētur | monentur |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-----------------|-----------|
| monear | moneāmur |
| moneāris or -re | moneāmini |
| moneātur | moneantur |

Imperfect

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| monēbar | monēbāmur |
| monēbāris or -re | monēbāmini |
| monēbātur | monēbantur |

Future

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| monēbor | monēbimur |
| monēberis or -re | monēbimini |
| monēbitur | monēbuntur |

Perfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| monitus sum | monitī sumus |
| monitus es | monitī estis |
| monitus est | monitī sunt |

Pluperfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| monitus eram | monitī erāmus |
| monitus erās | monitī erātis |
| monitus erat | monitī erant |

Future Perfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| monitus erō | monitī erimus |
| monitus eris | monitī eritis |
| monitus erit | monitī erunt |

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. monēre monēmini

Future

2d pers. monētor

3d pers. monētor monentor

Imperfect

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| monērer | monērēmur |
| monērēris or -re | monērēmini |
| monērētur | monērentur |

Perfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| monitus sim | monitī sīmus |
| monitus sis | monitī sītis |
| monitus sit | monitī sint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| monitus essem | monitī essēmus |
| monitus essēs | monitī essētis |
| monitus esset | monitī essent |

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēri

Perf. monitus esse

Fut. monitum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. monitus

Fut. monendus

69.

THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-------|---------|
| dūcō | dūcimus |
| dūcis | dūcitis |
| dūcit | dūcunt |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-------|---------|
| dūcam | dūcāmus |
| dūcās | dūcātis |
| dūcat | dūcant |

Imperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| dūcēbam | dūcēbāmus |
| dūcēbās | dūcēbātis |
| dūcēbat | dūcēbant |

Future

| | |
|-------|---------|
| dūcam | dūcēmus |
| dūcēs | dūcētis |
| dūcet | dūcent |

Perfect

| | |
|---------|---------------------|
| dūxī | dūximus |
| dūxistī | dūxistis |
| dūxit | dūxerunt or -ēre |

Pluperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| dūxeram | dūxerāmus |
| dūxerās | dūxerātis |
| dūxerat | dūxerant |

Future Perfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| dūxerō | dūxerimus |
| dūxeris | dūxeritis |
| dūxerit | dūxerint |

IMPERATIVE

Present

| | |
|---------------|--------|
| 2d pers. dūc* | dūcite |
|---------------|--------|

Future

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| 2d pers. dūcitō | dūcitōte |
| 3d pers. dūcitō | dūcuntō |

PARTICIPLE

| | |
|--------------|----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | dūcēns |
| <i>Fut.</i> | ductūrus |

Imperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| dūcerem | dūcerēmus |
| dūcerēs | dūcerētis |
| dūceret | dūcerent |

Perfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| dūxerim | dūxerīmus |
| dūxeris | dūxerītis |
| dūxerit | dūxerint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|----------|------------|
| dūxissem | dūxissēmus |
| dūxissēs | dūxissētis |
| dūxisset | dūxissent |

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere*Perf.* dūxisse*Fut.* ductūrus (esse)

SUPINE

| | |
|-------------|--------|
| <i>Acc.</i> | ductum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ductū |

GERUND

| | |
|-------------|----------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | dūcendī |
| <i>Dat.</i> | dūcendō |
| <i>Acc.</i> | dūcendum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | dūcendō |

* Irregular for dūce.

THIRD CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|----------------|----------|
| dūcor | dūcimur |
| dūceris or -re | dūcimini |
| dūcitur | dūcuntur |

Imperfect

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| dūcēbar | dūcēbāmur |
| dūcēbāris or -re | dūcēbāmini |
| dūcēbātur | dūcēbantur |

Future

| | |
|----------------|----------|
| dūcar | dūcēmur |
| dūcēris or -re | dūcēmini |
| dūcētur | dūcentur |

Perfect

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| ductus sum | ductī sumus |
| ductus es | ductī estis |
| ductus est | ductī sunt |

Pluperfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| ductus eram | ductī erāmus |
| ductus erās | ductī erātis |
| ductus erat | ductī erant |

Future Perfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| ductus erō | ductī erimus |
| ductus eris | ductī eritis |
| ductus erit | ductī erunt |

IMPERATIVE

Present

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| 2d pers. dūcere | dūcimini |
|-----------------|----------|

Future

| | |
|------------------|----------|
| 2d pers. dūcitor | |
| 3d pers. dūcitor | dūcuntor |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|----------------|----------|
| dūcar | dūcāmur |
| dūcāris or -re | dūcāmini |
| dūcātur | dūcantur |

Imperfect

| | |
|-----------------|------------|
| dūcerer | dūcerēmur |
| dūcerēris or re | dūcerēmini |
| dūcerētur | dūcerentur |

Perfect

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| ductus sim | ductī sīmus |
| ductus sis | ductī sītis |
| ductus sit | ductī sint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| ductus essem | ductī essēmus |
| ductus essēs | ductī essētis |
| ductus esset | ductī essent |

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcī*Perf.* ductus esse*Fut.* ductum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. ductus*Fut.* dūcendus

70.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum**

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-------|---------|
| audiō | audīmus |
| audīs | audītis |
| audit | audiunt |

Imperfect

| | |
|----------|------------|
| audiēbam | audiēbāmus |
| audiēbās | audiēbātis |
| audiēbat | audiēbant |

Future

| | |
|--------|----------|
| audiam | audiēmus |
| audiēs | audiētis |
| audiet | audient |

Perfect

| | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| audīvī | audīvimus |
| audīvistī | audīvistis |
| audīvit | audīvērunt or -ēre |

Pluperfect

| | |
|-----------|-------------|
| audīveram | audīverāmus |
| audīverās | audīverātis |
| audīverat | audīverant |

Future Perfect

| | |
|-----------|-------------|
| audīverō | audīverimus |
| audīveris | audīveritis |
| audīverit | audīverint |

IMPERATIVE

Present

| | |
|---------------|--------|
| 2d pers. audi | audīte |
|---------------|--------|

Future

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| 2d pers. audītō | audītōte |
| 3d pers. audītō | audiuntō |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|--------|----------|
| audiam | audiāmus |
| audiās | audiātis |
| audiat | audiant |

Imperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| audīrem | audīrēmus |
| audīrēs | audīrētis |
| audīret | audīrent |

Perfect

| | |
|-----------|-------------|
| audīverim | audīverīmus |
| audīveris | audīverītis |
| audīverit | audīverint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|------------|--------------|
| audīvissem | audīvissemus |
| audīvisse | audīvissetis |
| audīvisset | audīvissent |

INFINITIVE

*Pres. audīre**Perf. audīvisse**Fut. audītūrus (esse)*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns *Fut.* auditūrus

SUPINE

Acc. auditum *Abl.* auditū

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: audior, audīri, auditus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|----------------|-----------|
| audior | audīmur |
| audīris or -re | audīmini |
| audītur | audiuntur |

Imperfect

| | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| audiēbar | audiēbāmur |
| audiēbāris or -re | audiēbāmini |
| audiēbātur | audiēbantur |

Future

| | |
|-----------------|-----------|
| audiar | audiēmur |
| audiēris or -re | audiēmini |
| audiētur | audientur |

Perfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| auditus sum | audītī sumus |
| auditus es | audītī estis |
| auditus est | audītī sunt |

Pluperfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| auditus eram | audītī erāmus |
| auditus erās | audītī erātis |
| auditus erat | audītī erant |

Future Perfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| auditus erō | audītī erimus |
| auditus eris | audītī eritis |
| auditus erit | audītī erunt |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-----------------|-----------|
| audiar | audiāmur |
| audiāris or -re | audiāmini |
| audiātur | audiantur |

Imperfect

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| audīrer | audīrēmur |
| audīrēris or -re | audīrēmini |
| audīrētur | audīrentur |

Perfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| auditus sim | audītī simus |
| auditus sis | audītī sitis |
| auditus sit | audītī sint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| auditus essem | audītī essēmus |
| auditus essēs | audītī essētis |
| auditus esset | audītī essent |

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. audire audimini

Future

2d pers. auditor

3d pers. auditor audiuntor

INFINITIVE

*Pres. audiri**Perf. auditus esse**Fut. auditum iri*

PARTICIPLE

*Perf. auditus**Fut. audiendus*

71.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iō*

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captum*

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>capiō</i> | <i>capimus</i> |
| <i>capis</i> | <i>capitis</i> |
| <i>capit</i> | <i>capiunt</i> |

Imperfect

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>capiēbam</i> | <i>capiēbāmus</i> |
| <i>capiēbās</i> | <i>capiēbātis</i> |
| <i>capiēbat</i> | <i>capiēbant</i> |

Future

| | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>capiam</i> | <i>capiēmus</i> |
| <i>capies</i> | <i>capiētis</i> |
| <i>capiet</i> | <i>capient</i> |

Perfect

| | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>cēpī</i> | <i>cēpimus</i> |
| <i>cēpisti</i> | <i>cēpistis</i> |
| <i>cēpit</i> | <i>cēpērunt</i> |
| | <i>or -ēre</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>capiam</i> | <i>capiāmus</i> |
| <i>capias</i> | <i>capiātis</i> |
| <i>capiat</i> | <i>capiant</i> |

Imperfect

| | |
|----------------|------------------|
| <i>caperem</i> | <i>caperēmus</i> |
| <i>caperēs</i> | <i>caperētis</i> |
| <i>caperet</i> | <i>caperent</i> |

Perfect

| | |
|----------------|------------------|
| <i>cēperim</i> | <i>cēperīmus</i> |
| <i>cēperis</i> | <i>cēperītis</i> |
| <i>cēperit</i> | <i>cēperint</i> |

Pluperfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| cēperam | cēperāmus |
| cēperās | cēperātis |
| cēperat | cēperant |

Future Perfect

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| cēperō | cēperimus |
| cēperis | cēperitis |
| cēperit | cēperint |

IMPERATIVE

Present

| | |
|---------------|--------|
| 2d pers. cape | capite |
|---------------|--------|

Future

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| 2d pers. capitō | capitōte |
| 3d pers. capitō | capiuntō |

PARTICIPLE

| | |
|---------------|---------------|
| Pres. capiēns | Fut. captūrus |
|---------------|---------------|

SUPINE

| | |
|-------------|------------|
| Acc. captum | Abl. captū |
|-------------|------------|

Pluperfect

| | |
|----------|------------|
| cēpisse | cēpissēmus |
| cēpissēs | cēpissētis |
| cēpisset | cēpissent |

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere

Perf. cēpisse

Fut. captūrus (esse)

GERUND

Gen. capiendī

Dat. capiendō

Acc. capiendum

Abl. capiendō

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|----------------|-----------|
| capior | capimur |
| caperis or -re | capimini |
| capitur | capiuntur |

Imperfect

| | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| capiēbar | capiēbāmur |
| capiēbāris or -re | capiēbāmini |
| capiēbātur | capiēbantur |

Future

| | |
|-----------------|-----------|
| capiar | capiēmur |
| capiēris or -re | capiēmini |
| capiētur | capiēntur |

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

| SING. | PLUR. |
|-----------------|-----------|
| capiar | capiāmur |
| capiāris or -re | capiāmini |
| capiātur | capiantur |

Imperfect

| | |
|------------------|------------|
| caperer | caperēmur |
| caperēris or -re | caperēmini |
| caperētur | caperentur |

Perfect

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| captus sum | capti sumus |
| captus es | capti estis |
| captus est | capti sunt |

Perfect

| | |
|------------|-------------|
| captus sim | capti simus |
| captus sis | capti sitis |
| captus sit | capti sint |

Pluperfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| captus eram | capti erāmus |
| captus erās | capti erātis |
| captus erat | capti erant |

Pluperfect

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| captus essem | capti essēmus |
| captus essēs | capti essētis |
| captus esset | capti essent |

Future Perfect

| | |
|-------------|--------------|
| captus erō | capti erimus |
| captus eris | capti eritis |
| captus erit | capti erunt |

IMPERATIVE

Present

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| 2d pers. capere | capimini |
|-----------------|----------|

Future

| | |
|------------------|-----------|
| 2d pers. capitor | |
| 3d pers. capitor | capiuntor |

INFINITIVE

Pres. capī*Perf.* captus esse*Fut.* captum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus*Fut.* capiendus

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and *-ōvī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vi* before *r* or *s*.

Examples: *laudāstī* for *laudāvistī*; *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*; *dēlērunt* for *dēlēvērunt*; *nōrim* for *nōverim*.

b. Perfects in *-ivī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *īs*.

Examples: *audiī* for *audīvī*; *audieram* for *audīveram*; *audīsse* for *audīvisse*.

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, urge vereor, fear sequor, follow partior, share

INFINITIVE

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Pres. hortārī</i> | <i>verērī</i> | <i>sequī</i> | <i>partīrī</i> |
| <i>Perf. hortātus esse</i> | <i>veritus esse</i> | <i>secūtus esse</i> | <i>partītus esse</i> |
| <i>Fut. hortātūrus (esse)</i> | <i>veritūrus (esse)</i> | <i>secūtūrus (esse)</i> | <i>partītūrus (esse)</i> |

PARTICIPLE

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Pres. hortāns</i> | <i>verēns</i> | <i>sequēns</i> | <i>partiēns</i> |
| <i>Perf. hortātus</i> | <i>veritus</i> | <i>secūtus</i> | <i>partītus</i> |
| <i>Fut. hortātūrus</i> | <i>veritūrus</i> | <i>secūtūrus</i> | <i>partītūrus</i> |
| <i>Fut. Pass. hortandus</i> | <i>verendus</i> | <i>sequendus</i> | <i>partiendus</i> |

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partītum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fidē, fidere, fīsus sum, trust

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future or intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,

Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation or necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.

Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of **sum** see 66. **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super**. **Praesum** has a present participle, **praesēns**.

78. In **absum**, **sum** is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before **f**, giving **āfuī, āfutūrus**, etc. There is a present participle **absēns**.

79. In **prōsum**, **sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e**; as, **prōdesse, prōderam**. The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt**.

80. **Possum**, *be able, can*, is a compound of **pot-** and **sum**.

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

| | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|-------------------|--|------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt | possim |
| <i>Imp.</i> | poteram | possem |
| <i>Fut.</i> | poterō | |
| <i>Perf.</i> | potuī | potuerim |
| <i>Plup.</i> | potueram | potuissem |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | potuerō | |

INDICATIVE

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------|------------|----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | volō | nōlō | mālō |
| | vīs | nōn vīs | māvīs |
| | vult | nōn vult | māvult |
| | volumus | nolumus | mālumus |
| | vultis | nōn vultis | māvultis |
| | volunt | nōlunt | mālunt |
| <i>Imp.</i> | volēbam | nōlēbam | mālēbam |
| <i>Fut.</i> | volam | nōlam | mālam |
| <i>Perf.</i> | volui | nōlui | mālui |
| <i>Plup.</i> | volueram | nōlueram | mālueram |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | voluerō | nōluerō | māluerō |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | velim | nōlim | mālim |
| <i>Imp.</i> | vellem | nōllem | māllem |
| <i>Perf.</i> | voluerim | nōluerim | māluerim |
| <i>Plup.</i> | voluissē | nōluissem | māluissem |

IMPERATIVE

| | | |
|--------------|--------|----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | nōlī | nōlīte |
| <i>Fut.</i> | nōlītō | nōlītōte |
| | nōlītō | nōluntō |

INFINITIVE

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------|----------|
| <i>Pres. velle</i> | nōlle | mālle |
| <i>Perf. voluisse</i> | nōluisse | māluisse |

PARTICIPLE

| | |
|---------------------|--------|
| <i>Pres. volēns</i> | nōlēns |
|---------------------|--------|

83. **Fiō**, *be made, be done, become, happen*, is the irregular passive of **faciō**, *make*. Note the *i* before all vowels, except before *e* in the combination *-er*.

Principal parts: **fiō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | fiō, fis, fit | fiam |
| | firmus, fitis, fiunt | |
| <i>Imp.</i> | fiēbam | fierem |
| <i>Fut.</i> | fiam | |
| <i>Perf.</i> | factus sum | factus sim |
| <i>Plup.</i> | factus eram | factus essem |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> | factus erō | |

| IMPERATIVE | INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLE |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> fī, fite | <i>Pres.</i> fierī | <i>Perf.</i> factus |
| | <i>Perf.</i> factus esse | <i>Fut.</i> faciendus |
| | <i>Fut.</i> factum irī | |

84. eō, ire, iī, itum, go

| INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|--|-----------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> eō, īs, it, imus, ītis, eunt | eam |
| <i>Imp.</i> ībam | īrem |
| <i>Fut.</i> ībō | |
| <i>Perf.</i> iī for ivī | ierim |
| <i>Plup.</i> ieram | iissem or īssem |
| <i>Fut. Per.</i> ierō | |

| IMPERATIVE | INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLE |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|
| <i>Pres.</i> ī, ite | <i>Pres.</i> ire | <i>Pres.</i> iēns (<i>Gen.</i> euntis) |
| <i>Fut.</i> itō, itōte itō, euntō | <i>Perf.</i> iisse or īsse <i>Fut.</i> itūrus (esse) | <i>Fut.</i> itūrus |
| GERUND | | SUPINE |
| eundī, etc. | | itum, -tū |

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, *ii* usually contracts to *i* before *s*.

85. *Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give*, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short *a*. *ā* appears only in the following active forms,—*dās, dā, dāns*.

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects *meminī, I remember; ōdī, I hate*; and *coepī, I have begun*. Notice that *meminī* and *ōdī* have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE

| | | |
|----------------------------|--------|----------|
| <i>Perf.</i> meminī | ōdī | coepī |
| <i>Plup.</i> meminēram | ōderam | coeperam |
| <i>Fut. Perf.</i> meminērō | ōderō | coeperō |

SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------|-----------|
| <i>Perf.</i> | meminerim | öderim | coeperim |
| <i>Plup.</i> | meminissem | ōdissem | coepissem |

IMPERATIVE

| | |
|--------------|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | mementō |
| <i>Plur.</i> | mementōte |

INFINITIVE

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>Perf.</i> | meminisse | ōdisse | coepisse |
| <i>Fut.</i> | | ōsūrus (esse) | coeptūrus (esse) |

PARTICIPLE

| | | |
|--------------|--------|-----------|
| <i>Perf.</i> | ōsus | coeptus |
| <i>Fut.</i> | ōsūrus | coeptūrus |

a. Instead of **coepī** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: **laudārī coeptus est**, *he began to be praised*.

87.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit**, *it rains*.

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet**, *it becomes*; **libet**, *it pleases*; **licet**, *it is permitted*; **miseret**, *it causes pity*; **oporet**, *it is right*; **paenitet**, *it repents*; **piget**, *it displeases*; **pudet**, *it shames*; **rēfert**, *it concerns*; **taedet**, *it wearies*. All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accēdit**, *it is added*, from **accēdō**, *I approach*.

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pugnātur**, *it is fought*.

SYNTAX

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.*

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coordinate clauses*, and are connected by *coordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Galli fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate or dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before*. Example: *ubi Caesar vēnit, Galli fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in the *soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin *miles* would be used in the first sentence, *mīlitem* in the second, and *mīlitī* in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but *mīlitem*, *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while *multōs annōs*, *many years*, is quite probably so used. *Dicit pīlum mīlitem vulnerāvissē* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuāsit*, *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: *ā mīlite interfectus est*, *he was killed by a soldier*; *cum mīlite vēnit*, *he came in company with a soldier*.

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

RULE: *A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.*

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. RULE: *A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.*

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: *Pisō fuit cōsul*, *Piso was consul*; *Pisō factus est cōsul*, *Piso became consul*; *Pisō appellātus est cōsul*, *Piso was called consul*. For the predicate accusative with verbs of calling, etc., see 126.

b. RULE: *An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.*

EXAMPLES: *Pisō, cōsul, mīlitī Pisōnī gladium dedit*. *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*

96.

NOMINATIVE

RULE: *The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).*

EXAMPLE: *Gallia est dīvisa* (I, 1, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. GENERAL RULE: *A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.*

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98–105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as *domus Caesaris*, *Caesar's house*; or (b) *predicative*, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as *domus est Caesaris*, *the house is Caesar's*.

a. **Appositional Genitive.** [But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: *tuōrum comitum sentīna* (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades*.

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as *amor*, *love*, *amō*, *I love*. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: *amor patris*, *the love of the father*, may imply that *the father loves*, (subjective), or that *some one loves his father* (objective); *occāsum sōlis* (I, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); *rēgnī cupiditāte* (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: *finibus Belgārum* (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; *finibus vestris*, *by your territory*.

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede *causā* or *grātiā*, for the sake of. Examples: *huius potentiae causā* (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; *meā causā*, *for my sake*.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: *huiusce modi senātūs cōsultum* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind*; *trium mēnsium molita cibāria* (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months*.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: *The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: *eōrum ūna pars* (I, 1, 15), *one part of them*; *hōrum omnium fortissimī* (I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these*; *ubinam gentium sumus* (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in (not of) the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on *satis* used substantively. Examples: *quantum bonī* (I, 40, 17), *how much (of) good*; *satis causae* (I, 19, 6), *sufficient (of) reason*.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with *quidam*. Example: *ūnus ē filiīs captus est* (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured*.

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: *hī omnēs* (I, 1, 3), *all of these*.

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: *The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.*

Example: *aciem legiōnum quattuor* (I, 24, 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions*.

PREDICATIVE

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as *est hominis*, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man*. Example: *est hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis* (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs*.

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: *senātūs cōsultum est huiusce modī*, *the decree is of this kind*.

105. The Genitive of Value. With *sum* and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are *magnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris*. Example: *tantī eius grātiā esse ostendit* (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value*.

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. RULE: *Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.* They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of)*, *desirous (of)*, *mindful (of)*, *sharing (in)*, *skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and *plēnus*, *full (of)*. Examples: *bellandī cupidī* (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; *rei militāris perītissimus* (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science*.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: *tui similis* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; *vērī simile* (III, 13, 11), *probable (like the truth)*.

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: *locum medium utriusque* (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between them*.

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: *Memini, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.*

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: *reminiscerētur veteris incommodī* (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster*; *veteris contumēliae oblivisci* (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult*.

108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

RULE: *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.*

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: *mē inertiae condemnō* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

109. Verbs of Emotion.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb *misereor, pity*, also takes the genitive. Examples: *mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit* (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds; mē eius miseret or eius misereor, I pity him.*

110. Interest and Rēfert.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs interest and rēfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, *interest* is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: *rei publicae intersit* (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state; meā interest, it is to my interest.*

111. **RULE:** *Potior occasionally governs the genitive.*

For *potior* with the ablative see 145. Example: *Galliae potiri* (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

GENERAL RULE: *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.*

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

RULE: *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: *eī filiam dat* (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter*.

a. *Dōnō*, *give, present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: *eī librum dōnō*, *I give (to) him a book*; *eum librō dōnō*, *I present him with a book*.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially *cōsulō*, *consult or consult for*, and *metuō*, *fear or fear for*. Examples: *sī mē cōsulis* (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice)*; *cōsulite vōbīs* (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests)*.

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: *eī filia datur*, *his daughter is given to him*.

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

RULE: *The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

EXAMPLES: *civitātī persuāsīt* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; *novīs rēbus studēbat* (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*; *Allobrogibus imperāvīt* (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges*.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as *audiēns sum*, *obey*, and *fidem habēre*, *trust*. Example: *cui fidem habēbat* (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: *prōvinciae militum numerum imperat* (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; *id iīs persuāsīt* (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (literally, *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs *dēlectō*, *delight*, *iubeō*

command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: *Labiēnum iubet* (I, 21, 5), *he commands Labienus*.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: *Caesarī persuādeō*, *I persuade Caesar*, becomes *Caesarī ā mē persuādētur*, *Caesar is persuaded by me* (literally, *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, it is sometimes called the *dative of separation*.

RULE: *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.*

EXAMPLES: *cum omnibus praestārent* (I, 2, 5), *since they excelled all*; *finitimīs bellum inferre* (I, 2, 12), *to make war upon their neighbors*; *mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praeficit* (I, 10, 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works*; *scūtō militī detractō* (II, 25, 13), *having snatched a shield from a soldier*.

II. **RULE:** *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.*

EXAMPLE: *sī Haeduīs satisfaciant* (I, 14, 19), *if they should make re-stitution to the Haedui*.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, *aggredior, attack*; *incendō, burn*; *interficiō, kill*; *oppugnō, assault*; but there are many others. Example: *eōs aggressus* (I, 12, 9), *having attacked (or attacking) them*.

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: *illum in equum intulit* (VI, 30, 15), *he put him on a horse*.

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: *mūnitiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur*, *Labienus is put in command of the works*.

117. Dative of Possessor.

RULE: *The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.*

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: *mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); *demonstrant sibi nihil esse* (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent.

RULE: *The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: *nōn expectandum sibi statuit* (Caes. I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: *civitātī ā tē persuādendum est*, *the state must be persuaded by you*.

119. Dative of Purpose.

RULE: *The dative may express purpose or tendency.*

This dative is especially common with *sum*. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: *quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant* (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar*, lit. *whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar*; *quī novissimis praesidiō erant* (I, 25, 14), *who were guarding the rear*, lit. *who were for a guard to the rear*.

120. Dative of Reference.

RULE: *The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.*

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: *cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent* (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt* (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet*.

121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: *Tongilium mihi ēdūxit* (Cic. Cat. II, 4.), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius*, or simply *he took out Tongilius*.

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: *Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.*

Examples: *plēbī acceptus* (I, 3, 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people*; *proximī sunt Germānīs* (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; *castrīs idōneum locum* (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp*.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: *ad amīcitiam idōneus*, *suitable for friendship*.

b. The adjectives *propior* and *proximus* and the adverbs *propius* and *proximē* sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition *prope*. Example: *proximī Rhēnum* (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine*.

c. For *similis* and *dissimilis* see 106, b.

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: *The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.*

Example: *certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse* (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across*.

124. Direct Object.

RULE: *The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.*

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as *puerum laudat*, *he praises the boy*; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as *coniūrātiōnem fēcit*, *he made a conspiracy*.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: *puer laudātur*, *the boy is praised*; *coniūrātiō facta est*, *a conspiracy was made*.

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially *ad*, *circum*, *in*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *trāns*, have transitive meanings. Example: *ire*, *to go*, intransitive; but *flūmen trānsire*, *to cross* (*go across*) *the river*.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127).

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.*

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*. Examples: *Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for the grain*; *eadem ab aliīs quaerit* (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same question of others*.

b. **RULE:** *Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.*

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, a). Examples: *eōs hoc moneō* (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice*; *sī quid ille sē velit* (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him*.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: *Haeduī frūmentum flāgitābantur*, *the Haedui were asked for the grain*; (iī) *hoc monentur*, *they are given this advice*.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.*

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: *quem rēgem cōstituerat* (IV, 21, 14), *whom he had appointed king*; *Caesarem certiōrem fēcit*, *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain)*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: *quī rēx cōstitutus erat*, *who had been appointed king*; *Caesar certior factus est* (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain)*.⁶¹

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: *Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.*

Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt* (cf. I, 12, 6), *they led three parts across the river*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt*, *three parts were led across the river*.

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: *An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or gentive.*

Examples: *eam vītam vivere*, *to live that life*; *trīdūī viam prōcēdere* (I, 38), *to advance a three days' march*.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative*. Examples: *id iīs persuāsīt* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); *multum posse*, *to have much power*.

b. **Adverbial Accusative.** A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are *multum*, *much*, *plūs*, *more*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *plērumque*, *for the most part*, and *nihil*, *not at all*. Here belong also *id temporis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time*, and *maximam partem* (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part*. Example: *multum sunt in vēnātiōne* (IV, 1, 15), *they engage much in hunting*.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: *An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

Example: *O fortunātam rem pūblicam* (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh, fortunate state!* The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.

130. Accusative of Time and Space.

RULE: *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, *diēs, day; pēs, foot*. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: *rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat* (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; *mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant* (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

131. Place to Which.

RULE: *Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: *ad iūdicium coēgit* (I, 4, 14), *he brought to the trial*; *in agrum Nōricum trānsierant* (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory*; *sē Massiliam cōferet* (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles*; *domum reditiōnis* (I, 5, 6), *of a return home*.

a. *Ad* is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), or *in the neighborhood of*. Example: *ad Genavam pervenit* (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva*.

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: *dēsilīte, commilitōnēs* (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades*.

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

RULE: *Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: *suīs finibus eōs prohibent* (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; *quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent* (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; *ā Bibracte aberat* (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte*.

a. *Place from which*: with verbs expressing motion:—

RULE: *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: *ut dē finibus suīs exīrent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; *quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant* (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province*; *Rōmā profūgērunt* (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; *domō exīre* (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home*.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of*.

b. **RULE:** *With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.*

Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; *proeliō abstinēbat* (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (literally *refrained from battle*).

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: *The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.*

Examples: *amplissimō genere nātus* (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; *sorōrem ex mātre (nātam)* (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side*.

136. Ablative of Material.

RULE: *The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.*

Example: *nāvēs factae ex rōbore* (III, 13, 5), *the ships were made of oak*.

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: *The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.*

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: *exercitum ab Helvētiis pulsum* (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii*.

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: *Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.*

Examples: *grātiā et largitiōne* (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; *quod suā victoriā glōriārentur* (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory*.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by *causā* and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with *ob*, *per*, or *propter*; and by *dē* or *ex* with the ablative. Examples: *propter angustias* (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; *quā dē causā*, (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason*.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: *With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.*

Examples: *lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōsilia* (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; *nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum* (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When *quam* is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. *Plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used instead of *plūs quam*, etc. Example: *quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore* (V, 8, 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time*.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE: *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

Example: *ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops*.

In military phrases *cum* is sometimes omitted.

Example: *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis* (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops*.

141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: *The ablative modified by an adjective may ascribe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: *hominēs inimicō animō* (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; *nōndum bonō animō vidērentur* (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit)*.

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: *Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.*

Examples: *pars cum cruciātū necābātur* (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; *magnis itineribus* (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches*.

a. Ablative of Accordance.

RULE: *In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.*

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—*cōsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte*. Examples: *iniussū suō* (I, 19, 4), *without his orders*; *mōribus suis* (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; *suā voluntāte* (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish*.

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

RULE: *Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.*

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: *imperio populī Rōmānī* (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; *intervallō pedum duōrum iungēbat* (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet*.

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: *The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: *rēgnī cupiditate inductus* (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power*.

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except *plēnus*, 106); *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *trust in*; *nitor*, *rely upon*; *laccessō* (*proeliō*), *provoke (to battle)*; *assuēfactus*, *assuētus*, *accustomed to*; *frētus*, *relying upon*. Examples: *nātūrā loci cōfidēbant* (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; *nūllō officiō assuēfacti* (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience*.

144. Ablative of the Way.

RULE: *The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Examples: *frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat* (I, 16, 5), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; *eōdem itinere contendit* (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road*.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with *ūtōr*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *fulfill*, *potior*, *get possession of*, *vēscor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: *eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō* (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; *imperio potiri* (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government*.

146. Ablative with opus est.

RULE: *The ablative of means is used with opus est and ūsus est, meaning there is need of.*

Example: *Caesarī multis auxiliis opus est*, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries*.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with *opus* as predicate noun. Example: *sī quid opus esset* (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything*.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with *opus est*. Example: *sī opus factō esset* (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action*.

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: *With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: *parvō pretiō redēpta* (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price*.

148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

RULE: The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.

Compare 139. Examples: *nihilō minus* (I, 5, 1), lit. *less by nothing*, = *nevertheless*; *paucis ante diēbus*, (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (lit. *before by a few days*).

a. *Eō . . . quō*, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the*. Example: *eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent* (I, 14, 3), lit. *he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly*, = *he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened*.

149. Ablative of Specification.

RULE: The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.

Examples: *linguā inter sē differunt* (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; *maior nātū*, *older (greater in birth)*.

a. The ablative is used with *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*. Example: *ipsis indignum* (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves*.

150. Ablative Absolute.

RULE: A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.

RULE: Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."

The construction is called *absolute* because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) *remōtis equis proelium commisit* (I, 25, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle*; (translated by prepositional phrase) *M Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus* (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of, etc.*; *eō dēprecātōre* (I, 9, 4), *by his mediation*; (translated by subordinate clause) *omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt* (I, 6, 13),

when everything was ready they set a day; *Sēquanīs invitīs ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; *monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat* (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) *locīs superiōribus occupātīs . . . conantur* (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous positions and tried, etc.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with *in*.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: *in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt* (I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. **RULE:** Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives *domī*, at home, and *rūrī*, in the country, are also in regular use. Examples: *Samarobrīvae* (V, 24, 1), at Samarobriva; *domī largiter posse* (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. **RULE:** No preposition is regularly used with *locō*, *locīs*, *parte*, *partibus* when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by *tōtus*.

Examples: *nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur* (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several places; *vulgō tōtis castrīs* (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So *ab* and *ex* are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with *in* if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: *ūnā ex parte* (I, 2, 7), on one side; *cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt* (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; *memoriā tenēbat* (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: *eō tempore* (I, 3, 14), at that time; *id quod ipsī diēbus vigintī aegerrimē cōfēcerant* (I, 13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in(within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: *eā tōtā nocte iērunt* (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab**, **bsque**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**, **tenus**.

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**. It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. **In** and **sub** with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively. **Subter** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, *a*); as, **flūmen est lātum**, *the river is wide*. An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, **flūmen lātum**, *the wide river*.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: *Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Examples: **homō bonus**, *a good man*; **mulierī bonae**, *to a good woman*; **bellōrum magnōrum**, *great wars*.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If *attributive*, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: **vir bonus et mulier**, *a good man and woman*; **bella et victōriae magnae**, *great wars and victories*.

2. If *predicative*, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: **hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī**, *the men and their characters are good*; **hominēs et arma sunt magnī**, *the men and their arms are large*; **montēs et flūmina sunt magna**, *the mountains and rivers are large*.

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: **multī**, *many men*; **multōrum**, *of many men*; **multae**, *many women*; **multārum**, *of many women*; **multa**, *many things*; **multārum rērum**, *of many things*.

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: **invītus vēnit**, lit. *he came unwilling*, = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; **prīmus vēnit**, lit. *he the first came*, = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, **īmus**, *infimus*, *the bottom of*; **medius**, *the middle of*; **summus**, *the top of*; **prīmus**, *the first part of*; **extrēmus**, *the last part of*; **reliquus**, *the rest of*. Examples: **in colle mediō** (I, 14, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; **summus mōns** (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; **prīmā nocte** (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*. Examples: **diūturniōrem impūnitātem** (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; **cupidius īsecūtī** (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam**, with or without a form of **possum**. Examples: **quam maximum numerum** (I, 3, 3), **quam maximum potest numerum** (I, 7, 4), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

162.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: *ego maneō, tū abis, I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: *utī suprà dēmōnstrāvimus* (II, 1, 1), *as I (lit. we) have said before.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: *Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.*

They correspond to *myself, himself, etc.*, in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself, etc.*, must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him*, where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: *Suī and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

Example: *eum videō quī sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.*

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: *In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject suī and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of *suī* or *suus*. Example: *Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).*

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with *inter* to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.* Examples: *inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent* (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: **Caesar exercitum dūxit**, *Caesar led (his) army*.

a. **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **sui**, and is used in the same way. See **164** and **165**.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. **Hic** refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: **hic liber**, *this book (near me)*.

169. **Iste** refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: **iste liber**, *that book (near you)*. When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. **Ille** refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: **ille liber**, *that book (yonder)*.

a. **Ille** and **hic** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. **Hic** is usually *the latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. **Is** is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When **is** is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—*the man, a man, such a man, that, etc.*

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. **Ipse** emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: **ipse Caesar eum laudat**, *Caesar himself praises him*; **ipse Caesar sē laudat**, *Caesar himself praises himself*.

a. Ipse is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: *meus ipsius liber*, *my own book (the book of me myself)*; *vester ipsorum liber*, *your own book (the book of you yourselves)*.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. RULE: *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.*

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, *a*, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: *Caesar, quem laudō*, *Caesar, whom I praise*; *ego, quī eum laudō*, *I, who praise him*; *Caesar et Cicerō, quī mē laudant*, *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*.

a. Coordinate Relative. It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and*, *but*, etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *relinquēbātur ūna via, quā ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go*. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *quī* (I, 15, 5), *they*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. RULE: *Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after sī, nisi, nē, and num.*

Example: *sī quis laudat*, *if anyone praises*.

175. RULE: *Aliquis (aliquī) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.*

Example: *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*.

176. *Quispiam* has almost exactly the same meaning as *aliquis*, but is rare. Example: *quispiam dicat*, *some one may say*.

177. RULE: *Quisquam and ūllus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.*

Examples: *neque quemquam laudō*, *nor do I praise anyone*; *cur quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. *Nesciō quis* (*nesciō quī*), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: *nesciō quis laudat*, *some one or other praises*.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. RULE: *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: *Caesar laudatus est*, *Caesar was praised*; *mulierēs laudatae sunt*, *the women were praised*.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: *multitūdō vēnerunt*, *a great number came*; *duo milia occisī sunt*, *two thousand were killed*.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: *homō et mulier occisī sunt*, *the man and the woman were killed*; *ego et tū vēnimus*, *you and I came*.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus*, *Caesar and Labienus came*; *neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit*, *neither Caesar nor Labienus came*; *filia atque unus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken*.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: *Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit* (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: *laudat*, *he praises*; *laudatur*, *he is praised*; *eī crēditur* (115, d) lit. *it is believed to him* = *he is believed*.

THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: *laudat, he praises; nōn laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?*

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*). Examples: *laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i. e., I give the command "let him praise."*

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the *potential*. Examples: *laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est quī laudet, he is a man who would praise.*

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: *laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises. Compare laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.*

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: *laudā, praise (thou); dēsilite (IV, 25, 11), jump down.*

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudārī, he says that Caesar is praised.*

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. RULE: *Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.*

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: *nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōnne laudat? does he not praise?*

b. RULE: *Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).*

But *nē . . . quidem, not even*, is used in statements. Examples: *nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise; nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.*

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: *laudāvit, he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; *laudāverat, he had praised*, means that the action was already completed in the past time; *laudābat, he was praising*, means that the action was going on in the past time; and *laudātūrus erat, he was going to praise*, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: *laudat, he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: *oppida sua omnia incendunt* (I, 5, 3), *they burned (burn) all their towns.*

b. With such expressions as *iam diū, iam pridem, for a long time, multōs annōs, for many years*, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē moneō, I have been warning you for many years.* There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with *dum*, etc., see 234, a.

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example; *laudābat, he was praising.*

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as *laudābat, he used to praise, or he kept praising.* It is less often used of attempted past action; as *laudābat, he tried to praise.*

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē monēbam, I had been warning you for many years.*

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: *laudābō, I shall or will praise, or be praising.*

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with *have*. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: *laudāvī, I have praised.*

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, *vēnī, I have come*, is nearly equivalent to *I am here*. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially *nōvī, cognōvī, I know* (literally *I have found out*), and *cōnsuēvī, I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: *laudāvī, I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: *laudāveram, I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: *vēneram, I had come, i. e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; cōnsuēveram, I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: *laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: *vēnerō, I shall have come, i. e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; cōnsuēverō, I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of *sum*. Examples: *laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.*

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived, planned But Caesar went" Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being

thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived, had planned But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

RULE: *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After *dum*, *while* (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: *laudet*, *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; *imperāvit ut laudāret*, *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

| | |
|------------|--|
| Present | = present or future |
| Imperfect | = imperfect or future to a past |
| Perfect | = perfect or future perfect |
| Pluperfect | = pluperfect or future perfect to a past |

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So *rogō quid faciās* regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do*. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by *rogō quid factūrus sis*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come*, or *I shall come*, *that I may praise*, *laudem*; *I came that I might praise*, *laudārem*. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the *rule of sequence of tenses*, can be followed.

RULE: *In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.*

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

| Principal Tenses | | | |
|-------------------|---|-------------|--|
| INDICATIVE | | SUBJUNCTIVE | |
| Present | rogō, <i>I ask</i> | Present | quid faciat, <i>what he is doing</i> |
| Future | rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i> | Perfect | quid fēcerit, <i>what he has done (or did)</i> |
| Present perfect | rogāvi, <i>I have asked</i> | | |
| Future perfect | rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i> | | |
| Historical Tenses | | | |
| Imperfect | rogābam, <i>I was asking</i> | Imperfect | quid faceret, <i>what he was doing</i> |
| Historical perf. | rogāvi, <i>I asked</i> | Pluperfect | quid fēcisset, <i>what he had done</i> |
| Pluperfect | rogāveram, <i>I had asked,</i> | | |

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, *cum sint* would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction *quod sunt*.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: *temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus dēfuerit* (II, 21, 9), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity*.

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: *diem dicunt quā diē conveniant* (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; *omne frūmentum combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad pericula subeunda essent* (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger*.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: *The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.*

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

| | | | |
|--|---------------------|------------------------|--|
| dicō eum | laudāre | laudātūrum esse | laudāvisse |
| lit. him | to be praising | to be about to praise | to have praised |
| <i>I say that he</i> | <i>is praising</i> | <i>will praise</i> | <i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i> |
| dicam eum, | | | |
| <i>I shall say that he is praising</i> | | <i>will praise</i> | <i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i> |
| dixi eum, | | | |
| <i>I said that he</i> | <i>was praising</i> | <i>would praise</i> | <i>had praised</i> |

a. With such perfects as *dēbuī, licuit, oportuit, potuī*, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc. Example: *laudāre potuī* lit. *I was able to praise*, = *I could have praised*.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by *fore (futūrum esse) ut*, *it will (would) be that*, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: *dicīt fore ut timeat*, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears*, = *he says that he will fear*; *dixīt fore ut laudārētur*, lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised*, = *he said that he would be praised*.

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: *Caesar vēnit*, *Caesar came*; *Caesar nōn veniet*, *Caesar will not come*.

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, *b*) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called *potential*. Examples: *Caesar veniat*, *Caesar would come*; *Caesar nōn vēnissēt*, *Caesar would not have come*; *velim*, *I should like*.

208. The Potential Subjunctive (184, *b*) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase *aliquis dīcat*, *some one may say*. In an independent sentence the student should always express *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, by such words as *possum* and *licet*. Example: *nēmō dubitet*, but usually *nēmō dubitare potest*, *no one can doubt*.

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: *quis veniet?* *who will come?* *quis veniat?* *who would come?* *quis dubitet?* *who can doubt?* (implying that no one can)?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: *quid faciam?* *what shall I do?* *what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: *cūr dubitem?* *why should I doubt?*

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: *quis vēnit?* *who came?* *quālis est?* *what sort of man is he?* *ubi est?* *where is he?*

213. RULE: Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: *scribitne epistulam?* *is he writing a letter?* *epistulamne scribit?* *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer *yes*, the interrogative particle is *nōnne*.

Example: *nōnne epistulam scribit?* *is he not writing a letter?*

c. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer *no*, the interrogative particle is *num*.

Example: *num epistulam scribit?* *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. *Utrum* may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or *-ne* may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by *an*; *or not* is *annōn*. Examples: *utrum pugnāvit an fūgit?* *pugnāvitne an fūgit?* *pugnāvit an fūgit?* *did he fight or run away?* *pugnāvit annōn?* *did he fight or not?*

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use *ita*, *sānē*, etc., for *yes*, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., for *no*. Example: *epistulamne scribit?* *scribit*, *yes*; *nōn scribit*, *no*.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is *nē* (188, *b*).

217. *RULE: An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.*

218. *RULE: A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.*

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: *venīte, come (ye); mementō, remember.*

219. *RULE: A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōlī, nōlīte, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.*

A prohibition is less often expressed by *cavē* (with or without *nē*), *take care*, and the present subjunctive; or by *nē* and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: *nōlī dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāverīs.*

220. *RULE: A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.*

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and are usually introduced by *utinam* (not to be translated).

a. RULE: A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.

Example: (*utinam*) *adsit, may he be here!*

b. RULE: A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.

c. RULE: A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with utinam.

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: *utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!*

COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coordinating conjunction*. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive *quod* clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the *ut* clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quōd, or a relative.*

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: *hominēs mīsit quī vidērent*, *he sent men to see*, lit. *who were to see*.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *quō* is used. Example: *vēnit quō facilius vidēret*, *he came that he might see more easily*, lit. *by which the more easily he might see*.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction *ut* is used. Example: *vēnit ut vidēret*, *he came to see, that he might see, or in order to see*; *venit ut videat*, *he comes to see*.

b. In negative clauses the conjunction *nē* is always used. Example: *hoc fēcit nē quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret*, *he did this that no one might see, or to keep anyone from seeing*.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. **RULE:** *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, *a*. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: *mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent* (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; *incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit* (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*; *tam fortis est ut pugnet*, *he is so brave that he would fight, or as to fight, or that he fights*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses*, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command*, *I hinder*, *the result is*.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses*. The older name, *substantive purpose clauses*, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: *imperō ut eās*, *I command you to go*, does not mean *I command in order that you may go*, but rather *I give the command "go"*.

a. RULE: Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*.

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command*, *permit*, *persuade*, *request*, *resolve*, *strive*, *urge*, *wish*, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after *iubeō*, *command*, *cōnor*, *attempt*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*. See 280, a. *Ut* is often omitted after verbs of *asking*, *commanding*, and *wishing*, especially after *volō*. The subjunctive, usually without *ut*, is often used with *oportet*, *it is right*, and *licet*, *it is permitted*; but see 276. Examples: *cīvitātī persuāsīt ut exīrent* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; *cīvitātī persuāsīt nē exīrent*, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; *oportet eat*, *he ought to go*; *eī licet eat*, *he may go*; *obsidēs utī dent perficit* (I, 9, 11), *he causes them to give hostages*.

b. RULE: Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with *nē* meaning *that*, or *ut* meaning *that not*.

But *nē nōn*, *that not*, is often used instead of *ut*. Examples: *timeō nē veniat*, *I fear that he will come* (originally *timeō: nē veniat*, *I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come*); *timeō ut* (or *nē nōn*) *veniat*, *I fear that he will not come* (originally *timeō: veniat*, *I am afraid: let him or may he, come*; *ut* or *nē nōn* was then used as the opposite of *nē*).

c. RULE: Verbs meaning *avoid*, *hinder*, *prevent*, and *refuse* may take the subjunctive with *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōminus*.

But the infinitive may be used instead. *Nē* is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, *quīn* after a *negative*, *quōminus* after *either* positive or negative. Examples: *eum impediō nē*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impediō quīn*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I do not hinder him from coming*; *neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset* (I, 31, 24), *and that they would not refuse to be*.

SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. RULE: Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn when the subject is not a conscious agent.

Compare 228, *a*. Example: *montēs efficiunt ut nōn exīre possint*, *the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave*.

b. RULE: Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: *hīs rēbus fiēbat ut vagārentur* (I, 2, 11), *the result was that they wandered*.

c. RULE: Such phrases as mōs est, cōsuētūdō est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with *ut* or *nē*) may be used with such phrases, especially with *iūs est*, *lēs est*. Example: *mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent*, *it is their custom to fight on horseback*.

d. RULE: Negated verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quīn.

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with *num*, *an*, or *sī* is used, as *whether* is in English. *Dubitō* with the infinitive means *hesitate*. Example: *nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit*, *there is no doubt that he did this*.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.*

The subjunctive is not used in *all* relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. RULE: *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.*

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like *is* = (*such*) *a man* (171, a), *eius modī*, *such*, or an adjective modified by *tam*. Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses*. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *is est quī pugnet*, *he is a man who fights*; *secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent* (IV, 34, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp* (= *such storms that they kept*); *tam improbus quī nōn fateātur* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

b. RULE: *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.*

So after *est quī*, *there is a man who*; *nōn* or *nēmō* or *nūllus est quī*, *there is no one who*; *quis est quī?* *who is there who?* *sōlus* or *ūnus est quī* *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *nūllī sunt quī putent*, *there are none who think*; *erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exīre possent* (I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave.*

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can*, *could*, or by *should*, *ought*. Examples: *ūnum (iter) vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur* (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved*; *neque commissum intellegeret quārē timēret* (I, 14, 6), *he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.*

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. RULE: *Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.*

Example: *ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam* (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. RULE: *A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.*

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: *Dumnorigī, quī principātum obtinēbat, persuādet* (I, 3, 14), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by *Dumnorigī (is principātum obtinēbat) persuādet*.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum* which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: *Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.*

See 198, a, 2. Example: *dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est* (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

b. RULE: *Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i. e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.*

Example: *quoad potuit, restitit* (IV, 12, 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

Until

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. RULE: Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli fuērunt liberī dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. RULE: Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Examples: *Gallī expectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.*

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. RULE: Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Gallī inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. RULE: Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Example: *Gallī magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the *prius* or *ante* standing in the principal clause, and the *quam* at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does. Example: *Gallī prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.*

After

237. RULE: *Postquam*, *after*, *ut*, *ubi*, *when* (*after*, not *while*), *simul ac*, *cum primum*, *as soon as* (*immediately after*), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.

Example: *ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 7, 6), *when they were informed of it they sent envoys*.

Cum

238. Cum has three chief uses:—

temporal, *when*, *after*;
causal, *since*, *because*;
adversative (concessive), *although*.

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time*, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with **cum** is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. Causal and Adversative Cum.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *since* or *although* is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; *his cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; *cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening*.

240. Temporal cum. Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is always used with the indicative *when* the principal verb is present or future.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive *when* the principal verb is past.

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.

a. Clauses of Date.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *tum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders.*

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *whenever* is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite.*

c. Inverted Cum Clauses.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the *cum* clause.

In the most common type of *cum* clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the *cum* clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī (sunt) inter sē* (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another (for cum prōcessisset, cohortātī sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.).*

242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: *cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur* (II, 1, 1), *when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him* (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); *cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est* (I, 4, 2), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this *cum* clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *whenever* is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: *cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvelle poterant* (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent (in each of many cases), they could neither draw it out, etc.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam*, *enim*, *etenim*, *for*, introduce coordinate clauses.

244. **RULE:** *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, *because*, *since*, *are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.*

When the writer wishes to imply *because* (*as he said*), (*as he thought*), (*as I said*), (*as I thought*), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) *reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt* (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight*; (with the subjunctive) *quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), *he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted.*

245. **RULE:** *Cum*, *since*, *because*, and often *quī*, *since he*, *etc.*, *are used with the subjunctive.*

But the indicative is often used with *quī*, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If *praesertim*, *especially*, stands in a subjunctive *quī* or *cum* clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) *illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentirent, negōtium suscepērunt* (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter*; (with the indicative) *fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt* (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc.* For example with *cum*, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. RULE: *Quamquam*, *although*, and *etsī*, *tametsī*, *even if*, *although*, are used with the indicative.

Example: *etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur* (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.* But *quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet*.

247. RULE: *Cum*, *although*, and less commonly *quamvis* (in Cicero), *however much*, *however*, *although*, *quī*, *although he*, etc., *ut*, *although*, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for *cum* see 239) *quamvis senex sit, fortis est*, *however old he may be, he is brave*; *ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent* (Caes. III, 9, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* But the indicative is sometimes used with *quī* when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. RULE: *Substantive clauses with quod*, *that*, employ the indicative.

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: *illa praetereō, quod Maelium occidit* (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the *quod* clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that*, *whereas*. Example: *quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere* (compare I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions *sī, iŕ, sī nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. Undetermined Present or Past (253). *sī pugnat, vincit, if he fights he conquers; sī pugnāvit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254). *sī pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. More Vivid (Confident) Future (256). *sī pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257). *sī pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying

that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: *A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.*

Examples: *sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave I praise him; quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnāvit nōn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.*

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: *A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: *sī fortis esset eum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset eum nōn laudāvissem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); sī pugnāvisset eum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).*

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought*, or such expressions as *it would be hard*, or *just*, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: *sī fortis esset pugnāre poterat, if he were brave he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); sī fortis fuisset pugnāre dēbuit or dēbu-erat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).*

B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him*, means *if I shall see him I shall tell him*, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him*, means *if he shall have arrived first*, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: *sī pugnābit eum laudābō*, *if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him*; *quī pugnāverit laudābitur*, *whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised*.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: *sī pugnet vincat*, *if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer*; *quī pugnet laudētur*, *whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised*; *sī nōn pugnāverit eum nōn laudem*, *if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him*.

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: *sī veniat hīc adsumus*, *if he should come we are here*.

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single

word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: *damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat* (I, 4, 3), (*if*) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him*; *dicat*, he would say (*if he should be asked*); *velim*, *I should like*. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. RULE: *Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.*

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often *nē*. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will*, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us*; *modo nē* (or *nōn*) *discēdat eum vidēbō*, *if only he do not leave I shall see him*.

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. RULE: *The subjunctive is used with ac sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, as if, just as if.*

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: *currit quasi timeat*, *he runs as if he were afraid*; *cucurrit quasi timēret*, *he ran as if he were afraid*.

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.*

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as *he asked "where are you going?"*; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I (or he) was going*. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. RULE: *Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) *quis veniat?* *who would come?* (indirect) *rogō quis veniat,* *I ask who would come;* (direct) *quid faciam?* *what am I to do?* (indirect) *rogāvi quid facerem,* *I asked what I was to do.*

264. * RULE: *All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) *quis vēnit?* *who came?* (indirect) *rogō quis vēnerit,* *I ask who came;* (direct) *ubi est?* *where is he?* (indirect) *mihi dixit ubi esset,* *he told me where he was.*

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (213) the indirect form is introduced by *num* or *-ne*, *whether* (no difference in meaning). *Sī* is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether*. Examples: (direct) *venitne?* *is he coming?* (indirect) *rogō num veniat,* or *rogō veniatne,* *I ask whether he is coming;* *expectāvit sī venīrent,* *he waited to see whether they would come.*

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but *or not* is expressed by *necne*, instead of *annōn*. Examples: *rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset, an fūgisset,* *I asked whether he had fought or run away;* *rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset necne,* *I asked whether he had fought or not.*

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave."* *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave.*

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse *one* means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

Principal Clauses

266. Declarative Sentences. RULE: Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: *miles est fortis*, the soldier is brave, becomes *dixit militem esse fortem*, he said that the soldier was brave.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences. RULE: Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is *nē*. Examples: *ad Id. Apr. revertiminī*, return about the thirteenth of April, becomes *respondit: . . . ad Id. Apr. reverterentur* (I, 7, 19), he replied . . . : (that) they should return, etc.; *is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . dēspiceret* (I, 13, 14), he should not despise (from an original *nōlī dēspicere* (219), do not despise).

268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE: An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: *respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet* (I, 44, 24), what did he want (for an original *quid tibi vīs*, what do you want?)?

II. RULE: An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266). Example: *respondit: . . . num memoriam dēpōnere posse* (I, 14, 8), could he forget (for an original *I can not forget [can I?]*)?

III. RULE. A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: *incūsāvit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose (for an original *iūdicet*. See 210, a)?

269. Subordinate Clauses. RULE: Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: *incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea quod . . . superāssent* (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original *iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis*).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by *et*, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since *quō* connects with the preceding sentence *posse* might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking*.

a. **Repraesentatiō.** But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: *respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pacem esse factūrum* (I, 14, 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: *dīcit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset*, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.* So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after *dīcit*, imperfect after *dīxit*, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after *dīcit*, pluperfect after *dīxit*, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of *suī* or *suus* (rarely of *ipse*). See 165.

All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: *hunc militem laudō, I praise this soldier*, may become *dīcō mē hunc militem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier*, or *dīcit sē illum militem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier*. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now to then, here to there*, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, *a*. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in *-ūrus esse*. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in *-ūrus fuisse*.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. *Sī pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him*, becomes, after either *dicit* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*; *sī pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him*, becomes, after either *dicit* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*.

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. **RULE:** *The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.*

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with *quod*, etc. (244). It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: *Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; *erat eī praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent* (I, 23, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said *nisi meae copiae visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen*).

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.

Example: *cum certissimae rēs accēderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxisset* (I, 19, 1), since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the *Helvetii*.

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish*, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: *ire potest, he can go; ire potuit, he could have gone*, literally *he was able to go; ire dēbet, he ought to go; cōstituērunt comparāre* (I, 3, 2), *they determined to prepare*.

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: *fortis esse cōnātur, he tries to be brave*.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With *licet, it is permitted*, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: *ire opertet, one must go*, literally *to go is right; ire oportuit, one ought to have gone* (205, a), literally *to go was right; eī ire licuit, he might have gone*, literally *to go was permitted to him; ire necesse est, one must go*.

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accusative.

sative. But with *licet* a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: *fortem esse oportet*, *one ought to be brave*; *virō licet esse fortī* (*fortem*), *a man may be brave*, lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*.

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. *RULE:* The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as *decet*, *libet*, *oportet*, *placet*, *praestat*, *visum est*, and of *est* with a predicate noun or adjective.

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, *a*, and 229, *c*. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with *licet* the dative is much more common. Examples: *mē ire oportet*, *I ought to go*; *Caesarem ire oportuit*, *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, *a*); *mē ire necesse est*, *I must go*.

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. *RULE:* The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) *Caesar vēnisse fertur*, *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) *Caesarem vēnisse dictum est*, *it has been said that Caesar came*.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, *a*). Example: *militēs pugnāre iussit*, *he ordered the soldiers to fight*.

b. With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: *volō eum ire*, *I wish him to go*; *cupiō mē esse clēmentem* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful*.

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *posse* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potiri posse spērant* (I, 3. 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive. RULE: *The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.*

Example: *cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain*.

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fūgit* may mean *he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled*, or *because he had been conquered he fled*; *victus fugiet* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc visō* (150) *fūgit*, lit. *this having been seen*.

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses **dum** with the present indicative (234, a,) or **cum** with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: *he was killed (while) fighting*, sometimes **pugnāns occisus est**, usually either **dum pugnāt occisus est**, or **cum pugnāret, occisus est**; *seeing this he fled*, **cum hoc vidisset fūgit**.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always **currit**, never **est currēns**.

285.

FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of **sum**, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: **praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant** (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them*, = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as **laudandus est**, *he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: **Caesar est mihi laudandus**, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me*, = *I must praise Caesar*; **mihi pugnandum fuit** (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me*, = *I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially **cūrō**, *cause, have* (literally *take care*), **dō**, *give over*, **suscipiō**, *undertake*. Examples: **pontem faciendum cūrat** (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; **cōsulibus senātus rem publicam dēfendendam dedit**, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls*.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually

be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: **vīsus fūgit**, *having been seen he fled*; **Caesare visō fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*; literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled*. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: **Caesarem cōspicātus fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habēō**. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: **magnās cōpiās coāctās habet**, *he has great forces (which he has) collected*, or *he has collected great forces* (and still has them); while **magnās cōpiās coēgit**, *he (has) collected great forces*, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam**, *after the founding of the city*; literally, *after the city founded*.

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: **fug:endi causā** (99, a), *for the sake of fleeing*; **ad persuādendum eī** (115), *for persuading him*; **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā**, **videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā**, and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī**. In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā**, **urbis** is the genitive mod-

ifying *causā* and *videndae* agrees with *urbis*, literally *for the sake of the city to be seen*. Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city*.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: *If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: *eī crēdendī causā*, *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor* (145) is used. Example: *spēs potiundī oppidī* (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town*.

II. RULE: *If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.*

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) *ad effēmīnandōs animōs* (I, 1, 8), *to weakening the courage*; (usually) *urbis videndae causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes *urbem videndī causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With *causā* and *grātiā* it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: *bellandī cupiditās*, *a desire of fighting*; *Caesaris* (or *Caesarem*) *videndī cupidus*, *desirous of seeing Caesar*; *bellandī causā vēnit*, *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting)*.

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—*meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, or *vestrī* with a genitive in *-ī* (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: *suī cōservandī causā*, *for the sake of saving themselves*. The usual gerund would be *sē cōservandī*; the gerundive *suī cōservandōrum*.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially *ad* expressing purpose. Examples: *parātus ad proficiscendum*, *ready to set*

out; *ad Caesarem videndum* (gerundive, see 289, II), *venit, he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions *ab, dē, ex, in,* and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: *in quaerendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis* (III, 25, 4), *by furnishing stones.*

THE SUPINE

295. *RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

It may govern a direct object. Examples: *gratulātum vēnērunt* (I, 30, 2), *they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium* (I, 11, 4), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. *RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).*

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs *audiō, cognōscō, dicō, faciō, videō,* is most commonly found; and with the adjectives *facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mirābilis,* and the expressions *fās est, nefās est, opus est.* Example: *perfacile factū* (I, 3, 16) *lit. very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.*

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. *The Months.* The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were *Iānuārius* (-a, -um), *Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis* (-e), *Maius, Iūnius, Quīntilis, Sextilis, September* (-bris, -bre), *Octōber, November,* and *December.* Later *Quīntilis* was changed to *Iūlius,* in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* to *Augustus,* in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. *Calends, Nones, and Ides.* The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called

the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (*Kalendae*,—*ârum*, *f. pl.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnae*,—*ârum*, *f. pl.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (*Īdūs*,—*uum*, *f. pl.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example *a. d. IV. Īd. Iān.* = *ante diem quārtum Īdūs Iānuāriās*. The logical, but less usual form is *diē quārtō ante Īdūs Iānuāriās*, *on the fourth day before the Ides of January*. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH)

(ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = *Kal. Iān.*

($13 + 1 - 4 = 10$) Jan. 10 = *a. d. iv. Īd. Iān.* ($13 + 1 - 10 = 4$).

($28 + 2 - 8 = 22$) Feb. 22 = *a. d. viii. Kal. Mār.* ($28 + 2 - 22 = 8$).

($7 + 1 - 4 = 4$) July 4 = *a. d. iv. Nōn. Iūl.* ($7 + 1 - 4 = 4$).

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of *laudō*, *moneō*, and *audiō*, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *partior* (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in Italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

| | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| ă = a in <i>mat</i> . | ē = e in <i>mē</i> . | ō = o in <i>note</i> . |
| ā = a in <i>mate</i> . | ē = e in <i>fern</i> . | ō = o in <i>or</i> . |
| ä = a in <i>arm</i> . | ī = i in <i>is</i> . | ū = u in <i>up</i> . |
| ą = a in <i>Cuba</i> . | ī = i in <i>ice</i> . | ū = u in <i>use</i> . |
| ě = e in <i>met</i> . | ō = o in <i>not</i> . | ų = u in <i>rude</i> . |

y has the sounds of i, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= y in youth), or to indicate an i sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant y, as in *Lūcius* = lū'shyūs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark ('), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark (").

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (*Nervii*, *Helvetii*, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (*Nervians*, *Helvetians*, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.

VOCABULARY

A., *abbr. for Aulus* (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 6.

a., *abbr. for ante*. I, 6.

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before tē, and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after.* I, 1.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, 12.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. I, 11.

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. IV, 15.

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir tree.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iunctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], disjoin, detach.

abs, *see ā*.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. III, 14.

absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of absum*, be absent], absent, at a distance. I, 32; III, 17.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. III, 14.

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, 22.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. III, 2.

absum, abesse, āfuī, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1.

abundō, *i.*, *intr.* [unda, wave], overflow; abound.

ac, *see atque*.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; accēdēbat, it was added. I, 19.

accelerō, *i.*, *intr.* [ad+celerō, hasten], hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of accipiō*, accept], acceptable, beloved by (*with dative*). I, 3.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; accidit, it happens. I, 14.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *tr.* [ad+caedō, cut], cut into.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad+capiō, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, 14.

acclivis, -e, *adj.* [ad+clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, 29.

acclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. II, 18.

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco (āk'ō), a chief of the Senones.

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of accommodō*, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, 13.

accommodō, *i.*, *tr.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. II, 21.

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, intr. [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. I, 22.

accūsō, 1, tr. [ad+causa, cause, case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I, 16.

acerbē, adv. [acerbus, harsh], harshly, with pain.

acerbitās, -tātis, f. [acerbus, harsh], harshness, rigor.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj., harsh, biting, severe.

ācerrimē, see ācritēr.

acervus, -i, m., a heap, mass. II, 32.

aciēs, -ēī (old gen., aciē), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; **prima**, the van; **media**, the centre; **novissima**, the rear. I, 22.

acquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [ad+quaerō, seek], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.

ācritēr, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerrimē** (App. 40). I, 26.

āctuarius, -a, -um, adj. [agō, move, drive], fitted with oars.

āctus, see adigō.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part.* of acuō, sharpen], sharpened, pointed.

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, 1.

adāctus, see adigō.

adaequō, 1, tr. [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I, 48; II, 32.

adamō, 1, tr. [amō, love], love strongly, covet. I, 31.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], place on; add.

adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, 3.

ādēemptus, see adimō.

adeō, adv. [eō, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.

adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7.

adeptus, see adipiscor.

adequitō, 1, intr. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. I, 46.

adhaerēō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesum, intr. [haerēō, stick], cling or stick to.

adhibeō, 2, tr. [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, 20.

adhortor, 1, tr. [hortor, encourage], encourage, incite.

adhūc, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. III, 22.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, —. intr. [iaceō, lie], lie near or close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., Adiatunnus (ā'dī-a-tūn'ūs), the leader of the Sotiates. III, 22.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, 1.

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, tr. [emō, take], take away, remove.

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus sum, tr., attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, 43; II, 15.

adiudicō, 1, tr. [iudicō, judge], adjudge, assign.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iunctum, tr. [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, 2.

adiutor, -ōris, m. [adiuvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17.

administer, -trī, m. [minister, servant], attendant; priest.

administrō, 1, tr. [minister, servant],

serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 20.

admīror, 1, *tr.* [mīror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (*a horse*). I, 22.

admodum, *adv.* [modus, measure], up to the measure; very much, very; with *num.*, fully; with *neg.*, at all. III, 13.

admoneō, 2, *tr.* [moneō, warn], warn.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, *intr.*, grow up.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *tr.* [orior, arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.

adsum, *adesse*, *affui*, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.

adolēscēns, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part.* of *adolēscō*, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.

adolēscēntia, -ae, *f.* [adolēscēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

adolēscēntulus, -i, *m.* [*dim.* of *adolēscēns*, youth], a very young man. III, 21.

adventus, -ūs, *m.* [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

adversārius, -rī, *m.* [adversus, turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, *um*, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *advertō*, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; *adversō flumine*, up the river; in *adversum ōs*, full in the face. I, 13.

adversus, *prep. w. acc.* [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

advocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call to, summon.

advolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.

aedificium, -ci, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificō, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house + faciō, make], build, construct. III, 9.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

aegrō, *adv.* [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, aegrius; *sup.*, aegerrimē (App. 40). I, 13.

Aemilius, -li, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mil'i-ūs), I, 23.

aequāliter, *adv.* [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

aequinoctium, -ti, *n.* [aequus, equal + nox, night], the equinox. IV, 36.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; *animi aequitās*, contentment. I, 40.

aequō, 1, *tr.* [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; *aequus animus*, equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.

aerāria, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. III, 21.

aes, *aeris*, *n.* copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; *aes aliēnum*, another's money, debt. IV, 31.

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. I, 54; II, 2.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aestimō, value], valuation.

aestimō, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.

aestivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aestus, heat; aestās, summer], of summer, summer.

aestuārium, -rī, *n.* [aestus, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging; tide; *minuente aestū*, at ebb tide. III, 12.

aetās, *aetātis*, *f.*, period of life, age. II, 16.

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, everlasting.

afferō, *afferre*, *attulī*, *allātum*, *tr.* [ad + ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ad + faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; *magnō dolore afficere*, to annoy greatly. I, 2.

affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [ad + figō, fix], fasten to. III, 14.

affingō, -fingere, -finxī, -fictum, *tr.* [ad + fingō, invent], invent in addition.

affinitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18.

affirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [affirmō, affirm; ad + firmus, strong], declaration, assertion.

affixus, *see* affigō.

affictō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of affigō, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, 12.

affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fictum, *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, 31.

affore, *fut. inf. of* adsum.

Āfricus, -ī, *m.*, Africus (ā'f-rī-kūs), the southwest wind.

āfui, *see* absum.

Agedincum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Agedincum (āj'ē-dīng'kūm), *now* Sens.

ager, **agrī**, *m.*, field, land; district, territory. I, 2.

agger, **aggeris**, *m.*, material for earth-works, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. II, 12.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [ad + gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. I, 12.

aggrogō, 1, *tr.* [ad + grex, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. IV, 26.

agitō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of agō, move; discuss], discuss.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; primum agmen, the van; novissimum or extrēmum agmen, the rear. I, 15.

agō, **agere**, **ēgi**, **āctum**, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grātiās); plead (causam or rem); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. I, 13.

agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, 17.

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19.

alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, 41; IV, 24.

ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [āla, wing], on the wing; *pl. as noun*, auxiliaries. I, 51.

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk.

Alesia, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Alesia (a-lē'zhyā), *now* Alise Ste. Reine.

aliās, *adv.* [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.

aliēnō, 1, *tr.* [aliēnus, of another], make another's or foreign; estrange, alienate; aliēnātā mente, maddened.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; aes aliēnum, debt; aliēnissimī, entire strangers. I, 15.

aliō, *adv.* [alius, other], to another place, person or thing, elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, *adv.* [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. I, 40.

aliquandō, *adv.* [aliquis, some], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantō, *adv.* [aliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. III, 13.

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, considerable; *neut. as noun with partitive gen.*, a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -quid, and **aliqui**, -qua, -quod, *indef. pron.* [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, 14.

aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.* [quot, how many], some, a few, several. III, 1.

aliter, *adv.* [alius, other], otherwise; aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than. II, 19.

alius, -a, -ud, *gen. alius* (App. 32), another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; *in pl.*, some . . . others. I, 1.

allātus, *see* afferō.

alliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, *tr.*, attract, allure, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allo-

broges (ă-lōb' rō-jēz), *a powerful Gallic people in the Province.* I, 6.

alō, alere, alui, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, 18.

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl. (Cghī), the Alpes (ăl'pēz), *better, the Alps.* I, 10.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second; the one; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other; **alteri . . . alteri**, the one party . . . the other. I, 2.

alteranus, -a, -um, adj. [alter, the other], one after another, in turn.

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). I, 8.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. I, 2.

alūta, -ae, f., soft leather. III, 13.

ambactus, -i, m., vassal.

Ambarri, -ōrum, m. (Cf), the Ambarri (ăm-băr'i), *clients of the Haedui.* I, 11.

Ambiāni, -ōrum, m. (ABde), the Ambiani (ăm'bi-ā'nī). II, 4.

Ambibarii, -ōrum, m. (Bbc), the Ambibarii (ăm'bi-bă'rī-i).

Ambiliati, -ōrum, m., the Ambiliati (ăm'bi-lī'a-tī), III, 9.

Ambiorix, -igis, m., Ambiorix (ăm-bī'ō-riks), *king of the Eburones.*

Ambivareti, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Ambivareti (ăm'bi-văr'ē-tī), *clients of the Haedui.*

Ambivariti, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Ambivariti (ăm'bi-văr'i-tī). IV, 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

amentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. I, 40.

amentum, -i, n., strap or thong, *fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.*

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship. I, 3.

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; *as noun, m.*, a friend, an ally. I, 3.

amittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, 28.

amor, -ōris, m. [amō, love], love. I, 20.

amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely;

comp., **amplius**, more, farther. I, 35; II, 16.

amplificō, 1, tr. [amplus, large+faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, 14.

amplitūdō, -inis, f. [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, 3.

amplius, see amplē and amplus.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius, comp.** *as noun*, more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, 15.

an, conj., *used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather.* I, 40; IV, 14.

Anartēs, -ium, m., the Anartes (a-năr'tēz), *a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.*

Ancalitēs, -um, m. (Ac), the Ancalites (ăn-kăl'i-tēz).

anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. I, 26.

ancora, -ae, f., anchor; *in ancoris*, at anchor. III, 13.

Andebrogius, -gi, m., Andebrogius (ăn'dē-brō'jyūs). II, 3.

Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -ōrum, m. (Cc), the Andes (ăn'dēz) or Andi (ăn'dī). II, 35.

ānfractus, -ūs, m., circuitous route.

angulus, -i, m., corner.

angustē, adv. [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. IV, 23.

angustiae, -arum, f. pl. [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, 9.

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; *in angustō*, in a critical condition. I, 2.

anima, -ae, f., breath, life, soul.

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. and intr. [animus, mind+ad+vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; **animadvertere in**, punish. I, 19.

animal, -ālis, n. [anima, breath of life], a living creature, animal.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animī causā**, for amusement; **in animō habēre**, intend. I, 1.

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], of last year.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year. I, 3.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], yearly. I, 16.

anser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

ante (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance of. I, 3.

antēā, *adv.* [ante, before+eā, this], formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* I, 17.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

antecursor, -ōris, *m.* [currō, run], fore-runner; *pl.*, vanguard.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear. App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, 14.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. IV, 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], put before, prefer.

antiquitus, *adv.* [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

Antistius, -tī, *m.*, Gaius Antistius Reginus (gā'yūs ān-tīs'tī-ūs rē-jī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Antonius (mār'kūs ān-tō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants, afterward triumvir.

Ap., *abbr. for* Appius (āp'ī-ūs), a Roman praenomen.

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertum, *tr.*, open, expose.

apertē, *adv.* [apertus, open], openly, manifestly.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* aperīō], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō**, on the unprotected flank. I, 25.

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (ā-pōl'ō),

apparō, 1, *tr.* [ad+parō, prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.

appellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. III, 12.

appetō, -petere, -petivī (-petiī), -itum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+petō, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.

applicō, 1, *tr.* [ad+plicō, fold], apply; **sē applicāre**, lean.

apportō, 1, *tr.* [ad+portō, carry], bring. **approbō**, 1, *tr.* [ad+probō, approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [ad+propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. II, 10.

appulsus, *see* appellō.

April., *abbr. for* Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of April, April. I, 6.

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17.

aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water], getting water. IV, 11.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard, (*as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion*). IV, 25.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (āk'wī-lē-ya), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10.

aquilifer, -erī, *m.* [aquila, eagle+ferō, bear], standard-bearer.

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (āk'wī-tā'ni-a), Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. I, 1.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian, *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wī-tā'ni), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. I, 1.

Arar, **Araris** (*acc. -im*), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ā'rār), the modern Saone. I, 12.

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, umpire, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (*of the arbiter*), opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36.

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.

ardēō, ardēre, ārsi, ārsum, *intr.*, burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.

Arduenna, -ae, *f.* (ABig), Arduenna (ār'dū-ēn'a), better the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul.

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. II, 33.

Arecomici, Arecomici (ār'ō-kōm'i-si), see Volcae.

Aremoricae, -ārum, *f.* (Bbcd), *adj.*, maritime, Aremorian.

argentum, -i, *n.*, silver; silver plate or coin.

argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay.

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. IV, 24.

ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. II, 32.

Ariovistus, -i, *m.*, Ariovistus (ār'i-ō-vīs'tūs), a king of the Germans. I, 31; IV, 16.

Aristius, -ti, *m.*, Marcus Aristius (mār'-kūs a-ris'ti-ūs), a military tribune.

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. I, 4.

armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. II, 10.

armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; armātus, *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, armed; armāti, as *noun*, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.

Arpinēius, -i, *m.*, Gaius Arpinetus (gā'yūs ār'pi-nē'yūs), a knight in Caesar's army.

arripō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [ad+rapō, seize] take or seize hurriedly.

arroganter, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arro-

gant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art; *pl.*, the arts.

artē, *adv.* [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.

articulus, -i, *m.*, joint.

artificium, -ci, *n.* [ars, art + faciō, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.

artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, dense, thick.

Arvernus, -i, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'ni), possibly the Arvernians. I, 31.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+scandō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21.

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21.

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). I, 5.

aspectus, -ūs, *m.* [aspiciō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.

asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, violent.

assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ad+sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.

assistō, assistere, astitī, —, *intr.* [ad+sistō, stand], stand by or near.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. IV, 1.

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.

at, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.

atque, ac, (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. I, 1.

Atrebās, -bātis, *m.*, (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). II, 4.

Ātrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Atrius (kwīn'tūs ā'trī-ūs), one of Caesar's officers.

attexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [ad+texō, weave], weave on.

attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1.

attribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, tr. [ad+tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III, 1.

attuli, see afferō.

Atuatuca, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatuca (āw'ū-āt'ū-kā), a stronghold of the Eburones.

Atuatuci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatuci (āw'ū-āt'ū-si). II, 4.

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; **auctor esse, advise.** III, 17.

auctōritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3.

auctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of augeō, increase], increased, advanced. I, 43.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18.

audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., audācius; sup., audācissimē. I, 16.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. I, 18.

audiō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient. I, 39; II, 12.

auditō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV, 5.

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18.

Aulerci, -ōrum, m., the Aulerci (aw-lēr'si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Eburovices (ēb'ū-rō-vi'sēz), (Bd), III, 17; (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nōm'a-ni), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brān'ō-vi'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī'a-blīn'tēz), (Bc), II, 34.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], of gold, gold.

auriga, -ae, m., charioteer. IV, 33.

auris, -is, f., ear.

Aurunculēius, -i, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 11.

Ausci, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Ausci (aw'si). III, 27.

ausus, see audeō.

aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. I, 1.

autem, conj., but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, 2.

autumnus, -i, m., autumn.

auxi, see augeō.

auxiliāris, -e adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; m. pl. as noun, auxiliary troops. III, 25.

auxilior, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29.

auxilium, -li, n. [augeō, increase, help, assistance, aid; pl., auxiliary troops; reinforcements. I, 11.

Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -i, n. (Ce), Avaricum (ā-vār'i-kūm), the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, 40.

āvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.

āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; pf. part. as adj., with back turned. I, 16.

avis, -is, f., bird. IV, 10.

avus, -i, m., grandfather. I, 12.

Axona, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axona (āk'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. II, 5.

B.

Bacēnis, -is, f. (Ah), Bacenis (bā-sē-nīs), the forest Bacenis, between the Cherusci and the Suebi.

Baculus, -i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'lī-ūs seks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs). II, 25.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl'ē-ā-rīk), (i.e., coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca). II, 7.

balteus, -i, m., sword belt.

Balventius, -tī, *m.*, Titus Balventius (tī' tūs bāl-vēn'shyūs), *one of Caesar's centurions.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. I, 31; II, 35.

Basilus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs mī-nū'shyūs bās'ī-lūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Batāvi, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vī). IV, 10.

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), *or* Belgians. I, 1.

Belgium, -gī, *n.* (ABdefg), Belgium (bēl'jyūm), the country of the Belgae.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. I, 10.

bellicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or in war, military.

bellō, 1, *intr.* [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. I, 2.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bdc), the Bellovacī (bē-lōv'ā-sī). II, 4.

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. I, 1.

bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, 'melius; *sup.*, 'optimē. I, 45; III, 18.

beneficiū, -cī, *n.* [bene, well+faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9.

benevolentia, -ae, *f.* [bene, well+volō, wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brāk'tē), the chief town of the Haedui. I, 23.

Bibrax, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. II, 6.

Bibroci, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Bibroci (bīb'rō-sī).

bīdūm, -ī, *n.* [bis, twice+dīēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. I, 23.

biennium, -nī, *n.* [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. I, 3.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriōnes (bī-jēr'ī-ō'nēz *or* bī'jē-rī-ō'nēz). III, 27.

bīnī, -ae, -a, *istrib. num. adj.* [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, 15.

bipedālīs, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, 17.

bipertitō, *adv.* [bis, twice+partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25.

bis, *num. adv.* [for duis, from duo, two], twice. III, 12.

Biturigēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bīt'ū-rī'jēz). I, 18.

Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs). II, 23.

Bōiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boii (bō'yī), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. I, 5.

bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. I, 28.

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; *as noun*, bonum, -ī, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, 'mellior; *sup.*, 'optimus (App. 42). I, 6.

bōs, bovis, *m.*, f., ox; *pl.*, cattle.

bracchium, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. I, 25.

Brannovicēs, *see* Aulerci.

Bratuspantium, -tī, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). II, 13.

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. I, 40; III, 4.

brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. II, 20.

breviter, *adv.* [brevis, short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'ī-ā), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britany. II, 4.

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Britannia, Britain], of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brī-tān'ī), better, the Britons. IV, 21.

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'ī-mūs jū'nī-ūs brū'tūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony.* III, 11.

C.

C., *abbr. for praenomen Gāius* (gā'yūs). I, 40; III, 5.

C., *sign. for centum, a hundred.*

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs kə-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Proculus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. I, 47.

cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, top.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. II, 27.

cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, 15.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Dd), Cadurcan; *pl. as noun*, the Cadurci (kə-dēr'sī),

caedēs, -is, *f.* [caedō, cut], a cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedō, **caedere**, **cecidī**, **caesum**, *tr.*, cut, kill, slay. III, 29.

caelestis, -e, *adj.* [caelum, heaven], heavenly; *pl. as noun*, the gods.

Caemāni, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). II, 4.

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite.

Caerōsi, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). II, 4.

caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, (1), Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries. I, 7. (2), Lucius Julius Caesar (lū'shyūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), a kinsman and lieutenant of the former.

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. III, 25.

caesus, *see* caedō.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. I, 12.

Caleti, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). II, 4.

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. III, 18.

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. II, 24.

campester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; loca, level country.

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space or country. III, 26.

Camulogenus, -ī, *m.*, Camulogenus (kām'ū-lōj'ē-nūs), a chief of the Aulerici.

Canīnius, -nī, *m.*, Gaius Caninius Rebilus (gā'yūs kə-nīn'ī-ūs rēb'ī-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

canō, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantum**, *intr.*, sing; sound.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn'tə-brī). III, 26.

Cantium, -tī, *n.* (Ad), Cantium (kăn'shyūm), or Kent.

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair.

capiō, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captum**, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (arms); choose, select (a place); form, adopt (a plan); reach, arrive at (a place); make (a beginning); **collem capere**, take position on a hill; **fugam capere**, take to flight. I, 1.

capra, -ae, *f.*, goat.

captīvus, -ī, *m.* [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. I, 22.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. IV, 3.

captus, *see* capiō.

caput, **capitis**, *n.*, the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth (of a river); **capitis poena**, capital punishment. I, 29.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kär'kə-sō). III, 20.

careō, 2, *intr.*, be without, be free from; miss, want.

carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. III, 13.

Carnutēs, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär'nū-tēz). II, 35.

carō, **carnis**, *f.*, flesh, meat.

carpō, **carpere**, **carpsi**, **carptum**, *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. III, 17.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. I, 3.

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, valuable.

Carvilius, -lī, *m.*, Carvilius (kär-vī'lī-ūs), a British king.

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut.

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Cassi (kās'ī).

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, *see* Cassius. I, 13.

cassis, -idis, *f.*, a metal helmet.

Cassius, -sī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kās'h'yūs lōn-gī'nūs).

consul 107 B. C., slain in battle by the *Tigurini*. I, 7.

Cassivellaunus, -i, *m.*, Cassivellaunus (kās'vī-vē-law'nūs), the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.

castellum, -i, *n.* [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

Casticus, -i, *m.*, Casticus (kās'tī-kūs). I, 3.

castrum, -i, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra**, **castrorum**, fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** or **pōnere**, [pitch camp; castra **movēre**, break up camp. I, 12.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; **cāsū**, by chance. I, 12.

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (kāt'a-mān'ta-lē'āis). I, 3.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. I, 47; III, 13.

Caturigēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kāt'ū-rī'jēz). I, 10.

Catuvolcus, -i, *m.*, Catuvolcus (kāt'ū-vōl'kūs), a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; **causam dicere**, to plead a case; **causā**, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

cautē, *adv.* [cautus, from caveō, be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. III, 13.

Cavarillus, -i, *m.*, Cavarillus (kāv'a-ril'ūs), a Haeduan noble.

Cavarinus, -i, *m.*, Cavarinus (kāv'a-rī'nūs), a king of the Senones.

caveō, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; **obsidibus cavēre**, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

Cavillōnum, -i, *n.* (Cf), Cavillonum (kāv'vī-lō'nūm).

Cebenna, -ae, *f.* (De), the Cebenna (sē-bēn'a), or the Cevennes mountains.

cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. IV, 23.

celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, *adv.* [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, **celerius**; *sup.*, **celerrimē** (App. 40). I, 18.

cēlō, *l. tr.*, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celtae (sēl'tā), better the Celts. I, 1.

Celtillus, -i, *m.*, Celtillus (sēl-tīl'ūs), an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, *adj.* [Cēnabum], of Cenabum; *pl. as noun*, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, -i, *n.* (Cd), Cenabum (sēn'a-būm), now Orleans.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ad), the Cēnimagni (sēn'vī-māg'nī).

Cēnomani, see Aulerci.

cēnsēo, **cēnsēre**, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsu**, *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*); propose, advise, vote (*ut and subj.*); propose, vote for (*acc.*). I, 35.

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. I, 29.

centum, (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.

cēpi, see **capiō**.

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *tr.*, separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [for crētus, *pf. part. of cernō*], decided; certain, sure, fixed; **certiōrem facere**, to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (*ut or nē and subj.*); **certior fierī**, be informed. I, 7.

cervus, -i, *m.*, stag.

cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 3.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz), (1), (Dg), I, 10. (2), (Af).

Chêruscî, -ôrum, m. (Ahi), the Cherusci (kê-rûs'i), a German tribe.

cibârius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus, food], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; **molita cibâria**, meal, flour. I, 5.

cibus, -i, m., food. IV, 1.

Cicerô, -ônîs, m., Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwîn'tûs tûl'i-ûs sîs'ê-rô), brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.

Cimberius, -rî, m., Cimberius (sîm-bê'-rî-ûs). I, 37.

Cimbri, -ôrum, m., the Cimbri (sîm'-brî). I, 33; II, 4.

Cingetorix, -igîs, m., Cingetorix (sîn-jêt'ô-rîks), (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a British king.

cingô, cingere, cînxî, cîntum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). I, 38.

cippus, -i, m., palisade, stockade.

circinus, -i, m. [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I, 38.

circiter, adv. [circus, circle], about, near. I, 15.

circuitus, -ûs, m. [circumeô, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, 21.

circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I, 10.

circumcidô, -cidere, -cîdî, -cîsum, tr. [caedô, cut], cut around or off, cut; isolate.

circumclûdô, -clûdere, -clûsî, -clûsum, tr. [claudô, shut], encircle.

circumdô, -dare, -dedî, -datum, tr. [dô, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.

circumdûcô, -dûcere, -dûxî, -ductum, tr. [dûcô, lead], lead or draw around. I, 38; III, 26.

circumeô, -îre, -îî, -îtum, tr. [eô, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. III, 25.

circumfundô, -fundere, -fûdî, -fûsum, tr. [fundô, pour], surround; *pass.*, gather round.

circumiciô, -icere, -îcî, -îectum, tr. [îaciô, throw. App. 7], throw, set or place around. II, 6.

cîrcummittô, -mittere, -mîsî, -mîsum, tr. [mittô, send], send around.

circummûniô, 4, tr. [mûniô, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. II, 30.

circumplector, -plectî, -plexus sum, tr. [plectô, fold], enfold, enclose.

circumsistô, -sistere, -stîtî, —, tr. [sistô, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.

circumspiciô, -spicere, -spexî, -spec-tum, tr. [speciô, look], look (around) for or at, consider, examine.

circumvâllô, 1, tr. [vâllum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleague, invest.

circumvehô, -vehere, -vexî, -vec-tum, tr. [vehô, carry], carry around; *pass.*, ride around.

circumveniô, -venîre, -vênî, -ven-tum, tr. [veniô, come], come or get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.

cis, prep. with acc., on this side of. II, 3.

Cisalpînus, -a, -um, adj. [Alpês], Cisalpine, lying on the south side of the Alps.

Cisrhênânus, -a, -um, adj. [Rhênus], on this (the western) side of the Rhine.

Cita, -ae, m., Gaius Fufius Cita (gâ'yûs fû'fî-ûs sî'ta), a Roman knight.

citâtus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of citô], put in motion], swift. IV, 10.

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior** (= Cisalpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10.

citô, adv., quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimê. IV, 33.

citrâ, prep. with acc., on this side of. I, 12.

citrô, adv., hither; **ultrô citrôque**, back and forth. I, 42.

cîvis, -is, m., f., citizen.

cîvîtâs, -tâtis, f. [cîvis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. I, 2.

clam, adv., secretly. III, 18.

clâmitô, 1, tr. [freq. of clâmô, cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.

clâmor, -ôris, m. [clâmô, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11.

clandestinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**clam**, secretly], hidden, secret.

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. III, 11.

Claudius, -dī, *m.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher (ăp'ī-ūs klaw'dī-ūs pūl'kēr), consul 54 B. C.

claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 25.

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. III, 13.

clēmētia, -ae, *f.* [**clēmēns**, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.

cliēns, -entis, *m., f.* [**clueō**, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.

clientēla, -ae, *f.* [**cliēns**, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.

clivus, -ī, *m.*, slope, ascent.

Clōdīus, -dī, *m.*, Publius Clodius Pulcher (pūb'lī-ūs klō'dī-ūs pūl'kēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B. C.

Cn., *abbr.* for **Gnaeus** (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.

co-, *see* **con-**.

coacervō, 1, *tr.* [**acervō**, heap up; **acervus**, heap], heap up, heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.

coāctus, *see* **cōgō**.

coāctus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōgō**, compel], compulsion.

coagmentō, 1, *tr.*, join, connect.

coartō, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.

Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (De), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). III, 27.

coēgi, *see* **cōgō**.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [**emō**, buy], buy, buy up. I, 3.

coēō, -īre, -īi, —, *intr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], assemble.

coepī, **coepisse** (App. 86 and a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coep-tus**, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. I, 15.

coerceō, 2, *tr.* [**arceō**, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17.

cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**co+agitō**, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan I, 33; III, 24.

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**co+(g)nātus**, born], blood relationship; family, clan.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [**co+(g)nōscō**, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193. I, a). I, 19.

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgi**, **coāctum**, *tr.* [**co+agō**, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. I, 40; II, 5.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cohortor**, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.

cohortor, 1, *tr.* [**co+hortor**, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. I, 25.

collātus, *see* **conferō**.

collaudō, 1, *tr.* [**con+laudō**, praise], praise highly.

colligō, 1, *tr.* [**con+ligō**, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 25.

colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [**con+legō**, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; **sē colligere**, collect one's self, rally. III, 6.

collis, -is, *m.*, hill. I, 22.

collocō, 1, *tr.* [**con+locō**, place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage. I, 18.

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [**colloquor**, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, 34.

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [**con+loquor**, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, 19.

colō, **colere**, **colui**, **cultum**, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, 1.

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony, settlement.

color, -ōris, *m.*, color.

com-, *see* **con-**.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [**com(b)+ūrō**, burn], burn up. I, 5.

comes, -itis, *m., f.*, companion.

comitium, -tī, *n.* [**com+eō**, go], place of assembly or meeting; *pl.*, an election.

comitor, 1, *tr.* [**cōmes**, companion], accompany, follow.

commeatus, -ūs, *m.* [**commeō**, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.

commemorō, 1, *tr.* [**memorō**, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.

commendō, 1, *tr.* [**mandō**, entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.

commeō, 1, *intr.* [**meō**, go], go back and forth; with **ad**, resort to, visit. I, 1.

commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* [**miles**, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.

comminus, *adv.* [**manus**, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.

commissura, -ae, *f.* [**committō**, join], uniting, joint, juncture.

committō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], join, splice; commit (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust; **proellum committere**, join or begin battle. I, 13.

Commius, -mī, *m.*, **Commius** (kōm'i-ūs), a chief of the *Atrebat*es. IV, 21.

commodē, *adv.* [**commodus**, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; **satis commodē**, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.

commodum, -ī, *n.* [**commodus**, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.

commodus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**modus**, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**moneō**, remind+**faciō**, make], remind forcibly. I, 19.

commoror, 1, *intr.* [**moror**, tarry], wait, stop.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [**moveō**, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.

communīcō, 1, *tr.* [**communis**, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.

communiō, 4, *tr.* [**muniō**, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.

communis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; **rēs communis**, the common interest. I, 30; II, 4.

commutātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**commūtō**, change], a changing, change. I, 14.

commūtō, 1, *tr.* [**mūtō**, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.

comparō, 1, *tr.* [**parō**, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. I, 3.

comparō, 1, *tr.* [**pār**, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [**pellō**, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.

compendium, -di, *n.*, gain, profit.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *tr.* [**pariō**, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [**plectō**, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [*obsolete*, **pleō**, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.

complexus, *see* **complector**.

complūrēs, -a, *adj.* [**plūs**, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.

comportō, 1, *tr.* [**portō**, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *tr.* [**prehendō** (= **prēndō**), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). III, 14.

comprobō, 1, *tr.* [**probō**, approve], approve, sanction, justify.

compulsus, *see* **compellō**.

con-, **com-**, **co-** [*the forms taken by cum in composition*], together; completely; or mere emphasis.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [**cōnor**, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnor**, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 8.

cōnātus, *see* **cōnor**.

concedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* and *intr.* [**cēdō**, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.

concessus, -ūs, *m.* [**concedō**, permit], concession, permission.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [**caedō**, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall down, fall. III, 14.
conciliō, 1, tr. [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, 3.
concilium, -li, n., gathering, assembly, council. I, 18.
concisus, see concidō.
concitō, 1, tr. [citō, put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.
conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. I, 47; III, 18.
concludō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; concludum mare, an inland sea. III, 9.
Conconnetodumnus, -i, m., Conconnetodumnus (kōn-kōn'tō-tō-dūm'nūs), a chief of the Carnutes.
concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, intr., clash.
concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, 48; II, 20.
conkursō, 1, intr. [freq. of concurrō, run], run about.
conkursus, -ūs, m. [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, 8.
conkursus, see concurrō.
condemnō, 1, tr. [damnō, condemn], convict.
condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28.
condōnō, 1, tr. [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20.
Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-drū'sī). II, 4.
conductō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4.
confectus, see conficiō.
conferō, -conferre, contulī, collātum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; sē conferre, betake one's self, take refuge. I, 16.
confertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of conferciō, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. I, 24.

confestim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. IV, 32.
conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). I, 3.
confidō, -fidere, -fusus sum, intr. [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; cōnfisus, pf. part. with present meaning, relying on. I, 23.
configō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fasten. III, 13.
confinis, -e, adj. [finis, boundary], adjoining, contiguous.
confinium, -nī, n. [finis, boundary], common boundary, neighborhood.
cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [cōnfirmō, assert], assurance. III, 18.
cōnfirmō, 1, tr. [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, 3.
cōnfisus, see confidō.
confiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, tr. [fateor, confess], acknowledge, confess.
confixus, see configō.
conflagrō, 1, intr. [flagrō, burn], burn, be on fire.
conflictō, 1, tr. [freq. of configō], strike together; pass., be distressed.
configō, -figere, -fixī, -fictum, intr. [figō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, 5.
confluēns, -entis, f. [cōnfluō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.
cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, intr. [fluō, flow], flow together.
confugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr. [fugiō, flee], flee, take refuge.
confundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [fundō, pour], pour together, bring together.
congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (peacefully). I, 36; II, 23.
congressus, -ūs, m. [congregior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, 13.
conciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast;

put; put together *logically*, conjecture; in *fugam conicere*, put to flight. I, 26.

coniectūra, -ae, *f.* [**coniciō**, conjecture], inference, conjecture.

coniectus, *see coniciō*.

coniunctim, *adv.* [**coniungō**, join], jointly.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, *tr.* [**iungō**, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

coniūnx, -lūgis, *f.* [**coniungō**, join], wife.

coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**coniūrō**, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [**iūrō**, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. I, 3.

conquiescō, -quiescere, -quiescī, -quiescētum, *intr.* [**quiescō**, to rest, quies, rest], lie down to rest.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [**quaerō**, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sanguis**, blood], of the same blood; *as noun*, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *tr.* [**scandō**, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.* [**cōnsciūs**, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītum, *tr.* [**sciscō**, resolve], resolve upon; **sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, commit suicide. I, 4.

cōnsciūs, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sciō**, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

cōnscrībō, -scrībēre, -scrīpsi, -scrīptum, *tr.* [**scrībō**, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

cōnsecrō, 1, *tr.* [**sacrō**, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [**sector**, freq. of se-

quor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, 15.

cōnsecūtus, *see cōnsequor*.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cōnsentiō**, agree], agreement.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnsentiō**, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. I, 30; II, 28.

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [**sentiō**, feel], think together; agree, combine. II, 3.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [**sequor**, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, 13.

cōnservō, 1, *tr.* [**servō**, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, 12.

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (**pūb/īl-ūs kōn-sid' i-ūs**), one of Caesar's officers. I, 21.

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sidō**, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21.

cōnsillium, -lī, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; **commūnī cōnsiliō**, by, or in accordance with, general action; **pūb-licō cōnsiliō**, by action of the state; **cōnsilium capere** or **inīre**, form or adopt a plan; **cōnsilium habēre**, think, consider. I, 5.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [**similis**, like], very like, similar. II, 11.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [**sistō**, stand], take a stand or position, keep one's position, stand, form (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; (*of ships*) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. I, 13.

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, *m.*, cousin.

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.* [**sōlor**, comfort], cheer, comfort. I, 20.

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**cōnspiciō**, look at], sight, view; presence. I, 11.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *tr.* [**speciō**, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47; II, 21.

cōnspicor, 1, *tr.* [speciō, look], observe, describ., perceive. I, 25.

cōnspirō, 1, *intr.* [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.

cōnstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.

cōnsternō, 1, *tr.* [cōnsternō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.

cōnstipō, 1, *tr.*, press or crowd closely.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). I, 3.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.

cōnstrātus, *see* cōnsternō.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; **cōnsuētus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.

cōnsuētus, *see* cōnsuēscō.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. I, 2.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.

cōnsulō, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.

cōnsultō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.

cōnsultō, *adv.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.

cōnsultum, -i, *n.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūptum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], *take together or all at once*; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrectum, *intr.* [surgō, rise], arise together or in a body; arise.

contabulō, 1, *tr.* [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.

contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contingō, touch], contact.

contāminō, 1, *tr.*, corrupt, contaminate.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover up.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, *tr.* [temnō, scorn], despise, disdain.

contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt. III, 17.

contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.

contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. I, 44.

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* contineō, restrain], satisfied, contented.

contexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave or bind together, connect. IV, 17.

contigī, *see* contingō.

continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* contineō, hold together], *holding together*; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *as noun*, mainland, continent. III, 28.

continenter, *adv.* [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, 1.

continentia, -ae, *f.* [contineō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; *sē* continēre, *with abl.*, remain in, on or within. I, 1.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.

continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 29.

continuo, *adv.* [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48; IV, 34.

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.* [for conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly, mass-meeting; address (*before such a meeting*).

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, against him or them; on the other hand; **contrā atque**, contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. I, 18.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō**, on the contrary. II, 18.

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrā, against +versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.

contulī, *see* cōnferō.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, 14.

convalescō, -valēscere, -valuī, —, *intr.* [valēscō, *incept. of* valeō, be well], gain health or strength, recover.

convallis, -is, *f.* [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, 20.

convehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry or bring together, collect.

conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere**, face about. I, 23.

Convictolitāvis, -is, *m.*, Convictolitavis (kōn-vīk'tō-li-tā'vīs), a Hæduan chief.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.

convocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.

coorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co+orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. I, 2.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. III, 13.

cor, *cordis*, *n.*, heart; **cordī esse**, be dear.

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. I, 32.

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'rī-ō-sōl'i-tēz). II, 34.

corium, -rī, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; **sub corōnā vēndere**, sell at auction. III, 16.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (*dead*) body. I, 25.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [con+rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.

cortex, -icis, *m., f.*, bark. II, 33.

Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiē,

daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1.

cotidiō, *adv.* [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. I, 16.

Cotta, *see* **Aurunculēius**.

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, Cotuatus (kōt'ū-ā-tūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -ī, *m.*, Cotus (kō'tūs), a Haeduan noble.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness. III, 13.

Crassus, -ī, *m.* (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs lī-sīn'ī-ūs krās'ūs), *triumvir* with Caesar and Pompey, I, 21; (2) his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's quaestors; (3) a second son, Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. I, 52; II, 34.

crātēs, -is, *f.*, wicker-work; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.) IV, 17.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp.* **crēbrior**; *sup.*, **crēberrimus** (App. 40). II, 1.

crēbrō, *adv.* [crēber, repeated], repeatedly, often.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. II, 33.

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. I, 4.

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *intr.*, grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. I, 20.

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krētēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. II, 7.

Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, Critognatus (krīt'ōg-nā'tūs), a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.

crūdēlītās, -tātis, *f.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.

crūdēlīter, *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. I, 31.

crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, leg.

cubile, -is, *n.* [cubō, lie down], bed, resting-place.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.

cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum primum**, as soon as. *See* App. 238-242. I, 1.

cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, 1.

cūctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.

cūctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.

cūctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [for **coniūctus**, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.

cuneātim, *adv.* [cuneus, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.

cuneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge, wedge-shaped mass.

cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.

cupidē, *adv.* [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.

cupiō, **cupere**, **cupivī**, **cupitum**, *tr.* and *intr.*, long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.

cūr, *interrog.* and *rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. I, 33.

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with *gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. I, 13.

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. IV, 33.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.

custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs, guard], custody, guard (state of being guarded); pl., guards, keepers. II, 29.

custōdiō, 4, *tr.* [custōs, guard], guard.

custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.

D.

D., *abbr. for praenomen Decimus* (dēs'-i-mūs). III, 11.

D., *sign for quingenti*, five hundred. III, 22.

d.=*diem*. I, 6.

Daci, -ōrum, *m.*, the Daci (dā'si) or Dacians, the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.

damnō, 1, *tr.* [damnum, damage], declare guilty. sentence, condemn. I, 4.

damnum, -i, *n.*, loss.

Dānuvius, -vī, *m.* (Bhi), the Danuvius (da-nū'vī-ūs), better, the Danube.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, 1.

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. I, 11.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, 31.

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. I, 4.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, 35.

dēcērtō, 1, *intr.* [cērtō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 44; II, 10.

dēcēssus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). III, 13.

Decetia, -ae, *f.*, (Ce), Decetia (dē-sē'shya), a town of the Haedui, now Decize.

dēcīdō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. I, 48.

decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40; II, 21.

dēcīpiō, -cīpere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. I, 14.

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. I, 50.

dēclivis, -e, *adj.* [clīvus, a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun*, slopes. II, 18.

dēclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [dēclivis, sloping downward], descent.

dēcērētum, -i, *n.* [dēcernō, decide], decision, decree, order.

dēcērētus, *see* dēcernō.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (of the camp). II, 24.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I, 23.

dēcūrrō, -currere, -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run down hurry down. II, 19.

dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, 25.

dedi, *see* dō.

dēdidī, *see* dēdō.

dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; as *noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. I, 27.

dēditīō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, 27.

dēditus, *see* dēdō.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. II, 15.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ships); give in marriage. I, 44; II, 2.

dēfatigātīō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III, 19.

dēfatigō, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, 40.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, 11.

defēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defence. II, 7.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. II, 6.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be

fore, refer; bestow, confer; *dēlātus* (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. II, 4.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of dēfetiscor*, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [*faciō*, make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II, 10.

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [*figō*, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, 17.

dēfiniō, 4, *tr.* [*finiō*, limit], mark off; define, determine.

dēfixus, *see dēfigō*.

dēfore, *ful. inf. of dēsum*.

dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [*fōrma*, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, 2.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *tr.* [*fugiō*, flee], flee from, shun.

dēful, *see dēsum*.

dēficiō, -icere, -fēcī, -lectum, *tr.* [*iaciō*, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, 8.

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [*dēiciō*, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II, 8.

dēinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. III, 29.

dēinde, *adv.* (*dē+inde*, thence), thereupon, then, next. I, 25.

dēlātus, *see dēferō*.

dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. IV, 2.

dēlēctus, *see dēligō*.

dēlēō, *dēlēre*, *dēlēvi*, *dēlētum*, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27.

dēliberō, 1, *tr.* [*libra*, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, 7.

dēlibrō, 1, *tr.* [*liber*, bark], peel.

dēlictum, -ī, *n.*, fault, offence.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [*ligō*, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. I, 53; IV, 29.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [*legō*, choose], pick out, select, choose. I, 3.

dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītui, —, *intr.* [*latēscō*, *incept. of lateō*, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. IV, 32.

dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [*mēns*, mind], madness, folly. IV, 13.

dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messum, *tr.* [*metō*, reap], mow, reap. IV, 32.

dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4.

dēminuō, -minuere, -minui, -minutum, *tr.* [*minuō*, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [*mittō*, send], send, thrust or let down; sink; bow; *sē dēmittere*, come or get down, descend; *sē animō dēmittere* lose courage; *dēmissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. I, 32.

dēmō, *dēmere*, *dēmpsi*, *dēemptum*, *tr.* [*dē+emō*, take], take down, remove.

dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [*mōnstrō*, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, 11.

dēmoror, 1, *tr.* [*moror*, delay], hinder, delay. III, 6.

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. I, 17.

dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [*negō*, deny], refuse. I, 42.

dēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [*decem*, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43.

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally at last; at least. I, 22.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set or packed thick, dense. II, 22.

dēnūtiō, 1, *tr.* [*nūtiō*, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. I, 36.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, *tr.* [*pellō*, drive], drive from or away, ward off. III, 25.

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [*perdō*, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, 43; III, 28.

dēpereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [*perēō*, perish; *eō*, App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone.

dēponō, -ponere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [*pōnō*, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, 14.

dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [*populor*, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, 11.

dēportō, 1, *tr.* [*portō*, carry], carry off or away. III, 12.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, tr. [**poscō**, demand], demand; call for.
dēpositus, see dēpōnō.
dēprecātor, m. [**dēprecor**, plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, 9.
dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr. [**precor**, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, 31.
dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, tr. [**prehendō** (=prēndō), seize], seize, capture, catch.
dēpugnō, 1, intr. [**pugnō**, fight], fight decisively; contend.
dēpulsus, see dēpellō.
dērēctē, adv. [**dērēctus**, straight], straight. IV, 17.
dērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [**dērīgō**, put in line], straight. IV, 17.
dērīgō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr. [**regō**, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.
dērivō, 1, tr. [**rivus**, stream], draw off.
dērogō, 1, tr. [**rogō**, ask], take away, withdraw.
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, intr. [**scandō**, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse (to), resort.
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectum, tr. [**secō**, cut], cut away or off.
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, tr. [**serō**, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus, pf. part. as adj.**, deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.
dēsertor, -ōris, m. [**dēserō**, desert], deserter.
dēsiderō, 1, tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.
dēsīdīa, -ae, f., inactivity, idleness.
dēsīgnō, 1, tr. [**signō**, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.
dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum, intr. [**salīō**, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.
dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, intr. [**sistō**, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.
dēspectus, see dēspiciō.
dēspectus, -ūs, m. [**dēspiciō**, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f. [**dēspērō**, despair], despair, hopelessness.
dēspērō, 1, intr. [**spērō**, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus, as part., from transitive meaning**, despaired of; as **adj.**, desperate. I, 18.
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [**speciō**, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, 13.
dēspoliō, 1, tr. [**spoliō**, strip], deprive. II, 31.
dēstinō, 1, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, 14.
dēstitī, see dēsistō.
dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitutum, tr. [**statuō**, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. I, 16.
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tr. [**stringō**, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (**gladium**). I, 25.
dēsūm, deesse, dēfui, —, intr. [**sum**, be, App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. I, 40; II, 21.
dēsūper, adv. [**super**, above], from above. I, 52.
dēterior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), worse, less. I, 36.
dēterreō, 2, tr. [**terreō**, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, 17.
dētestor, 1, tr., execrate, curse.
dētīneō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. [**teneō**, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. III, 12.
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [**trahō**, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. I, 42; II, 21.
dētrectō, 1, tr., refuse, avoid.
dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, adj., [dētrīmentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.
dētrīmentum, -ī, n. [**dē+terō**, rub or wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, 44.
dētulī, see dēferō.
dēturbō, 1, tr. [**turbō**, disturb], drive off, dislodge.
dēūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, tr. [**ūrō**, burn], burn up, destroy.

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, **dii**; *dat. pl.*, **dis**), *m.*, god, deity. I, 12.

deustus, *see* **deūrō**.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry away, bring.

dēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.

dēvexus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēvehō, carry away or down], sloping; *neut. pl.* as *noun*, slopes, hill-sides.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

dēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call off or away; bring.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *tr.* [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus**, *pf. part.* as *noun*, a sworn follower. III, 22.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. I, 52; II, 23.

dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc. manus*], the righthand. I, 20.

dī-, *see* **dis**-.

Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (*dī'a-blīn'tēs*). III, 9.

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.

dicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; **causam dicere**, plead a case; **iūs dicere**, administer justice. I, 1.

dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.

dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part.* of **dicō**, say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. I, 39.

dīducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. III, 23.

diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.*, day; time; **in diēs**, from day to day; **diem ex diē**, day after day. I, 4.

dif-, *see* **dis**.

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, *tr. and intr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.

difficilis, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6.

difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.

difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty. *Comp.*, **difficilius**.

diffidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [fidō, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.

diffuō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], pour or spread out.

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; as *measure of length*, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. III, 13.

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 43; III, 16.

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy, deserving.

dī, *see* **deus**.

dīiudicō, 1, *tr.* [iudicō, judge], decide.

dilēctus, *see* **diligō**.

dilēctus, -ūs, *m.* [diligō, choose], choice; levy.

diligenter, *adv.* [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains or care. II, 5.

diligentia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.

diligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], single or choose out, esteem highly, love.

dimētiōr, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [mētiōr, measure], measure out or off. II, 19.

dimicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dimicō, fight], fight, contest.

dimicō, 1, *intr.* [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.

dimidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius, middle], divided in the middle, half; *neut.* as *noun*, a half.

dimitto, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss;

break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 18.

dir-, *see* **dis-**.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17.

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Dis (dīs), Pluto (plū'tō), *the god of the lower world.*

dis, *see* **deus**.

dis- (di-, dif-, dir-), *insep. prefix*, apart, asunder, in different directions; *negative*. = *Eng. un-*, not.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (*especially with ab or ex*). I, 14.

discēptātor, -ōris, *m.*, judge, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.

discessus, -ūs, *m.* [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.

disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17.

discō, discere, didici, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. I, 18.

discrimen, -minis, *n.*, danger, critical condition.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, *tr.*, clear away.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25.

dispār, -paris, *adj.* [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.

disparō, i, *tr.* [parō, prepare], separate.

dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -persum, *tr.* [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.

disputātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.

disputō, i, *intr.* [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dissentiō, think differently], disagreement, dissension.

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēsum, *intr.* [sentio, feel], differ, disagree.

disserō, -serere, -sēvi, -situm, *tr.* [serō, sow], sow or set at intervals.

dissimulō, i, *tr.* [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.

dissipō, i, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.

dissuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *intr.* [suādēō, advise], advise against.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.

distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. IV, 17.

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, drag], pull asunder, remove.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, *tr.* [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.

distuli, *see* **differō**.

dītissimus, *sup. of dives*.

diū, adv., for a long time, long; **quam diū**, as long as; *comp.*, **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, **diūtissimē**, for the longest time. I, 14.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38.

diūtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], of long duration, long.

diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], long. I, 14.

dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* dīvertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.

dīves, dīvitis, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **dītissimus**. I, 2.

Diviciacus, -i, *m.*, Diviciacus (dīv'fī-shī-ā'kūs), (1), *a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans*. I, 3. (2) *a chief of the Suessiones*. II, 4.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., Divico (dīv'ī-kō), an *Helvetian chieftain*. I, 13.

dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum, tr., divide, separate; **divisus, pf. part. as adj.,** divided. I, 1.

divinus, -a, -um, adj. [divus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; **in fugam dare,** put to flight; **dare manūs,** yield; **dare negōtium,** with *dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of **dō** are derived from an obsolete verb, **dō**, put.) I, 3.

doceō, docēre, docui, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.

documentum, -i, n. [doceō, teach], example; warning.

doleō, 2, intr., feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14.

dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.

dolus, -i, m., craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. II, 10.

domicilium, -i, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.

dominor, 1, intr. [dominus, master], be master, rule. II, 31.

dominus, -i, m., master.

Domitius, -ti, m., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū'shyūs dō-mīsh'yūs ā-hēn'ō-bār'būs), *consul* 54 B.C.

Domnotaurus, see Valerius.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home; native country. I, 5.

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.

dōnum, -i, n. [dō, give], present, gift.

dorsum, -i, n., back; ridge.

dōs, dōtis, f. [dō, give], a marriage portion, dowry.

Druidēs, -um, m., the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

Dūbis, -is, m. (Cf.), the (river) Dubis (dū'bīs), now the Doubs. I, 38.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, f. [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.

dubitō, 1, intr. [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.

ducenti, -ae, -a, (CC), card. num. adj. [duo, two+centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.

ductus, -ūs, m. [dūcō, lead], leading, command.

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.

Dumnorix, -igis, m., Dumnorix (dūm'nō-rīks), a *Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus*. I, 3.

duo, duae, duo, (App. 49), card. num. adj., two. I, 6.

duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two+decem, ten], twelve. I, 5.

duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.

duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.

duodēviginti, card. num. adj. [duo, two+dē, from+viginti, twenty], eighteen. I, 23.

duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two+plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 29.

duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.

dūritia, -ae, f. [dūrus, hard], hardness, harshness.

dūrō, 1, tr. [dūrus, hard], make hardy, harden.

Dūrocortorum, -i, n. (Bf), Durocortorum (dū'rō cōr'tō-rūm), the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.

Dūrus, -i, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīntus lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

dux, ducis, m. [dūcō, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.

E

ē (only before consonants) **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of;*

(1) *of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; ūnā ex parte, on one side; (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march; (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ē regiōne, opposite.* I, 2.

ēā, *adv.* [=ēā viā], by that way, there.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēz). II, 4.

Ebuovicēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Ebuovices (aw-lēr'si ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz). III, 17.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, —, *tr.* [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of ēdō*, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.

ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. I, 31.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -doctum, *tr.* [doceō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18.

ēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). I, 10.

effeminō, 1, *tr.* [ex+fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. I, 1.

effercio, -fercīre, —, -fertum, *tr.*, fill completely, stop up.

efferrō, efferre, extuli, ēlātum, *tr.* [ex+ferō, carry. App. 8!], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, 5.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex+faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, 38; II, 5.

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, *tr.* [ex+fodiō, dig], dig out.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *tr. and intr.* [ex+fugiō, flee], flee from or away, escape. IV, 35.

egēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of egeō*, want], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, egui, —, *intr.*, need, want, lack, be without or destitute.

egestās, -tātis, *f.* [egeō, want], poverty.

ēgi, *pf. of agō.*

ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.* I; *pl.*, nōs, we, us, etc. I, 40; II, 9.

egomet, *emphatic for ego*, I myself, I for my part.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. I, 27.

ēgregiē, *adv.* [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē+grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19.

ēgressus, *see* ēgredior.

ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [ēgredior, step out], a landing, landing place.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; sē ēicere, rush out, salily. IV, 7.

eius modi, of such a sort or kind, such. III, 3.

ēlābor, -lābi, -lāpsus sum, *intr.* [lābor, slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, *see* efferō.

Elaver, -eris, *n.* (Ce), the river Elaver (ēl'a-vēr), now the Allier.

ēlēctus, *see* ēligō.

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, *m.* (Dd), the Eleuteti (ē lū'te-ti).

ēliciō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, draw or entice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; **ēlēctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (men, etc.). II, 4.

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). III, 27.

ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. I, 31.

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, project.

ēminus, *adv.* [**manus**, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.

emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. I, 16.

ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, *intr.* [**nāscor**, be born], be born from; spring up. II, 17.

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. I, 14.

ēnūtiō, 1, *tr.* [**nūtiō**, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

eō, ire, ii' (ivī), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

eō, *adv.* [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.

eō, *abl.* of is.

eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, 4.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

Eporēdorix, -īgis, *m.*, Eporedorix (ēp' -ō-rēd' -ō-rīks), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). I, 15.

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

equus, -i, *m.*, horse. I, 22.

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes (ēr' -a -tōs' -thē-nēs), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.

ērēctus, see **ērigō**.

ēreptus, see **ēripiō**.

ergā, *prep.* with acc., towards.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [**rēgō**, direct], lift or raise; **ērēctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. III, 13.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptum, *tr.* [**rapiō**, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

errō, 1, *intr.*, wander; err, be mistaken. **ērumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.* [**rumpō**, break], break forth, sally. III, 5.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**ērumpō**, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33.

essedārius, -rī, *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

essedum, -ī, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32.

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū' vī-i). II, 34.

et, *conj.*, and; also, too, even; **et . . . et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

etiam, *conj.* and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

etsī, *conj.* [et + sī, if], even if, although. I, 46; III, 24.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [**vādō**, go], escape. III, 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō**, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [**veniō**, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [**vocō**, call], call forth or out, summon; **ēvocātus**, *pf. part. as noun*, reenlisted veteran. III, 20.

ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [**volō**, fly], fly or rush forth. III, 28.

ex, see **ē**.

exāctus, see **exigō**.

exagitō, 1, *tr.* [**agitō**, freq. of **agō**, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

exāminō, 1, weigh.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], deprive

- of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.
- exārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsī, -ārsum, intr.** [ārdescō, *incept. of ardeō*, blaze], take fire; be inflamed or enraged.
- exaudiō, 4, tr.** [audiō, hear], hear (*from a distance*). II, 11.
- excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr.** [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.
- excellō, -cellere, —, —, intr., excel, surpass.**
- excelsus, -a, -um, adj.** [excellō, surpass], high.
- exceptō, 1, tr.** [*freq. of excipio*, catch], take hold of, catch.
- excidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr.** [caedō, cut], hew away or down.
- excipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. and intr.** [capiō, take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. I, 52; III, 5.
- excitō, 1, tr.** [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, 10.
- excludō, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr.** [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.
- excōgitō, 1, tr.** [cōgitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.
- excruciō, 1, tr.** [cruciō, torture; *crux*, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.
- excubitor, -ōris, m.** [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.
- excubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, intr.** [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.
- exculcō, 1, tr.,** trample, tread down.
- excursiō, -ōnis, f.** [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally, sortie. II, 30.
- excūsatiō, -ōnis, f.** [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.
- excūsō, 1, tr.** [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.
- exemplum, -ī, n.,** example, precedent. I, 8.
- exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, intr.** [eō, go. App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2.
- exerceō, 2, tr.,** practice, train, exercise. I, 48.
- exercitātiō, -ōnis, f.** [exercitō, *freq. of exerceō*, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.
- exercitātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of exercitō*, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.
- exercitus, -ūs, m.** [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3.
- exhauriō, -haurire, -hausī, -haustum, tr.** [hauriō, draw], draw out, empty.
- exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.** [agō, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.
- exiguē, adv.** [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.
- exiguitās, -tātis, f.** [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.
- exiguus, -a, -um, adj.,** scanty, short, small, meager; limited. IV, 20.
- eximius, -a, -um, adj.** [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.
- existimātiō, -ōnis, f.** [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.
- existimō, 1, tr.** [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.
- exitus, -ūs, m.** [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.
- expediō, 4, tr.** [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.
- expeditiō, -ōnis, f.** [expediō, arrange], campaign, enterprise, expedition.
- expeditus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of expediō*, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun*, a light armed soldier. I, 6.
- expellō, -pellere, -pullī, -pulsum, tr.** [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. II, 4.
- experior, -periri, -pertus sum, tr.,** prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.
- expiō, 1, tr.,** atone for, expiate; avenge.
- expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, tr.** [pleō, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, 12.

explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf.*, part of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, 18.

explōrō, 1, *tr.*, search *or* find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, 4.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, 23.

exportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out *or* away. IV, 18.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, *tr.* [poscō, demand], entreat, demand.

exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32.

expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, 11.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41; III, 3.

exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I, 4.

exserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr.*, thrust *or* put out; uncover.

existō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand *or* come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, 15.

expectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11.

exspoliō, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], rob.

extinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *tr.*, put out, quench; destroy.

extō, -stāre, -stiti, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

extruō, -struere, -struxī, -structum, *tr.* [struō, build], build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30.

exsul, -sulis, *m.* and *f.*, an exile.

exterior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp.* of exterus. App. 44], outer, exterior.

exterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten],

frighten outright, strike with terror, scare.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, *tr.* [timēscō, *incept.* of timeō, fear], dread. III, 13.

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, *tr.* [torqueō, twist], wrest *or* force from, extort.

extrā, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, 10.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw out; waste.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup.* of exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmi** (*as noun*), the rear; **ad extrēmum**, at last, at the end; as a last resort. I, 1.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust *or* shut out. III, 12.

extuli, *see* **effērō**.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ātum, *tr.*, draw out *or* off, put *or* strip off, divest, despoil. III, 6.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.

F.

faber, -brī, *m.*, workman, mechanic; carpenter.

Fabius, -bī, *m.* (1), Gaius Fabius (gā'yūs fā'bī-ūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*. (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'shyūs fā'bī-ūs), *a centurion of the 8th legion*. (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), *victor over the Gauls 121 B.C.* I, 45.

facile, *adv.* [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius**; *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). I, 2.

facilis, -e, *adj.* [faciō, do], easy. I, 6.

facinus -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, 40; III, 9.

faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, *tr.* and *intr.*; *tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (*commands, etc.*); give (*opportunity, etc.*); *with ut*, bring about, cause; *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.*, **fīō**, **ferī**, **factus sum** (App. 83), *with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally*, result, happen, come to pass. I, 2.

factiō, -ōnis, f. [faciō, make], party, faction. I, 31.

factum, -i, n. [*pf. part. of faciō, half noun, half participle*], act, exploit, deed. III, 14.

factus, see faciō.

facultās, -tātis, f. [*old adj., facul=facilis, easy*], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. I, 7.

fāgus, -i, f., beech tree or timber.

fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum, tr., deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of fallō, deceive*], false.

falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning-hook; hook (*for pulling down walls*). III, 14.

fāma, -ae, f. [fārī, to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, f., hunger, starvation. I, 28.

familia, -ae, f., household (*including slaves*); retinue (*including all dependents*); family. I, 4.

familiāris, -e, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; *as noun*, intimate friend; **rēs, personal property, estate.** I, 18.

familiāritās, -tātis, f. [familiāris, intimate], intimacy.

fās, n., indecl., right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, 50.

fastigātē, adv. [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. IV, 17.

fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., sloping. II, 8.

fastigium, -gī, n., the top of a gable; elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

fātum, -ī, n. [fārī, to speak], fate, lot. I, 39.

favēō, favēre, favī, fautum, intr., favor. I, 18.

fax, facis, f., firebrand, torch

fēlicitās, -tātis, f. [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, 40.

fēliciter, adv. [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. IV, 25.

fēmina, -ae, f., female, woman.

femur, -inis, n., the thigh.

fera, -ae, f. [*fem. of ferus, wild*], wild animal.

ferāx, -ācis, adj. [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. II, 4.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (App. 81); *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, be annoyed or angry at; *pass. (sometimes) rush*; *intr. almost=verb to be.* I, 13.

ferrāmentum, -ī, n. [ferrum, iron], an iron tool or implement.

ferrāria, -ae, f. [ferrum, iron], an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. III, 13.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear-point. I, 25.

fertilis, -e, adj. [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitās, -tātis, f. [fertilis, productive], productiveness. II, 4.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. I, 31; II, 4.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [ferveō, be red hot+faciō, make], heat, melt.

fervēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of ferveō, be red hot*], heated, glowing, hot.

fibula, -ae, f., clasp; brace, fastening. IV, 17.

fictus, see fingō.

fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21.

fidēs, -ei, f. [fidō, confide], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere**, convince or give a pledge; **fidem sequī**, surrender. I, 3.

fidūcia, -ae, f. [fidō, confide], confidence, trust, reliance.

figūra, -ae, f. [fingō, form], form, shape, figure. IV, 25.

filia, -ae, f., daughter. I, 3.

filius, -ī, m., son. I, 3.

fingō, fingere, finxī, factum, tr., form, imagine, devise, invent. I, 39; IV, 5.

fīniō, 4, tr. [fīnis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, 16.

finis, -is, m., boundary, limit, border.

end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. I, 2.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, *see* faciō.

firmiter, *adv.* [firmus, strong], firmly. IV, 26.

firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.

firmō, 1, *tr.* [firmus, strong], strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. IV, 17.

Flaccus, *see* Valerius.

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. I, 16.

flamma, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze.

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.

fleō, flere, flēvi, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20.

flētus, -ūs, *m.* [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.

flō, 1, *intr.*, blow.

flōrens, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.

flōs, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.

flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood, billow, wave. III, 13.

flūmen, -inis, *n.* [fluō, flow], river, stream. I, 1.

fluō, fluere, flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow, run. I, 6.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, dig.

foedus, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.

forem = essem; *see* sum.

fore = futūrus esse; *see* sum.

foris, *adv.*, out of doors, without.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, 14.

fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; **forte**, *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. II, 21.

fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.

fortiter, *adv.* [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.

fortuitō, *adv.* [fors, chance], by chance. **fortūna**, -ae, *f.* [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.

fortūnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fortūna, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.

forum, -ī, *n.*, public square, market place.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of* fodiō, dig], trench, ditch. I, 8.

fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.

frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.

fraus, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.

fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. II, 24.

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.

frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. III, 21.

frigidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. IV, 1.

frigus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, frigora, cold seasons. I, 16.

frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. II, 8.

fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.

fructus, -ūs, *m.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supply of grain, provisions. I, 10.

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [frūmentor, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.

frūmentor, 1, *intr.* [frūmentum, grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. I, 3.

fruor, fruī, fructus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. III, 22.

frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.

frūx, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. I, 28.

Fufius, *see* Cita.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; in *fugam* conicere *or* dare, put to flight. I, 11.

fugiō, *fugere*, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, *tr.* and *intr.* [*fuga*, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.

fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*fugiō*, flee], fleeing; *as noun*, runaway slave. I, 23.

fugō, 1, *tr.* [*fuga*, flight], put to flight, rout.

fūmō, 1, *intr.* [*fūmus*, smoke], smoke.

fūmus, -i, *m.*, smoke. II, 7.

funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, 25.

funditor, -ōris, *m.* [*funda*, sling], slinger. II, 7.

fundō, *fundere*, *fūdī*, *fūsum*, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.

fūnebris, -e, *adj.* [*fūnus*, funeral], of a funeral; *n. pl.* *as noun*, funeral rites.

fungor, *fungi*, *fūctus sum*, *intr.*, perform, execute, discharge.

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, 13.

fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral.

furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; II, 3.

fūrtum, -i, *n.*, theft.

fūsilis, -e, *adj.* [*fundō*, pour], liquid, molten.

futūrus, *see* sum.

G.

Gabali, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Gabali (gāb'ā-lī).

Gabinus, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinus (aw' lūs ga-bīn'ī-ūs), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. I, 6.

gaesum, -i, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, (1) Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the SueSSIONES. II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sūlpīsh'yūs gāl'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. III, 1.

galea, -ae, *f.*, a leather helmet. II, 21.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (gāl'i-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. *See map.* I, 1.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.

gallina, -ae, *f.*, hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *pl.* *as noun*, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. I, 1.

Gallus, -i, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs), an officer in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. I, 1.

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumnī (ga-rūm'nī). III, 27.

Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā'tēz). III, 27.

gaudeō, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus sum* (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. IV, 13.

Geidumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Geldumnī (jē'ī-dūm'nī or jē-dūm'nī).

Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jēn'a-va), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. I, 6.

gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.

generātīm, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.

gēns, *gentis*, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.

genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.

Gergovia, -ae, *f.* (De), Gergovia (jēr-gō'vī-a), the chief town of the Arverni.

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jēr-mā'nī), better Germans. I, 1.

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jēr-mā'nī-a), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. IV, 4.

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.

gerō, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. I, 1.

gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. I, 25.

glāns, *glandis*, *f.*, acorn; ball, slug of lead.

glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; lump.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, 2.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Gobannitiō (gōb'a-nish'yō), an *Arvernian* chief.

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Gorgobina (gōr-gōb'i-na), a city of the Boii after they had settled in the territory of the Haedui.

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl.* as noun, the Greeks. I, 29.

Graioceli, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yōs'ē-lī). I, 10.

grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. I, 43.

grātia, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habēre, to feel grateful; grātiām referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiām referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiām inire, to gain favor; grātiā following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. I, 9.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 53.

grātulor, 1, *intr.* [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, 30.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, 44.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). I, 20.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, 3.

graviter, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoyed or vexed (at); graviter premere, press hard. I, 14.

gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. I, 35.

Grudii, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Grudii (gru'dī-i).

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, steersman, pilot. III, 9.

guštō, 1, *tr.*, taste, eat.

H.

habeō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with *orā-tionem*); in animō habēre, intend; *rationem* habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an *ut* clause); *cōnsilium* habēre, form a plan; in *numerō* *hostium* habēre, consider as enemies; *aliter* *sē* habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with *pf. pass. part.*, e.g. *vectigalia redēpta* habēre, see App. 286, b. I, 2.

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i), Haeduan; as noun, a Haeduan; *pl.* the Haedui, possibly Haeduians, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. I, 3.

haesitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of haereō, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -i, *m.*, hook, barb.

harpagō -ōnis, *m.*, grappling hook.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hā-ru'dēz), a German tribe. I, 31.

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Helvētius], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyi), Helvetian; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. I, 1.

Helvii, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Helvii (hēl'vī-i).

Hercynia, -ae, *f.* (Bhi), Hercynia (hēr-sin'i-a), the Hercynian forest.

hērēditās, -tātis, *f.* [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

hiberna, -ōrum, *n.* [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Hibernia (hī-bēr'ni-a), better, Ireland.

hic, *haec*, *hoc*, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than *is*; this, this man, woman or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing. hōc*, on this account; in this respect; the (with *comparatives*); *hic . . . ille*, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. I, 1.

hic, *adv.*, here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned), there, in that place;

(*of an incident just mentioned*), then, at this time. IV, 19.

hiemō, *i*, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. I, 10.

hiems, *-mis*, *f.*, winter time, winter. III, 7.

hinc, *adv.*, from that point or place, hence.

Hispania, *-ae*, *f.* (Eabed), Hispania (hispā'ni-a), better, Spain. I, 1.

Hispanus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, Spanish.

homō, *-inis*, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.

honestus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.

honōrificus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [honōs, honor+faciō, make], conferring honor. I, 43.

honōs, *-ōris*, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.

hōra, *-ae*, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night, (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* I, 26.

horreō, *-ēre*, *-uī*, —, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. I, 32.

horribilis, *-e*, *adj.* [horreō, dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

hortor, *i*, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. I, 19.

hospes, *-itis*, *m., f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, 53.

hospitium, *-tī*, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.

hostis, *-is*, *m., f.*, (*public*) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. I, 11.

hūc, *adv.* [old form for hōc from hīc], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 38.

hūmānitās, *-tātis*, *f.* [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.

hūmānus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 3.

humilis, *-e*, *adj.* [humus, the ground],

on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 3.

humilitās, *-tātis*, *f.* [humilis, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

I.

I, sign for ūnus, one.

iaceō, *iacere*, *iacuī*, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain: II, 27.

iaciō, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactum*, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (*of an agger*), throw up, construct. II, 6.

iactō, *i*, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

iactūra, *-ae*, *f.* [iaciō, throw], loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, *-ī*, *n.* [iaciō, throw], javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. I, 5.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. I, 10.

iccius, *-cī*, *m.*, Iccius (ik'shyūs), a chief of the Remi. II, 3.

ictus, *-ūs*, *m.*, stroke, blow. I, 25.

īd., *abbr.* for īdūs.

idcirco, *adv.*, therefore.

idem, *eadem*, *idem* (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; idem atque, the same as. I, 3.

identidem, *adv.* [Idem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

idōneus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.

īdūs, *-uum*, *f., pl.*, the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months. I, 7.

ignis, *-is*, *m.*, fire. I, 4.

ignōbilis, *-e*, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.

ignōminia, *-ae*, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrō, *i*, *tr.* [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

ignōscō, *-nōscere*, *-nōvī*, *-nōtum*, *intr.* [in-+(g)nōscēns, knowing; nōscō], forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

ignōtus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.

illātus, *see* **inferō**.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *gen.* **illius**, *dat.* **illi** (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. **hic**), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; **hic** . . . **ille**, the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, a. I, 3.

illū, *adv.* [**ille**, that], in that place, there. I, 18.

illīgō, 1, *tr.* [**ligō**, bind], attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.

illō, *adv.* [old *dat.* of **ille**], thither, to that place, there (=thither). IV, 11.

illūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, illustrious.

illyricum, -i, *n.*, Illyricum (*ī-līrī-kūm*), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. II, 35.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. III, 29.

imitor, 1, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. IV, 1.

immineō, -minēre, —, —, *intr.*, project, hang over; threaten, menace.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [**in**+**mittō**, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; **trabibus immissis**, beams being placed between. IV, 17.

immolō, 1, *tr.*, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* [**in**+**mortālis**, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12.

immūnis, -e, *adj.* [**in**+**mūnus**, burdens], unburdened, by taxes, requirements of service, etc.

imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+**parātus**, prepared; **parō**, prepare], unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -i, *n.* [**impediō**, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). I, 24.

impediō, 4, *tr.* [**in**+**pēs**, foot], entangle the feet, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

impeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of **impediō**, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or bur-

dened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. I, 12.

impellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, *tr.* [**in**+**pellō**, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.

impendeō, -pendere, —, —, *intr.* [**in**+**pendeō**, hang], overhang, impend. I, 6.

impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; with **pretium**, great. IV, 2.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō**, command], commander-in-chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.

imperātum, -i, *n.* [**imperō**, command], command, order. II, 3.

imperitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+**perītus**, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.

imperium, -rī, *n.* [**imperō**, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**in**+**parō**, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, 7.

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [**in**+**patrō**, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); **impetrāre ā** (ab), gain permission from, persuade. I, 9.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.

impius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+**pīus**, pious], wicked.

implicō, 1, *tr.* [**in**+**plicō**, fold], interlace, interweave.

implōrō, 1, *tr.* [**in**+**plōrō**, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [**in**+**pōnō**, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.

importō, 1, *tr.* [**in**+**portō**, carry], carry or bring in, import. I, 1.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+**probus**, good], unprincipled. I, 17.

imprōvisō, *adv.* [**imprōvisus**, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+**prōvī-**

- sus**, foreseen; **próvideō**, unforeseen, unexpected; **dē impróvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, 3.
- imprūdēns, -entis, adj.** [**in**+**prūdēns**, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, 29.
- imprūdētia, -ae, f.** [**imprūdēns**, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27.
- impūbēs, -eris, adj.** [**in**+**pūbēs**, mature], immature; unmarried, chaste.
- impugnō**, 1, *tr.* [**in**+**pugnō**, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, 44; III, 26.
- impulsus**, *see* **impellō**.
- impulsus, -ūs, m.** [**impellō**, impel], impulse, instigation.
- impūne, adv.** [**in**+**poena**, punishment], without punishment. I, 14.
- impūnitās, -tātis, f.** [**in**+**poena**, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, 14.
- imūsus, sup. of inferus.**
- in-, negative prefix.**
- in, prep. with acc. and abl.** *With acc.* (1) *of motion, from one place into or towards another place*, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon; (2) *of time*, till, into; for; on, at; (3) *other uses*, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs**, from day to day; **in fugam conicere**, put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere**, meet with Caesar; **summum in cruciātum venire**, be severely punished. *With abl.* (1) *of rest or motion within a place*, in, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) *of time*, in, during, in the course of; on; (3) *other uses*, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī**, over the Arar; **in eō**, in his case; **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in opere esse**, be engaged [in the work. I, 1.
- inānis, -e, adj.**, empty, vain, idle.
- incautē, adv.** [**incautus**, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.
- incautus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in**+**cautus**, cautious; **caveō**, be cautious], incautious, unwary.
- incendium, -di, n.** [**incendō**, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.
- incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, tr.** [*cf.* **candēō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.
- incertus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in**+**certus**, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.
- incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr.** [**ca-dō**, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I, 53; II, 14.
- incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr.** [**cae-dō**, cut], cut into. II, 17.
- incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.** [**capiō**, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.
- incitō, 1, tr.** [**citō**, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; **cursū incitātō**, at full speed. I, 4.
- incognitus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in**+**cognitus**, known; **cognōscō**, learn], unknown. IV, 20.
- incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and intr.** [**colō**, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.
- incolumis, -e, adj.**, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.
- incommodē, adv.** [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.
- incommodum, -i, n.** [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.
- incrēdibilis, -e, adj.** [**in**+**crēdibilis**, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.
- increpitō, 1, tr.** [*freq. of* **increpō**, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.
- incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr.** [*cf.* **cubō**, lie], recline upon; devote one's self to.
- incursiō, -ōnis, f.** [**incurrō**, rush into or upon], invasion; onset, attack.
- incursus, -ūs, m.** [**incurrō**, rush into or upon], attack. II, 20.
- incūsō, 1, tr.** [**causa**, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, 40; II, 15.

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.

indiciūm, -cī, *n.* [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; *per* indicium, through informers. I, 4.

indicō, -dicere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.* [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 30.

indictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+dictus, *pf. part. of* dicō, say], unsaid; *causā* indictā, without a trial.

indignē, *adv.* [indignus, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

indignitās, -tātis, *f.* [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.

indignor, 1, *intr.* [indignus, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

indignus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+dignus, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

indiligēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+diligēns, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.

indiligenter, *adv.* [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. II, 33.

indiligentia, -ae, *f.* [indiligēns, careless], negligence.

inducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.

indulgentia, -ae, *f.* [indulgeō, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on; *sē* induere, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.

industriē, *adv.* [industrius, diligent], diligently.

indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*, truce. IV, 12.

Indutiomārus, -ī, *m.*, Indutiomarus (in-dū'shyō-mā'rūs), a chief of the Treveri.

inēō, -ire, -īī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; *inīre cōnsiliūm*, form; *inīre ratiōnem*, make an estimate, decide; *inīre grātiam*, gain; *inīre numerum*, enumerate. II, 2.

inermis, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+ars, skill], with-

out skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.

infāmia, -ae, *f.* [in-+fāma, renown], dishonor, ill repute.

infāns, -antis, *adj.* [in-+fāns, speaking], not speaking; *as noun*, infant.

infectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+factus, done; faciō, do], not done, unaccomplished, unfinished.

inferior, -ius, *comp. of* inferus.

inferō, *inferre*, *intulī*, *illātum*, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; *in equum inferre*, mount on a horse; *causā illātā*, making an excuse; *signa inferre*, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.

inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; *ab inferiōre parte*, below, down stream; *sup.*, *infimus* or *imus*, lowest, last; *with collis*, the base of; *ad infimum*, *ab infimō*, at the bottom. I, 1.

infestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; *infestis signis*, with standards in battle array.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], stain.

infidēlis, -e, *adj.* [in-+fidēlis, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum [figō, fix], *tr.*, fasten in.

infimus, *sup. of* inferus.

infinītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+finitus, ended; finīō, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

infirmītās, -tātis, *f.* [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. IV, 5.

infirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+firmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [flectō, bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. I, 25.

influō, -fluere, -fluxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossūm, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig or drive into.

infrā, *adv.* [inferus, below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller than. IV, 36.

ingēns, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 39; IV, 10.

ingrātus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**+**grātus**, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [**gradior**, go], go or come into, enter. II, 4.

iniciō, -icere, -lēcī, -lectum, tr. [**laciō**, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. I, 46; IV, 17.

inimicitia, -ae, f. [**inimicus**, unfriendly], enmity.

inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**+**amicus**, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, an enemy (*personal*), rival, to be distinguished from *hostis*, a public enemy. I, 7.

iniquitās, -tātis, f. [**iniquus**, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**+**aequus**, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.

initium, -tī, n. [**ineō**, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge, of a country, borders. I, 1.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr. [**iungō**, join], join to; impose.

iniūria, -ae, f. [**in**+**iūs**, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m. [**iubeō**, order], without command or order. I, 19.

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr. [**nāscor**, be born], be born in, be engendered; **innātus, pf. part. as adj.**, inborn, natural.

innitor, -nitī, -nixus sum, intr. [**nītor**, rest on], lean upon. II, 27.

innocēns, -entis, adj. [**in**+**nocēns**, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

innocentia, -ae, f. [**innocēns**, innocent], integrity. I, 40.

inopia, -ae, f. [**inops**, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

inopināns, -antis, adj. [**in**+**opināns**, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.

inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. IV, 25.

insciēns, -entis, adj. [**in**+**sciēns**, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.

inscientia, -ae, f. [**insciēns**, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

inscius, -a, -um, adj. [**sciō**, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr. [**sequor**, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr., insert, thrust in. III, 14.

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. [**sedeō**, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.

insidior, 1, intr. [**insidiae**, ambush], lie in ambush.

insignis, -e, adj. [**signō**, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. I, 12.

insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum, tr. [**saliō**, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

insimulō, 1, tr., charge, blame, accuse.

insinuō, 1, tr. [**sinuō**, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

insistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, tr. and intr. [**sistō**, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with *rationem*, adopt, use. II, 27.

insolenter, adv. [**insolēns**, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

inspectō, 1, tr. [**spectō**, look], look at, view.

instabilis, -e, adj. [**in**+**stabilis**, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.

instar, n., indecl., likeness; with *gen.*, like. II, 17.

instigō, 1, tr., urge on, incite.

instituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. and intr. [**statuō**, set up], set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **institūtus, pf. part. as adj.**,

usual, customary; finished, *in addition to definitions above.* I, 14.

institutum, -i, *n.* [institūō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I, 1.

instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. I, 16.

instrumentum, -i, *n.* [instruō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

instruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. I, 22.

insuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV, 24.

insuētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island. III, 9.

insuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17.

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; **rē integrā**, before anything was done. III, 4.

integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover over; protect.

intelligō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter+legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, 10.

intendō, -tendere, -tēdi, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; **intentus**, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, 22.

inter, *prep.* with *acc.* (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between: (2) of time, during, within, for: (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: (4) with *reflex. pron.*, of reciprocal action, (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, **inter sē differunt**, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, **cohortāti inter sē**, encouraging one another. I, 1.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go or come between,

lie between, intervene, be between; pass. I, 7.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, 27.

intercludō, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with *itinera*, block. I, 23.

interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *intr.* [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquā atque igni interdicerere**, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. I, 46.

interdiū, *adv.* [diēs, day], during the day, by day. I, 8.

interdum, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14.

intereā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. I, 8.

intereō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], perish, die.

interesse, *see intersum.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12.

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; **interiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between, intervening, interspersed; **mediocri interiectō spatiō**, not far away. II, 17.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. I, 16.

interior, -ius, *adj.* (App. 43), interior, inner; as *noun*, **interiōrēs**, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

interitus, -ūs, *m.* [intereō, die], destruction, death.

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. I, 26.

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13.

interpellō, *1, tr.*, interrupt, hinder. I, 44.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; **fidem interpōnere**, pledge. I, 42; IV, 9.

interpres, -etis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. I, 19.

interpretor, 1, tr. [interpres, interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrogō, 1, tr. [rogō ask], ask, question.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off or through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, scidī, -scissum, tr. [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, 9.

intersum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; **magnī interest**, it is of great importance. I, 15.

intervallum, -ī, n. [vāllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. I, 22.

intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come between, come up; arrive.

interventus, -ūs, m. [intervenīō, come between], coming; aid. III, 15.

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave in or together. II, 33.

intoleranter, adv., intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, prep. with acc. [inter, between], within, inside; into. I, 32; II, 4.

intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. III, 26.

intrō, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II, 17.

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [intrō, within+dūcō, lead], lead or bring into. II, 5.

introeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, intr. [intrō, within+eō, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

introitus, -ūs, m. [introeō, go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. II, 33.

intrōrsus, adv. [intrō, within+versus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on the inside. II, 18.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [intrō, within+rumpō, break], break in or through.

intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. I, 32.

intus, adv., within, on the inside.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+ūsitātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, 31.

inūtilis, -e, adj. [in-+ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II, 16.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. [veniō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, 53; II, 16.

inventor, -ōris, m. [inveniō, find], inventor, author.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvi, -veterātum, intr., grow old; become established. II, 1.

invictus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, 36.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, intr. [videō, see], look askance at; envy. II, 31.

invidia, -ae, f. [invidēō, envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, 9.

invitō, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, 35; IV, 6.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invitō**, against his will. I, 8.

Iovis, see Iuppiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59) intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive **sē**, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; *ne* she, it, they; *as* adj., very; *in* gen. his, her, its, or their own. I, 1.

irācūdia, -ae, f. [irācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.

irācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ira, anger], irritable. I, 31.

irrideō, -ridere, -rīsi, -risum, *intr.* [in+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.

irridiculē, *adv.* [in+⁶¹ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 42.

irrupō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.* [in+rumpō, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.

irruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [irrupō, break into], a breaking into, attack.

is, **ea**, **id**, *gen. eius* (App. 57), *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context*, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is locus quō**, a, or the, place where; **ea quae**, (the) things which; **eō**, *with comp.*, the; **eō magis**, all the more; **eō . . . quō**, *with comparatives*, the . . . the. I, 1.

iste, -a, -ud, *gen. istius* (App. 55), *dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed*, that, this.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita**, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita**, not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut**, just . . . as; so . . . that. I, 11.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, *sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula*. I, 10.

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.

iter, **itineris**, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter**, march, travel; **magnis itineribus**, by forced marches. I, 3.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum**, again and again. I, 31.

Itius, -tī, *m.* (Ad), Itius (Ish'yūs), *a harbor*.

itūrus, *see eō*.

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. I, 48.

iubeō, iubere, iussi, iussum, *tr.*, order. bid, command, enjoin. I, 15.

iūdicium, -cī, *n.* [iūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; **iūdicium facere**, express an opinion; **iūdiciō**, by design, purposely. I, 4.

iūdicō, *1, tr.* [iūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.

iugum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.

iumentum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3.

iunctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. IV, 17.

iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iunctum, *tr.*, join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.

iūnior, *see iuvenis*.

Iūnius, -nī, *m.*, (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *see Brūtus*; (2) Quintus Junius (kwīn'tūs jū'nī-ūs), *a Spaniard in Caesar's service*.

Iuppiter, Iovis (App. 27), *m.*, Jupiter (jū'pī-tēr), or Jove, *god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans*.

Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. I, 2.

iūrō, *1, tr. and intr.* [iūs, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.

iūs, **iūris**, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.

iūs iurandum, **iūris iurandī**, *n.* [iūs, right+iūrō, swear], an oath. I, 3.

iussū, *m.*, *abl. of iussus*, -ūs, [iubeō, order], by command, by order.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with funera*, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; *comp.*, **iūnior**, *in plur. as noun*, men of military age.

iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. III, 16.

iuvō, iuvare, iuvi, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. I, 26.

iuxtā, *adv.* [iungō, join], next, near. II, 26.

K.

Kal., *abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 6.

L.

L., *abbr. for Lūcius, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen.* I, 6.

L., *sign for quinquāgintā, fifty.*

Laberius, -rī, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn'tūs lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

Lablēnus, -ī, m., Titus Atius Labienus (tīt'ūs ā'shyūs lā'bi-ō'nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. I, 10.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, intr., slip; go wrong; *hāc spē lāpsus*, disappointed in this hope.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44; III, 5.

labōrō, 1, intr. [labor, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.

labrum, -ī, n., lip; edge.

lāc, lactis, n., milk. IV, 1.

laccessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.

lacrima, -ae, f., tear. I, 20.

lacrimō, 1, intr. [lacrima, tear], weep.

lacus, -ūs, m., lake. I, 2.

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, tr., hurt, damage; *laedere fidem*, to break faith.

laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, joyful], joy, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. III, 18.

languidē, adv. [languidus, faint], faintly, sluggishly.

languidus, -a, -um, adj., weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.

languor, -ōris, m., weakness, faintness, lassitude.

lapis, -idis, m., stone. I, 46; II, 6.

laqueus, -ī, m., noose, snare.

largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18.

largiter, adv. [largus, large], largely, freely, much; *largiter posse*, to have great influence. I, 18.

largitiō, -ōnis, f. [largior, bribe], bribery. I, 9.

lassitūdō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.

lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; *longō lātēque*, far and wide. I, 2.

latebra, -ae, f. [lateō, lie hidden], hiding place.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19.

lātitudō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. I, 2.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Latobrigi (lāt'ō-brī'jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17.

latrōcinium, -nī, n. [latrō, robber], robbery, brigandage.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. broad, wide, extensive. I, 2.

lātus, see ferō.

latus, -eris, n., side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25.

laudō, 1, tr. [laus, praise], praise.

laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, tr., wash; *in pass.*, bathe. IV, 1.

laxō, 1, tr., stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.

lēgātīō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. I, 3.

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō, choose], a legion. I, 7.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.

Lemannus, -ī (with or without lacus), m. (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better Lake Lemán, or the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.

Lemovicēs, -um, m. (CDd), the Lemo-
vices (lēm'ō-vī'sēz).
lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth.
IV, 28.
lēnitās, -tātis, f. [lēnis, smooth],
smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.
lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly,
smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.
Lepontii, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontii
(lē-pōn'shī). IV, 10.
lepus, -oris, m., hare.
Leuci, -ōrum, m. (Bfg), the Leuci
(lū'sī). I, 40.
Levaci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Levaci
(lē-vā'sī).
levis, -e, adj., light (*in weight*), slight;
light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II,
10.
levitās, -tātis, f. [levis, light], light-
ness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.
levō, 1, tr. [levis, light], lighten, ease,
relieve.
lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment.
I, 1.
Lexovii, -ōrum, m. (Bd), the Lexovii
(lēk-sō'vī-i). III, 9.
libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], willing-
ly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III,
18.
liber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained,
free; undisputed. I, 44.
liberālītās, -tātis, f. [liber, free],
freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. I,
18.
liberālīter, adv. [liber, free], gracious-
ly, generously, kindly. II, 5.
liberē, adv. [liber, free], freely, without
restraint, boldly. I, 18.
liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber, free], *the free*
members of the household (as opposed to
slaves); children. I, 11.
liberō, 1, tr. [liber, free], make or set
free, release, deliver. IV, 19.
libertās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], free-
dom, liberty, independence. I, 17.
librīlis, -e, adj. [libra, a pound], of a
pound weight; **funda librīlis**, a sling
for throwing heavy missiles.
licēns, see liceor.
licentia, -ae, f. [licet, it is permitted],
lawlessness, presumption.
liceor, 2, intr., bid (*at an auction*). I, 18.

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est,
intr., impers., it is lawful, one has per-
mission, it is permitted, one may, one
is allowed; **licet mihi**, I may; **petere**
ut liceat, to ask permission. I, 7.
Liger, -eris, m. (Cce), the river Liger,
(lī'jēr), *better* the Loire. III, 9.
lignātiō, -ōnis, f. [lignum, wood], the
procuring of wood.
lignātor, -ōris, m. [lignum, wood], one
sent to get wood, wood-forager.
lilium, -li, n., lily; *a kind of pitfall,*
named from its resemblance to a lily.
linea, -ae, f. [linum, flax], linen thread;
line.
Lingonēs, -um, m. (Bf), the Lingones
(līng'gō-nēz). I, 26.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. I, 1.
lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue], a lit-
tle tongue; a tongue of land. III,
12.
linter, -tris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe.
I, 12.
linum, -i, n., flax; linen, canvas. III,
13.
lis, litis, f., strife; lawsuit; damages.
Liscus, -ī, m., Liscus (līs'kūs), *a chief*
magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.
Litaviccus, -ī, m. Litaviccus (līv'a-
vīk'ūs), a Haeduan nobleman.
littera, -ae, f., a letter *of the alphabet,*
a written sign, mark, or character; in
pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epis-
tle. I, 26.
litus, -oris, n., seashore, beach, shore.
IV, 23.
locus, -ī, m. (*pl. loca, -ōrum, n.*), place,
position, locality, situation; topic,
subject; condition, state; rank, fami-
ly; opportunity; **obsidium locō**, as
hostages. I, 2.
locūtus, see loquor.
longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away,
distant; **longē lātēque**, far and wide.
I, 1.
longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus,
long], far off, distant, remote; long,
long continued. I, 47; IV, 27.
longitūdō, -inis, f. [longus, long],
length, extent; long duration. I, 2.
longurius, -rī, m. [longus, long], a
long pole. III, 14.

longus, -a, -um, adj. long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, intr. speak, talk, converse. I, 20.

lōrica, -ae, f. coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lūcānius, -nī, m. Quintus Lucanius (kwīn'tūs lū-kā'nī-ūs) a centurion.

Lucterius, -rī, m. Lucterius (lūk-tē'rī-ūs), a chief of the Cadurci.

Lugotorix, -igis, m. Lugotorix (lū-gōt'ō-rīks), a British chief.

lūna, -ae, f. the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.

Lutetia, -ae, f. (Be). Lutetia (lū-tē'shyā), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.

lūx, lūcis, f. light, daylight; **primā lūce**, at daybreak. I, 22.

lūxuria, -ae, f. luxury, high living. II, 15.

M.

M., abbr. for Mārcus (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.

M., sign for mille, thousand.

māceria, -ae, f. wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, f. [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.

maestus, -a, -um, adj. [maereō, be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf) Magetobriga (māj'ō-tōb'rī-ga), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.

magis, adv., comp. [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.*, **maximē**, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, 4.

magnificus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, great + faciō, make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (ventī); severity (poenae); **magnitūdō animī**, courage. I, 39; II, 12.

magnopere, adv. [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especial-

ly, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, 13.

magnus, -a, -um, adj. great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); **magnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **magnīs itineribus**, by forced marches. *Comp.*, **maior**; *sup.*, **maximus**. I, 2.

maiestās, -tātis, f. [maior, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

maior, māius, adj. [*comp. of magnus*, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, **maiorēs nātū**, elders, old men; **maiorēs**, ancestors. I, 13.

malacia, -ae, f. a calm at sea. III, 15.

male, adv. [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, **peius**; *sup.*, **pessimē**. I, 40.

malefīcium, -cī, n. [malum, evil + faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7.

mālō, mälle, mālui, — (App. 83), *tr. and intr.* [magis, more + volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.

mālus, -ī, m. mast; pole, beam (*up-right*). III, 14.

malus, -a, -um, adj. evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, **peior**, **peius**; *n. as noun*, a worse thing; *sup.*, **pessimus**. I, 31.

mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.

mandō, ī, tr. [manus, hand + dō, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m. (Cf), the Mandubii (mān-dū'bī-i).

Mandubracius, -cī, m. Mandubracius (mān'dū-brā'shyūs), a British chief.

māne, adv. in the morning, early. IV, 13.

manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, intr. remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.

manipulāris, -e, adj. [manipulus, maniple], of a maniple; as noun, common soldier; **suus manipulāris**, a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -ī, m. [manus, hand + pleō, fill], a handful (*esp. of hay, about a*

pole, anciently used as a standard), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. II, 25.

Manlius, -li, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs măn/li-ūs), *progenitor in 78 B.C.* III, 20.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (*pass.*, mānsuēfiō), *tr.* [mānsuētus, tame+faciō, make], tame.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. II, 14.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; in **manibus**, near at hand; **manū**, by hand, by art; **ferrea manus**, a grappling-hook; **dare manūs**, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. I, 25.

Marcomanni, -ōrum, *m.* (Bj), the Marcomanni (mār/kō-măn/i). I, 51.

mare, -is, *n.*, sea; **mare Oceanum**, the ocean. III, 7.

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; **ōra**, the sea shore. II, 34.

Marius, -ri, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mār/rī-ūs), *the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni.* I, 40.

Mārs, -tis, *m.*, Mars (mārz), *god of war*; **aequō Mārte**, with equal advantage.

mās, maris, *adj.*, male; *as noun*, a male.

matara, -ae, *f.*, *Celtic javelin.* I, 26.

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae**, matrons. I, 18.

māteria, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. III, 29.

māterior, *1. intr.* [māteria, material, wood], procure wood.

Matiscō, -ōnis, *m.* (Of), Matisco (mā'tis kō), *a city of the Haedui, now Macon.*

mātrimōnium, -ni, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in **mātrimōnium dare**, to give in marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, to marry (*said of the man*). I, 3.

Matrona, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the river Matrona (māt'rō-nā), *now the Marne.* I, 1.

mātūrō, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūrui, —, *intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], become ripe, ripen.

mātūrō, *1. tr. and intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. I, 16.

maximē, *see magis.*

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of magnus*, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, 3.

Maximus, -i, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk/sī-mūs), *victor over the Gauls.*, 121 B.C. I, 45.

medeor, medēri, —, *intr.*, remedy, cure.

mediocris, -cre, *adj.* [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.

mediocriter, *adv.* [mediocris, moderate], moderately; **nōn mediocriter**, in no small degree. I, 39.

Mediomatrici, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'dī-ō-māt/rī-sī). IV, 10.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius, middle+terra, land], midland, inland.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; **locus medius utriusque**, a place midway between the two. I, 24.

Meldi, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Meldi (mēl'di).

mellor, *comp. of bonus.*

membrum, -i, *n.*, member of the body, limb. IV, 24.

memini, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. III, 6.

memoria, -ae, *f.* [memor, mindfull], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; **memoriā tenēre**, remember; **patrum memoriā**, in the time of our fathers. I, 7.

Menapii, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā/pī-i). II, 4.

mendācium, -ci, *n.*, lie, falsehood.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; **mentēs animōsque**, minds and hearts; **aliēnātā mente**, bereft of reason. I, 39; III, 19.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. I, 5.

mēnsūra, -ae, *f.* [mētiōr, measure], measure.

mentio, -ōnis, *f.* naming, mention.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [mercōr, trade], merchant, trader. I, 1.
mercātūra, -ae, *f.* [mercōr, trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.
mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. I, 31.
Mercurius, -rī, *m.*, Mercurius (mēr-kū'rī-ūs), the god Mercury.
mereō, and **mereor**, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odilum); serve as a soldier (i.e., earn pay). I, 11.
meridiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [merīdiēs, midday], of midday or noon.
merīdiēs, -ei, *m.* [for medidiēs, from medius, middle+diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50.
meritō, *adv.* [meritum, desert], justly, deservedly.
meritum, -ī, *n.* [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, 14.
Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kūs vā-lō'rī-ūs mē-sā'lā), consul, 61 B.C. I, 2.
metior, metiri, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal or measure out, distribute. I, 16.
Metiosēdum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Metiosedum (mē'shyō-sē'dūm), a town of the Senones, now Melun.
Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). I, 47.
metō, metere, messui, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. IV, 32.
metus, -ūs, *m.* [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metū territāre, terrify; hōc metū = metū huius rei, from fear of this. IV, 4.
meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.
miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equitēs); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. I, 7.
milia, see mille.
militāris, -e, *adj.* [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, 21.

militia, -ae, *f.* [miles, soldier], military service, warfare.
mille, indecl. num. *adj.*, a thousand; *pl.* as noun, milia, -ium, *n.*, thousands (usually followed by part. gen.); milli passuum, thousands of paces, miles I, 2.
Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (mī-nēr'vā) goddess of wisdom and the arts.
minimē, *adv.* [minimus, least], least very little; by no means, not at all I, 1.
minimus, -a, -um, *sup. of parvus*.
minor, *comp. of parvus*.
Minucius, -cī, *m.* Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs mī-nū'shyūs bās'lūs), a commander of cavalry.
minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum, *tr.* and *intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair diminish; settle (contrōversiās) minuente aestū, the tide ebbing I, 20.
minus, *adv. comp.* [parvus, little], less not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. I, 2.
miror, 1, *tr.* and *intr.*, wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.
mirus, -a, -um, *adj.* [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. I, 84.
miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor worthless. I, 32; II, 28.
miser cordia, -ae, *f.* [misereō, pity-cōr, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.
miseror, 1, *tr.* [miser, wretched], be wail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.
misī, see mittō.
missus, -ūs, *m.* [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; missū Caesaris, sent by Caesar.
missus, see mittō.
mitissimē, *superl. adv.* [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.
mittō, mittere, misī, missum, *tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch: hurl, discharge. I, 7.
mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. IV, 5.
mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed;

changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.

mōbiliter, *adv.* [mōbillis, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.

moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.

modestia, -ae, *f.* [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, *adv.* [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only, . . . but also. I, 16.

modus, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modi**, of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō**, with gen., in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 31.

moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, 12.

molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre**, be annoyed. II, 1.

mōlimentum, -i, *n.* [mōllior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. I, 34.

molitus, -a, -um, *see* molō.

molliō, 4, *tr.* [mollis, soft], soften, make easy.

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. III, 19.

mollitia, -ae, *f.* [mollis, soft], weakness.

mollitiēs, -ēi, *f.* [mollis, soft], weakness.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, grind. I, 5.

mōmentum, -i, *n.*, weight, influence, importance.

Mona, -ae, *f.*, Mona (mō'nā), an island off the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.

moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. I, 20.

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, 15.

morbus, -i, *m.*, illness, sickness, disease.

Morini, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mōr'i-ni). II, 4.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. I, 4.

Moritasgus, -i, *m.*, Moritasgus (mōr'ī-tās'gūs), a chief of the Senones.

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; **sibi mortem cōsciscere**, commit suicide. I, 4.

mortuus, *see* morior.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. I, 4.

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sā), now the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, 23.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence; with **castra**, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 15.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman; wife. I, 29.

māliō, -ōnis, *m.* [mūlus, mule], mule driver, muleteer.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.

multō, 1, *tr.*, fine, deprive one of something as a fine.

multō, *adv.* [*abl.* of multus, much], by far, much.

multum, *adv.* [*acc.* of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* **plūs**, more; **plūs posse**, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* **plūrimum**, most, very; **plūrimum posse**, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.* many; with *abl.* denoting time when, late; as *noun*, many persons or things; *comp.* **plūs**, plūris, more; as *noun*, more; *pl.* more, several, many; *sup.* **plūrimus**, -a, -um, most; *pl.*, very many. I, 3.

mūlus, -i, *m.*, a mule.

Munātius, -tī, *m.*, Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū'shyūs mū-nā'shyūs plāng'kūs), a lieutenant of Caesar.

mundus, -i, *m.*, universe, world.

mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. II, 17.

mūniō, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. I, 24.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, 8.

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. I, 43.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pilum**, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. III, 14.

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, a wall. I, 8.

musculus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of mus*, mouse], shed, mantlet.

mutilus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, *see nancīscor*.

nam, *conj.*, for. I, 12.

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammelius (nā-mē'yūs). I, 7.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (nām'nē-tēz). III, 9.

namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. I, 38; III, 13.

nancīscor, **nancīscī**, **nactus sum**, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, 53; IV, 23.

Nantuātes, -ium, *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (nān'tū-ā'tēz). III, 1.

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. III, 20.

nāscor, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, *intr.*, be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. II, 18.

Nasua, -ae, *m.* Nasua (nāsh'ū-a), a leader of the Suebi. I, 37.

nātālis, -e, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], pertaining to birth; diēs, birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 35.

nātivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], native; natural.

nātura, -ae, *f.* [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, 2.

nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor, be born], birth; **maiōrēs nātū**, greater by birth, elders. II, 13.

nātus, -a, -um, *see nāscor*.

nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for nāvita*; nāvis, ship], sailor. III, 9.

nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta, sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, 8.

nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, 19.

nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of nāvis*, ship], small boat, skiff. I, 53.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvigō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.

nāviglum, -gi, *n.* [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.

nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [nāvis, ship], set sail, sail. III, 8.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; **nāvis longa**, galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria**, transport. I, 8.

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. II, 25.

nē (App. 188, b), (1), *conj.* with subj., that ... not, so that ... not, in order that ... not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that, lest. (2), *adv.*, not; **nē ... quidem** (*enclosing the emphatic word*), not even. I, 4.

ne, **nec**, **neg**-, *inseparable negative prefixes*.

-ne, *interrog. enclitic*; in direct questions, simply sign of a question (App. 213, a); in indirect questions, whether:

-ne ... -ne, **-ne ... an**, **utrum ... -ne**, whether ... or. I, 50; IV, 14.

nec, *see neque*.

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. of necessārius*, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, 17.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with *tempus*, critical; as *noun*, kinsman, friend. I, 11.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.

necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, 11.

necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [necesse; cf. **necessārius**, friend], friendship, alliance. I, 43.

necne, *conj.* [nec, nor+ne], or not. I, 50.

necō, 1, *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 53; III, 16.

nēcubī, *conj.+adv.* [nē, not+(c)ubi, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nefarius, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās, sin], wicked, impious.

nefās, *n., indecl.* [ne+fas, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.

neg-, see ne-.

neglēgō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say...not. I, 8.

negōtiōr, 1, *intr.* [negōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.

negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg+ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare**, employ, direct; **quid negōti**, what business; **nihil negōtī**, no difficulty. I, 34; II, 2.

Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). I, 51.

nēmō, *acc. nēminem, m. and f.* [ne+homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.

nēquāquam, *adv.* [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.

neque (nec) (App. 188, a), *conj.* [ne+que], and not, not, nor; but not; **neque...neque**, neither...nor. I, 4.

nēquiquam, *adv.* [nē+qui(d)quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Nervius], of the Nervii. III, 5.

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-i). II, 4.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. I, 20.

neu, see nēve.

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen. -trius, dat. -trī*), *adj. used as noun*, [ne+uter,

which of two], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, 9.

nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), *conj.* [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. I, 26.

nex, *necis, f.*, violent death, death, execution. I, 16.

nihil, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil**, somewhat. I, 11.

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.* [nimis, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, *conj.* [ne+si, if], if not, except, unless. I, 22.

Nitlobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dd), the Nitlobroges (nīsh'ī-ōb'rō-jēz).

nītor, **nīti**, **nixus sum**, *intr.*, rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I, 13.

nix, **nivis**, *f.*, snow.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. I, 2.

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.

noceō, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, **nocitum**, *intr.*, injure, hurt; **nocēns**, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. III, 13.

noctū, *adv.* [nox, night], by night. I, 8. **nocturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I, 38.

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot; joint.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [ne+volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imp.* **nōlī** or **nōlite**, *with inf.* (App. 219), do not. I, 16.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** *with gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine**, on his or their own account, personally. I, 13.

nōminātīm, *adv.* [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.

nōminō, 1, *tr.* [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.

nōn (App. 188, *a*), *adv.*, not; *no.* I, 3.
nōnāgintā, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, ninety. I, 29.
nōndum, *adv.* [**nōn**, not+**dum**], not yet. I, 6.
nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. II, 23.
Nōrēla, -ae, *f.* (Ck) Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.
Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.
nōs, *see ego*.
nōscō, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; **nōvī**, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; **nōtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. III, 9.
nōsmet, *see egomet*.
noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [**nōs**, we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. I, 1.
nōtitia, -ae, *f.* [**nōscō**, know], knowledge, acquaintance.
nōtus, -a, -um, *see nōscō*.
novem, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, nine.
Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō-vī-ō-dū-nūm) (1), the capital of the Sueviones, the modern Soissons (Be); (2), a city of the Bituriges (Ce); (3), a city of the Haedui (Ce). II, 12.
novitās, -tātis, *f.* [**novus**, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. IV, 34.
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, **novissimus**, -a, -um, latest, last; *as noun or with agmen*, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.
nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night; **media nox**, middle of the night, midnight; **multa nocte**, late at night. I, 26.
noxia, -ae, *f.*, crime, offense.
nūbō, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.
nūdō, *1, tr.* [**nūdus**, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.
nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.
nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllius**, *adj.* [**ne**+**ūllus**, any], not any, no; *as*

noun, no one, none; **nōn nūllus**, some; *as noun*, some, some persons. I, 7.
num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* I, 14.
nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divinity; divine will.
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; *in numerō*, with *gen.*, among, as. I, 3.
Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mi-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. II, 7.
nummus, -ī, *m.*, coin.
numquam, *adv.* [**ne**+**umquam**, ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam**, sometimes. I, 8.
nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.
nūntiō, *1, tr.* [**nūntius**, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.
nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.
nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. I, 6.
nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [**nuō**, **nod**], nod; sign, command; *ad nūtum*, at one's nod or command. I, 31; IV, 28.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward against; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, why. I, 4.
obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**aes**, money], in debt; *as noun*, debtor. I, 4.
obducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**ducō**, lead], lead towards; extend, dig. II, 8.
obeō, -ire, -īī, -itum, *tr.* [**eō**, go. App. 84], go to or towards; perform, attend to.
obiclō, -icere, -īēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [**iaciō**, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; **obiectus** *part. as adj.*, lying in the way or opposite, in the way. I, 26.
obitus, -ūs, *m.* [**obeō**, go to death], destruction. II, 29.
oblātus, *see offerō*.

obliquē, adv. [obliquus, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.

obliquus, -a, -um, adj., running obliquely, slanting.

obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum, intr. [obliviō, forgetfulness], forget. I, 14.

obsecrō, 1, tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.

obsequentia, -ae, f. [obsequor, comply], complaisance, compliance.

observō, 1, tr. [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.

obses, -idis, m. and f. [obsideō, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.

obsessiō, -ōnis, f. [obsideō, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

obsideō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, tr. [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f. [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19.

obsignō, 1, tr. [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.

obsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, intr. [sistō, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinātē, adv., firmly, resolutely.

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, tr. [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.

obstruō, -struere, -struxī, -strūctum, tr. [struō, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtemperō, 1, intr. [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.

obtestor, 1, tr. [*estor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.

obtuli, see offerō.

ubvenio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [venio, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. II, 23.

obviam, adv [via, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

occasiō, -ōnis, f. [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.

occāsus, -ūs, m. [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with *sōlis*, sunset; the west. I, 1.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, intr. [ob+cadō, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; *occidēns sōl*, the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.

occultātiō, -ōnis, f. [occultō, hide], concealment.

occultē, adv. [occultus, secret], secretly.

occultō, 1, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.

occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.

occupātiō, -ōnis, f. [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.

occupō, 1, tr. [ob+capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.

occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.

Ōceanus, -i, m., the ocean; *as adj.*, with *mare*, the ocean. I, 1.

Ocelum, -i, n. (Dg), *Ocelum*? (ōs'ē lūm). I, 10.

octāvus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [octō, eight], eighth. II, 23.

octingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.

octō (VIII), card. num. adj. indecl. eight. I, 21.

Octodūrus, -i, m. (Cg), *Octodurus* (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). III, 1.

octōgēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octō, eight], eighty each, eighty.

octōgintā (LXXX), card. num. adj. indecl. [octō, eight], eighty. I, 2.

octōni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight at a time, eight.

oculus, -i, *m.*, eye. I, 12.

ōdī, ōdisse, (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of *pres.*, hate, detest. I, 18.

odium, -dī, *n.*, hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsūm, *tr.* [ob+fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; **animū offendere**, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [offendō, hurt], offence. I, 19.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [ob+ferō, bear], bring before, present; **offer**, confer upon, give; *with sē*, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.

officiūm, -cī, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō**, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., Ollovico (ō-lōv'ī-kō), a king of the *Nitiobroges*.

omitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.

omniō, adv. [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *n. pl.* as noun, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl.* as noun, all possessions or goods. I, 1.

onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; *with nāvis*, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.

onerō, i, tr. [onus, load], load.

onus, -eris, n., load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.

opera, -ae, f. [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare **operam**, give attention, take pains. II, 25.

opiniō, -ōnis, f. [opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opiniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. II, 3.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, intr. impers., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; *when translated as personal verb*, must, ought. I, 4.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in

pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.

oppidum, -i, n. fortified town, town, stronghold. I, 5.

oppōnō, -ponere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [ob+ponō, place], place against or opposite, oppose; **oppositus, pf. part.** as *adj.*, in front, opposite.

opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus, fit], opportunely, seasonably. IV, 22.

opportunitās, -tātis, f. [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; *with locī*, favorable situation or position; *with temporis*, favorable opportunity. III, 12.

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.

oppositus, see oppōnō.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. II, 6.

oppugnō, i, tr. [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, 5.

ops, opis, f., help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. I, 20.

optātus, -a, -um, adj. [optō, wish], wished for, desired, welcome.

optimē, sup. of bene.

optimus, sup. of bonus.

opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of *eng. ineering or architecture*; **nātūrā et opē**, by nature and art; **opera**, crafts. I, 8.

opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. **opus**, work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est**, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the *nom.* or *abl.* (App. 146). I, 34; II, 8.

ōra, -ae, f., border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [ōrō, speak], a speak-

ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.

orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrarum**, the world. IV, 37.

Orcynia, -ae, *f.* Orcynia (ōr-sīn'ī-a), same as *Hercynia*.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primi ordinēs**, centurions of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.

Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'-ō-rīks), a chief of the *Helvetii*. I, 2.

orior, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, *intr.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriēns sōl**, the rising sun, sunrise, the east. I, 1.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.

ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14.

ōrō, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.

ortus, -ūs, *m.* [orior, rise], rising.

ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, mouth; face, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the *Osismi* (ō-sis'mī), a *Gallie* people in modern *Brittany*. II, 34.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [obs+tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ostentō, show], show, display; pretence; pride.

ostentō, 1, *tr.* [*f. freq.* of *ostendō*], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ōtium, -tī, *n.*, leisure, inactivity, quiet.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. IV, 10.

P.

P., *abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen*. I, 21.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [pābulor, forage], forager.

pābulor, 1, *intr.* [pābulum, fodder], forage.

pābulum, -ī, *n.* [*cf.* pāscō, feed], fodder, provender. I, 16.

pācō, 1, *tr.* [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.

pactum, -ī, *n.* [paciscor, agree to], agreement; manner.

Padus, -ī, *m.* (Dh), the *Padus* (pā'dūs), better, the *Po*, the largest river of northern Italy.

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, 11.

paenitet, **paenitēre**, **paenituit**, —, *tr.*, *impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as *pers. verb*, repent (App. 109). IV, 5.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. I, 12.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palma, -ae, *f.*, palm of the hand.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.

palūster, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [palūs, swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandō, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passum**, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. I, 51; II, 13.

pār, **paris**, *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; **pār atque**, the same as. I, 28.

parcō, *adv.* [parcus, frugal], frugally, sparingly.

parcō, **parcere**, **peperci**, **parsum**, *intr.* [parcus, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.

parēns, -entis, *m.*, *f.* [pariō, bring forth], parent.

parentō, 1, *intr.* [parēns, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.

pāreō, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* pariō, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.

pariō, **parere**, **peperi**, **partum**, *tr.*, bring forth; gain, acquire, win.

Parisii, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the *Parisii* (pa-rizh'yī), a *Gallie* tribe about modern Paris.

parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for;

parātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.

partim, *adv. [acc. of pars, part]*, partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. II, 1.

partior, 4, *tr.* [pars, part], part, share, divide. III, 10.

partus, *see pariō*.

parum, *adv. [parvus, little]*, little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of parvus*], little], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; **parvuli**, children. II, 30.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus**, *as noun*, less; *sup.*, minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. I, 8.

passim, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14.

passus, -ūs, *m.* [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet); **mille passus** or **passuum**, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. I, 2.

passus, *see pandō and patior*.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [pateō, be open + faciō, make], make or throw open, open. II, 32.

patefiō, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of patefaciō*.

patēns, -entis, *adj.* [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae**, father or head of a family. I, 3.

patienter, *adv.* [patiēns; patior, endure], patiently.

patientia, -ae, *f.* [patiēns; patior, endure], endurance, patience.

patior, **pati**, **passus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.

patrōnus, -ī, *m.* [pater, father], protector, patron.

patruus, -ī, *m.* [pater, father], a father's brother, uncle.

pauci, -ae, -a, *adj.* (*used rarely in sing.*), few; *as noun*, few persons or things. I, 15.

paucitās, -tātis, *f.* [paucus, few], fewness, small number. III, 2.

paulatim, *adv.* [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.

paulisper, *adv.* [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.

paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.

paululum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a very little. II, 8.

paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.

paulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little; **paulum**, *as noun*, a little; **post paulum**, soon after.

pāx, **pācis**, *f.*, peace; favor. I, 3.

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.

pectus, -oris, *n.*, the breast.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, property, wealth; money.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat, flesh. III, 29.

pedālis, -e, *adj.* [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. III, 13.

pedes, **peditis**, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. I, 42; II, 24.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpi-ae**, infantry. II, 17.

peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwīn' tūs pē'dī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 2.

peius, *comp. of malus*.

pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent made of hides. II, 33.

pellō, **pellere**, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, *tr.*

- beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.
- pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsūm, tr.**, weigh, weigh out; weigh out *money*, pay, pay out; *with poenās*, suffer. I, 36.
- penitus, adv.**, deeply; far within.
- per, prep. with acc.**, through, through-out; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; **per sē**, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.
- peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.** [agō, lead], lead through; complete, finish.
- perangustus, -a, -um, adj.** [angustus, narrow], very narrow.
- percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.** [capiō, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.
- percontatiō, -ōnis, f.**, inquiring, inquiry. I, 39.
- percurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr.** [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 33.
- percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, tr.**, strike or thrust through, slay.
- perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, —, tr.** [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
- perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr.** [dō, give], give over, ruin; **perditus, pf. part. as adj.**, desperate, ruined. III, 17.
- perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.
- perendinus, -a, -um, adj.**, after to-morrow.
- pereō, -īre, -li, -itum, intr.** [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.
- perequitō, 1, intr.** [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 33.
- perexiguus, -a, -um, adj.** [exiguus, little], very little.
- perfacilis, -e, adj.** [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

- perfectus, see perficiō.**
- perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.** [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.
- perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.
- perfidia, -ae, f.** [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.
- perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractum, tr.** [frangō, break], break or burst through. I, 25.
- perfuga, -ae, m.** [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.
- perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, intr.** [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.
- perfugium, -gī, n.** [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.
- pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, intr.** [per+regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.
- periclitor, 1, tr. and intr.** [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.
- periculōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.
- periculum, -ī, n.**, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.
- peritus, -a, -um, adj.** [*cf.* experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.
- perlātus, see perferō.**
- perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr.** [legō, read], read through, read.
- perluō, -luere, -lui, -lūtum, tr.** [luō, wash], wash completely, bathe; *pass. as middle voice*, bathe one's self.
- permagnus, -a, -um, adj.** [magnus, large], very large, very great.
- permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm, intr.** [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.
- permisceō, -miscere, -miscui, -mixtum, tr.** [miscēō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.

permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit. allow. I, 30; II, 3.

permixtus, see permisceō.

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulcēō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, tr. [mulcēō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.

perniciēs, -ēi, f. [cf. nex, death], ruin, destruction. I, 20.

perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun*, very few. I, 6.

perpendiculum, -ī, n., plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -peti, -pessus sum, tr. [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. I, 35; III, 2.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perpumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.

persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

perseverō, 1, intr., persist, persevere. I, 13.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr. [solvo, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). I, 12.

perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, real-

ize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

perstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.

persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr. [suadeō, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; *sibi persuādēri*, be convinced. I, 2.

perterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, 18.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; *eōdem pertinēre*, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. I, 1.

pertuli, see perferō.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

perturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

pervagor, 1, intr. [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.

pervenio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [venio, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; *of property*, fall, revert. I, 7.

pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; *pedibus*, on foot; *pedem referre*, retreat. I, 8.

petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

Petrocorii, -ōrum, m. (Dcd), the Petrocorii (pētrōrō-kōrī-i).

Petrōnius, -ni, m., Marcus Petronius (mār'kūs pētrōn'ius). a centurion of the 8th legion.

Petrosidius, -di, m., Lucius Petrosidius (lū'shyūs pētrōsid'i-ūs), a standard-bearer.

phalanx, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, 24.

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ced), the Pictones (pĭk'tō-nēz). III, 11.

pietās, -tātis, *f.* [pius⁴, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.

pilum, -i, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, 25.

pilus, -i, *m.*, century of soldiers; **primus pilus**, first century of a legion; **primi pili centuriō**, or **primipilus**, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.

pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather; battlement, parapet.

Pirustae, -ārum, *m.*, the Pirustae (pī-rūs'tē), a tribe of Illyricum.

pisces, -is, *m.*, fish. IV, 10.

Piso, -ōnis, *m.* (1), Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-us pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. I, 2. (2), Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), killed in the defeat of Cassius' army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. I, 12. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law; consul 58 B.C. I, 6. (4), Piso, an Aquitanian. IV, 12.

pix, picis, *f.*, pitch.

placeō, 2, *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often *impers.*, seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. I, 34; III, 3.

placidē, *adv.* [placidus, calm], calmly.

plācō, 1, *tr.*, appease.

Plancus, see **Munātius**.

plānē, *adv.* [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, 26.

plāntiēs, -ēi, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, flat, plain. III, 13.

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēi, *f.*, populace, common people. I, 3.

plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. III, 3.

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.

plērique, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of; as *noun*, a great many, very many. II, 4.

plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly,

generally; again and again, very often. I, 40; II, 30.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Pleumoxii (plū-mōk'sī-i).

plumbum, -i, *n.*, lead; **plumbum album**, tin.

plūrimum, see **multum**.

plūrimus, see **multus**.

plūs, see **multus** and **multum**.

pluteus, -i, *m.*, parapet; a mantelet or screen of movable shields.

pōculum, -i, *n.*, cup.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, 4.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, with or without **digitus**. III, 13.

polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.* [prō+liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, 14.

pollicitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [polliceor, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.

pollicitus, see **polliceor**.

Pompēius, -i, *m.* (1), Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. IV, 1. (2), Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.

pondus, -eris, *n.* [cf. pendō, weigh], weight. II, 29.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *tr.*, place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; with **castra**, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; with *in* and *abl.*, depend on, in addition to above meanings. I, 16.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. I, 6.

poposci, see **poscō**.

populatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.

populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.

populus, -i, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. I, 3.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; **porrēctus**, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, extended, in extent. II, 19.

porrō, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, 24.

portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.

portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll, tariff on imports or exports. I, 18.

portus, -ūs, *m.* [*cf.* **porta**, gate], harbor, haven, port. III, 8.

poscō, **poscere**, **poposcī**, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.

positus, *see* **pōnō**.

possessio, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō**, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō**, sit], occupy, hold, possess. I, 34; II, 4.

possidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. IV, 7.

possum, **posse**, **potuī**, —, (*App.* 80), *intr.* [**potis**, able+**sum**, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; *with* **quam** and *sup.*, as possible, *e.g.*, **quam plūrimās possunt**, as many as possible; **multum posse**, **plūs posse** and **plūrimum posse**, *see* **multum**. I, 2.

post, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.* (1) *As adv.*, later, afterwards. (2) *As prep.*, behind, after; **post tergum** or **post sē**, in the rear. I, 5.

posteā, *adv.* [**post**, after], after this, afterwards. I, 21.

posteaquam, *adv.* [**posteā**, afterwards + **quam**, than], after. I, 31; IV, 19.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post**, after], after, following, next; *in m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, last. I, 15.

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [**post**, after+**pōnō**, place], place after, postpone; disregard.

postquam, *conj.* [**post**, afterwards + **quam**, than], after, as soon as. I, 24.

postrēmō, *adv.* [**postrēmus**, last], finally, at last.

postridiē, *adv.* [**posterus**, following+**diēs**, day], on the day following, the next day; **postridiē eius diēi**, on the next or following day. I, 23.

postulātum, -ī, *n.* [**postulō**, demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.

postulō; 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum**, be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns**, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [**potēns**, powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns**, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere**, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.

potior, 4, *intr.* [**potis**, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.

potius, *adv.* [*comp. of* **potis**, able], rather. I, 45; II, 10.

potitus, *see* **potior**.

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. II, 30.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuō**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.

praebeō, 2, *tr.* [**prae**+**habeō**, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.

praeaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō**, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. I, 38.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō**, go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.

praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [**caput**, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.

praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [**praecipio**, instruct], instruction, injunction, command.

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capiō**, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, 22.

praecipitō, 1, *tr.* [**praeceps**, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.

praecipuē, *adv.* [**praecipuus**, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, especial.
praecūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [prae+claudō, shut], close *or* shut in front, block up, close.
praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.
Praecōninus, *see* Valerius.
praecurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. IV, 34.
praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly *or* before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 34.
praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, 17.
praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead before, construct before *or* in front.
praefectus, -i, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). I, 39; III, 7.
praefereō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. II, 27.
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.
praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fix *or* set in front.
praefui, *see* praesum.
praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, —, *intr.* [metuō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.
praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before *or* in advance. I, 15.
praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.
praecupō, 1, *tr.* [occupō, seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy, take possession of.
praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. I, 25.
praeparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.
praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum,

tr. [pōnō, place], place before *or* over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. III, 14.
praesaepiō, -saepire, -saepsi, -saepitum, *tr.* [saepiō, hedge], hedge *or* block up.
praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.
praescriptum, -i, *n.* [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.
praesēns, -entis, *pres. part. of praesum*.
praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. I, 15.
praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus, *tr.* [sentio, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.
praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially. I, 16.
praesidium, -di, *n.* [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.
praestō, *adv.*, at hand, ready; *with* sum, meet.
praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [stō, stand], stand *or* place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, praestat, it is better *or* more advisable. I, 2.
praesum, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be before *or* over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesēns, *pres. part. as adj.*, present, in person; for the present. I, 16.
praeter, *prep. with acc.* [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, 11.
praeterā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.
praeterēō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

- omit; **praeteritus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun*, the past. I, 20.
- praetermittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.
- praeterquam**, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5.
- praetor**, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. I, 21.
- praetōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.
- praeūrō**, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn in front or at the end.
- praevertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.
- prāvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, perverse, wrong.
- premō**, -premere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. I, 52; II, 24.
- prēndō**, prēndere, prēndi, prēnsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. I, 20.
- pretium**, -ti, *n.*, price. I, 18.
- prex**, *precis*, *f.* (in *sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.*) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, 16.
- pridiē**, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.
- primipilus**, -i, *m.* [primus, first+pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.
- primō**, *adv.* [primus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.
- primum**, *adv.* [primus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum primum, or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.
- primus**, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. I, 10.
- princeps**, -ipis, *adj.* [primus, first+capio, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; *as noun*, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.
- principātus**, -ūs, *m.* [princeps, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3.
- prior**, prius, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. II, 11.
- prīstinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [for priustinus from prior, former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, 13.
- prius**, *adv.* [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam, see priusquam.
- priusquam** or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. I, 19.
- privātim**, *adv.* [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.
- privātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; *as noun*, person, individual. I, 5.
- prō**, *prep. with abl.* [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.
- probō**, 1, *tr.* [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.
- prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38; II, 20.
- Procillus**, see Valerius.
- prōclīnō**, 1, *tr.* [clīnō, incline], bend forward, incline; prōclīnātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, tottering, critical.
- prōcōnsul**, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.
- procul**, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, 30.
- prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubi, -cubitum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.
- prōcūrō**, 1, *tr.* [cūrō, care], care for, attend to.
- prōcurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52.
- prōdeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [prō+eō,

go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48.

prôdesse, *see* **prôsum**.

prôditîo, -ônîs, *f.* [prôdô, betray], betrayal, treason.

prôditor, -ôris, *m.* [prôdô, betray], betrayer, traitor.

prôdô, -dere, -didî, -ditum, *tr.* [dô, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; **memoriâ prôditum**, told in tradition, handed down. I, 13.

prôdûo, -dûcere, -dûxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dûcô, lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; *with* **côpiâs**, arrange, draw up. I, 48; III, 17.

proellor, *s.*, *intr.* [proellum, battle], join *or* engage in battle, fight. II, 23.

proellum, -li, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proellum committere**, join *or* begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I, 1.

profectîo, -ônîs, *f.* [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, 3.

profectus, *see* **prôficiô**.

profectus, *see* **proficiscor**.

prôferô, -ferre, -tuli, -lâtum, *tr.* [ferô, bring. App. 81], bring forth *or* out, produce.

prôficiô, -ficere, -fêci, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciô, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.

proficiscor, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, *intr.* [*cf.* **prôficiô**, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. I, 3.

profiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum, *tr.* [fateor, confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

prôfigô, 1, *tr.* [figô, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, 23.

prôfluô, -fluere, -fluxi, —, *intr.* [fluô, flow], flow forth, rise. IV, 10.

profugîo, -fugere, -fûgi, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugîo, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.

prôful, *see* **prôsum**.

prôgnâtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nâscor, be born], born; descended, sprung. II, 29.

prôgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, 50; II, 10.

prohibeô, 2, *tr.* [habeô, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out *or* away from; protect, guard. I, 1.

prôiciô, -icere, -lêci, -iectum, *tr.* [laciô, throw. App. 7], throw forward *or* away; throw, cast; reject, give up; **sê prôicere**, cast one's self; jump. I, 27.

proinde, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.

prôlâtus, *see* **prôferô**.

prômineô, -minere, -minui, —, *intr.*, project, lean out.

prômiscuê, *adv.*, promiscuously, in common.

prômittô, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittô, send], send forward; let grow.

prômoveô, -movere, -môvi, -môtum, *tr.* [moveô, move], move forward, advance, push forward. I, 48; II, 31.

prôptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. III, 19.

prômunturium, -ri, *n.* [prômineô, project], promontory, headland. II, 12.

prônê, *adv.* [prônus, inclined], sloping downward. IV, 17.

prônuntiô, 1, *tr.* [nûntiô, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; *with* **sententia**, pronounce. IV, 5.

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. I, 23.

prôpellô, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellô, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, 15.

properô, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. II, 11.

propinquitâs, -tâtis, *f.* [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II, 4.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *pl. as noun*, relatives. I, 16.

propius, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of* **prope**, near], nearer. I, 42; IV, 9.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. I, 17.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own, characteristic, indicative.

propter, prep. with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. I, 9.

propterea, adv. [proptēr, because of], on this account; **propterea quod**, because. I, 1.

prōpugnātor, -ōris, m. [prōpugnō, fight for], defender.

prōpugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II, 7.

prōpull, see prōpellō.

prōpulsō, 1, tr. [freq. of prōpellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. I, 49.

prōra, -ae, f., prow. III, 13.

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr. [ruō, fall], overthrow. III, 26.

prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with **orātiōne**, address. II, 5.

prōspectus, -ūs, m. [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II, 22.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, intr. [speciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I, 23.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, tr. [sternō, stretch out], prostrate, destroy.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, intr. [sum, be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, tr. [tegō, cover], cover, protect.

prōterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], terrify, frighten off.

prōtinus, adv. [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9.

prōturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II, 19.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. IV, 28.

prōveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (*of grain*).

prōventus, -ūs, m. [prōveniō, come forth], a coming forth, result.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, tr. [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II, 22.

prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. I, 1.

prōvinciālis, -e, adj. [prōvincia, province], of a province; of the Province.

prōvisus, see prōvideō.

prōvolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. II, 19.

proximē, adv. [proximus, last], last; lately. I, 24.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with *acc.* (App. 122, b), next to. I, 1.

prūdētia, -ae, f. [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II, 4.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, m. (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā'nī-ī). III, 27.

pūbēs, -eris, adj., grown up, adult; *pl. as noun*, grown men, adults.

pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I, 16.

pūbliē, 1, tr. [pūblicus, public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; *n. as noun*, public, public view; **rēs pūblica**, common weal, state. I, 12.

pudet, -ēre, -uit, -itum, tr., imper., it shames; translated as personal, be ashamed, feel shame.

pudor, -ōris, m. [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I, 39.

puer, -erī, m., boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā pueris**, from childhood. I, 29.

puerilis, -e, adj. [puer, child], childish. **pugna, -ae, f.** [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae**, method of fighting. I, 25.

pugnō, 1, intr., fight, give battle, contend; strive; often *impers.*, as **pugnātur**, it is fought, i.e., they fight. I, 25.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, Titus Pullo (tī'tūs pŭl'ō), a centurion of Cicero's legion.

pulsus, *see* pellō.

pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. III, 13.

pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. III, 13.

pŭrgō, 1, *tr.* [pŭrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate;

pŭrgātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. I, 7.

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pŷrēnaei montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pŷr'ē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., *abbr. for* Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'tŭs), a Roman praenomen. I, 45; II, 2.

quā, *adv.* [abl. fem. of quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. I, 6.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. IV, 17.

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. I, 2.

quadringēti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. I, 5.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. I, 18.

quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.* [quaerō, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. I, 52; IV, 13.

quaestus, -ūs, *m.* [quaerō, seek], gain, acquisition.

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind or nature? I, 21.

quam, (1) *adv.*, (a) *interrog.*, how? (b) *rel.*, as; with *sup.* and with or without *posse*, as . . . as possible, very; **quam diū**, as long as; (2) *conj.* with *comp.*,

than; **prius** . . . **quam**, before; **post** . . . **quam**, **postea** . . . **quam**, after I, 3.

quamvis, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV, 2.

quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. III, 12.

quantopere, *adv.* [quantus, how much+opus, work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. II, 5.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. quam, how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum**, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum**, *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quantō** . . . **tantō** (with comparatives), the . . . the. I, 17.

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, *adj.* [quantus, as great as+vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

quārē, *adv.* [quī, which+rēs, thing], (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.

quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quattuor, four], fourth. I, 12.

quasi, *conj.* [qua(m), as+sī, if], as if, just as if.

quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, four. I, 12.

quattuordecim (XIV), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, fourteen. I, 29.

-que, *conj.* (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; **que** . . . **que**, or **que** . . . **et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

queror, **querī**, **questus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.* (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of *dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, with comparatives, the; **quō** . . . **oō**, the . . . the. I, 1.

quicumque, *see* quisquam.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-

soever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. I, 31; III, 4.

quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with posse*, how? *e. g.*, **quid** Germāni possent, how strong were the Germans. I, 36; II, 4.

quidam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** and **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. I, 30; II, 17.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at least, truly; on the other hand; **nō** . . . **quidem**, not even. I, 16.

quies, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, rest, repose.

quīētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.

quīn, *conj.* [**quī**, who or how+**ne**, *negative*], that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but that, that, from, to; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover. I, 3.

quīnam, *see quisnam*.

quīncūnx, -uncis, *m.*, **quīncūnx**, *an arrangement like the five spots on a die*.

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [**quīnque**, five+**decem**, ten], fifteen. I, 15.

quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five+**centum**, hundred], five hundred. I, 15.

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five], five each, five at a time, five. I, 15.

quīnquāgīntā (L), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. I, 41; II, 4.

quīnque (V), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, five. I, 10.

quīntus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [**quīnque**, five], fifth. I, 6.

quis, **quid**, and **quī**, **quae**, **quod** (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem**, why? **quem ad modum**, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, especially *after sī, nī, nō*, num., anyone, anything, any; somebody, something, some. I, 7.

quisnam, **quidnam**, and **quīnam**, **quāenam**, **quodnam**, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and a), who? which? what? who then? what pray? II, 30.

quispiam, **quidpiam**, and **quispiam**,

quaequam, **quodpiam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any one, any.

quisquam, **quicquam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person or thing. I, 19.

quisque, **quidque**, and **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. I, 5.

quisquis, **quicquid**, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. II, 17.

quīvis, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, and **quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quodvis**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [**quī**, who+**vis**, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II, 31.

quō, *adv.* [*old dat. case form of quī*, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. I, 48; II, 8.

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of quī*, who, which], in order that, so that, that. I, 8.

quoad, *adv.* [**quō**, whither+**ad**, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, 11.

quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of quī*, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; **quod sī**, but if; **propterea quod**, because. I, 1.

quōminus, *conj.* [**quō**, so that+**minus**, not], so that not, that not; from. I, 31; IV, 22.

quoniam, *conj.* [**quom** = **cum**, since+**iam**, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. I, 35.

quoque, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. I, 1.

quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. III, 23.

quot, *adj.*, *indecl.*, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. I, 29.

quotannis, *adv.* [**quot**, as many as+**annus**, year], every year, yearly. I, 36; IV, 1.

quotiens, *adv.* [**quot**, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. I, 43.

R

rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root; *in pl. with montis or collis*, foot, base. I, 38.
rādō, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, *tr.*, scrape, shave.
raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon, *with four wheels*. I, 26.
rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. II, 17.
rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.
rapīna, -ae, *f.* [rapīō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. I, 15.
rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; *in small detachments*, a few at a time; few. III, 12.
rāsus, *see* **rādō**.
ratio, -ōnis, *f.* [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. I, 28.
ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. I, 8.
Rauraci, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'ra-sī). I, 5.
re- and **red-**, *inseparable prefixes*, again, back, un-, re-.
rebellō, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.
Rebilus, -ī, *m.*, *see* Caninius.
recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [re-+cēdō, go], go back, retire.
recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.
recēnsēō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsu-
sum, *tr.*, inspect, review.
receptāculum, -ī, *n.* [recipiō, receive], retreat, refuge.
receptus, *see* **recipiō**.
receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.
recessus, -ūs, *m.* [recēdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.
recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [re-+capiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow;

with sē, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. I, 5.

recitō, 1, *tr.*, read aloud.
reclinō, 1, *tr.* [re-+clinō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.
rectē, *adv.* [rēctus, straight], properly, rightly.
rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [regō, keep straight], straight.
recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. III, 8.
recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; *with periculum*, shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.
redāctus, *see* **redigō**.
reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give *something due*; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.
redēptus, *see* **redimō**.
redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [red-+eō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, 29.
redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 45; II, 14.
redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.
redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [red-+integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.
reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō, return], return. I, 5.
reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. IV, 30.
Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.
redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [re-+dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.
reflectus, *see* **reficiō**.
referō, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relātum**, *tr.* [re-+ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; **pedem referre**, go back, retreat; **grātiā referre**, show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [re-+faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with sē*, refresh one's self, rest. III, 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [re-+frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. II, 33.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [re-+fugiō], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēginus, -ī, *m.*, *see* Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; *ē regione*, *with gen.*, opposite. I, 44; II, 4.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [rēx, king], of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, *intr.* [rēgnum, royal power], reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I, 2.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, 13.

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [re-+iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. I, 24.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.* [re-+languēscō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. II, 15.

relātus, *see* referō.

relēgō, 1, *tr.* [re-+lēgō, depute], send away; remove.

relictus, -a, -um, *see* relinquo.

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion; *in pl.*, religious observances, rites; superstitions.

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum, *tr.* [re-+linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, 9.

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [relinquō, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun*, remainder, rest. I, 1.

remanēō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [re-+manēō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. I, 39; IV, 1.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [*cf.* rēmus, oar], oarsman, rower. III, 9.

rēmigō, 1, *intr.* [rēmex, rower], row.

remigrō, 1, *intr.* [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. IV, 4.

reminiscor, -ī, *intr.* [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. I, 13.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. I, 43; II, 15.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. IV, 2.

removēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [re-+moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw; remōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. I, 19.

remūneror, 1, *tr.* [re-+mūneror, present], repay, reward. I, 44.

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. III, 13.

Rēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to or one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, Rēmi, *m.* (Bef), the Remi (rē'mi). II, 3.

rēnō, -ōnis, *m.*, deerskin.

renovō, 1, *tr.* [re-+novus, new], renew. III, 2.

renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [re-+nūntius, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, 10.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [re-+pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8.

repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52; II, 33.

repentinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, 13.

reperiō, reperire, repperī, reperitum, *tr.* [re-+pariō, procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I, 18.

repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *tr.* re-+petō, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; *with poenās*, exact, inflict. I, 30.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* re-+pleō, fill], fill again, replenish, supply.

reportō, 1, *tr.* [re-+portō, carry], carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29.

reposcō, -poscere, —, —, *tr.* [re-+

poscō, demand], demand back, exact, ask for.

reppulī, *see* **repellō**.

repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [re-+praesēns, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.

reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *tr.* [re-+prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [re-+premō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.

repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. I, 40.

repugnō, 1, *intr.* [re-+pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.

repulsus, *see* **repellō**.

requirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [re-+quaerō, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.

rēs, *rei*, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; **rēs familiaris**, property; **rēs frumentaria**, supplies; **rēs militaris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs publica**, state; **rēs actae**, deeds, achievements; **quam ob rem**, *see* **quī quis**. I, 2.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [re-+scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [re-+sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. I, 28.

rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [re-+scribō, write], write again; transfer. I, 42.

reservō, 1, *tr.* [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [re-+sedeō, sit], sit back; remain.

residō, -sidere, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [re-+sidō sit down], settle, become calm.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [re-+sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.

respicō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectrum, *tr.* [re-+speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr. and intr.* [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [respondeō, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, *tr.*, reject, spurn. I, 42.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *tr.*, extinguish.

restitī, *see* **resistō**.

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [re-+statuō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.

retineō, 2, *tr.* [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [re-+trahō, drag], drag back; bring back.

rettulī, *see* **referō**.

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I, 52.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *intr.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and **revertor**, -vertī, -versus sum, *intr.*, used in the tenses formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.

revincō, -vincire, -vīnxī, -vinctum, *tr.* [re-+vinciō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.

revocō, 1, *tr.* [re-+vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.

rēx, *rēgis*, *m.*, king. I, 31; II, 4.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.* (ABCīgh), the river Rhēnus (rē'nūs), better the Rhine. I, 1.

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDīg), the river Rhodanus (rōd'a-nūs), better the Rhone. I, 1.

ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). I, 6.

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, small stream, brook.

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. III, 13.

rogō, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. I, 7.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. I, 31.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rōma, Rome], Roman; *as noun*, a Roman. I, 3.

Rōscius, -cī, *m.*, Lucius Roscius (lū'shyūs rōsh'yūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. III, 13.

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. IV, 33.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. II, 17.

Rūfus, -ī, *m.* See Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, 29.

rūrsus, *adv.* [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. I, 25.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni, (rū-tō'ni). I, 45.

Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Sempronius Rutilus (mār'kūs sēm-prō'nī-ūs rū'tilūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

S.

Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs tī-tū'rī-ūs sā-bī'nūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*. II, 5.

Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā-bīs). II, 16.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.* [sacer, sacred], priest.

sacrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [sacrō, sacer, sacred], oath.

sacrificium, -cī, *n.* [sacer, sacred+faciō, make], sacrifice.

saepe, often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe** **numērō**, often, time and again, frequently; *comp.* **saepius**, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, 1.

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. II, 17.

saeviō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. III, 13.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, 25.

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow], bowman, archer. II, 7.

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, a military cloak.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, pass, wooded ravine, glade.

salūs, **salūtis**, *f.* [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation,

deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). I, 27.

Samarobrīva, -ae, *f.* (Be), Samaro-briva (sām'a-rō-brī'va).

sanciō, **sancire**, **sānxi**, **sānctum**, *tr.* [*cf.* sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. I, 30; III, 9.

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.

sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42.

sānō, 1, *tr.* [sānus, sound], make sound; make good, repair.

Santonī, -ōrum, *or* **Santonēs**, -um, *m.* (Dcd), the Santoni' (sān'tō-nī), *or* **Santones** (sān'tō-nēs). I, 10.

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound; sensible, sane.

sānxi, *see* **sanciō**.

sapiō, -ere, -ivī, —, *intr.*, taste; be wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (*of individual soldiers, which they carried*). I, 24.

sarciō, **sarcire**, **sarsi**, **sartum**, *tr.*, make good, repair, compensate for.

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. III, 18.

satis, *adv.*, and *indecl. adj. and noun*, (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. I, 3.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough+faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, 14.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. I, 41.

saucius, -a, -ūm, *adj.*, wounded. III, 4.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. II, 29.

scālae, -ārum, *f.* [scandō, climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, *m.* (Aef), the river Scaldis (skāl'dīs) *or* Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. IV, 26.

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [scelerō, pollute], accursed, infamous; *as noun*, criminal.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. I, 14.

scienter, *adv.* [sciō, know], knowingly, skillfully.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. I, 47; II, 20.

scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.

sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. I, 20.

scorpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, scorpion, a military engine for hurling missiles.

scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *tr.*, write, record or make mention in writing. II, 29.

scrobis, -is, *m. and f.*, pit.

scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield, buckler; oblong, convex (2½×4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. I, 25.

sē- and **sēd-**, inseparable prefix, apart, away.

sē, see **sui**.

sēbum, -i, *n.*, tallow.

secō, secāre, secui, sectum, *tr.*, cut, reap.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. I, 18.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. II, 33.

sector, 1, *tr.* [freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, 21.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. I, 33; II, 18.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flumine, down the river. I, 14.

secūris, -is, *f.*, axe; Roman authority, because the axe and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.

secūtus, see **sequor**.

sēd-, see **sē-**.

sēd, *conj.*, but, but yet (a stronger adversative than autem or at). I, 12.

sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, sixteen. I, 8.

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, 31; IV, 4.

sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [sēd-+eō, go], insurrection, sedition.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēditiō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. I, 17.

Sedulius, -ii, *m.*, Sedulius (sē-dū'li-ūs), a chief of the Lemovices.

Seduni, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'ni). III, 1.

Sedusii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū'shyi). I, 51.

seges, -etis, *f.*, growing grain, field of grain.

Segni, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Segni (sēg'ni).

Segontiaci, -ōrum, *m.* (Acđ), the Segontiaci (sē-gōn'shi-ā'si or sēg'ōn-shi-ā'si).

Segovax, -actis, *m.*, Segovax (sēg'ō-vāks), a king of Kent.

Segusiavi, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sēg'ū-shi-ā'vi). I, 10.

semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **semel atque iterum**, repeatedly; **ut semel**, as soon as. I, 31.

sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], sowing. I, 3.

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, narrow path, by-way, foot-path.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. I, 18.

Semprōnius, -ni, *m.*, see **Rutilus**.

senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex, old], elder; senator. II, 28.

senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. I, 3.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; as *noun*, old man. I, 29.

sēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. I, 15.

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sēn'ō-nēz). II, 2.

sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentiō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, 45; II, 10.

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsi, sēnsum, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; **expe**

riñce, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, 18.

sentis, -is, m., briar. II, 17.

sēparātīm, adv. [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.

sēparō, 1, tr. [sē+parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; **sēparātus, pf. part. as adj.,** separate. IV, 1.

septem (VII), card. num. adj., indecl., seven. II, 4.

septentrionēs, -um, m. [septem, seven +trionēs, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

septingentī, -ae, -a (DCC), card. num. adj. [septem, seven], seven hundred.

septuāgintā (LXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 12.

sepultūra, -ae, f., burial. I, 26.

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-nā), better, Seine. I, 1.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, Sēquanī (Cfg), the Sequani (sēk'wā-nī). I, 1.

sequor, sequī, secūtus, sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with poena, be inflicted; fidem sequī, seek the protection. I, 4.

sermō, -ōnis, m., conversation, interview, speech.

sērō, adv., late, too late.

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant.

Sertōrius, -rī, m., Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'rī-ūs), a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.

servilis, -e, adj. [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.

serviō, 4, intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, 5.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.

Servius, -vī, m., Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. III, 1.

servō, 1, tr., save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.

servus, -ī, m., slave, servant. I, 27.

sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), card. num. adj., [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 15.

sēsē, see suī.

sēsquipedālis, -e, adj. [sēsqui, one and a half+pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.

sētlus, adv., less, otherwise; **nihilō sētlus, none the less, nevertheless,** likewise. I, 49; IV, 17.

seu, see sive.

severitās, -tātis, f., sternness, severity.

sēvocō, 1, tr. [sē+vocō, call], call aside or apart.

sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. I, 27.

sexāgintā (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.

Sextius, -tī, m. (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (tī'tūs sēks'tī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sī, conj., if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; **quod sī, but if, now if.** I, 7.

sibi, see suī.

Sibusatēs, -um, m. (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). III, 27.

sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner; **sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as.** I, 38; II, 4.

siccitās, -tātis, f. [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. IV, 38.

sicut or sicutī, adv. [sic, so+ut(ī), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.

sidus, -eris, n., star; constellation.

signifer, -erī, m. [signum, standard+ferō, bear], standard-bearer. II, 25.

significātiō, -ōnis, f. [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.

significō, 1, tr. [signum, sign+faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.

signum, -ī, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; **ab signis discēdere,**

withdraw from the ranks; **signa inferre**, advance to the attack; **signa conversa inferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance on the march; direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face or wheel about; **ad signa convenire**, join the army. I, 25.

Silānus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Silanus (mār'kūs sī-lā'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, -tī, *n.*, silence, stillness.

Silius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tī' tūs sīl'ī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. I, 12.

silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. II, 18.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. III, 13.

similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque**, as soon as. I, 19.

simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [simulō, make like], image, statue.

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretence, deceit, disguise. I, 40; IV, 13.

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. I, 44; IV, 4.

simultās, -tātis, *f.*, jealousy, rivalry.

sīn, *conj.*, if however, but if. I, 13.

sincērē, *adv.* [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.

sine, *prep.* with *abl.*, without. I, 7.

singillātīm, *adv.* [singuli, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, 2.

singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24.

singuli, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in **annōs singulōs**, annually. I, 6.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing.* as *noun* (*sc. manus*), the left hand; **sub sinistra**, on the left. I, 25.

sinistrōrsus, *adv.* [sinister, left+ver'sus, from *vertō*, turn], to the left.

situs, -ūs, *m.* [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. III, 12.

sive and seu, *conj.* [sī, if+ve, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sive . . . sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. I, 12.

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. I, 12.

societās, -tātis, *f.* [socius, ally], alliance.

socius, -cī, *m.* [*cf.* sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I, 5.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. I, 1.

sōlācium, -cī, *n.* [sōlor, console], comfort, solace.

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. III, 22.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, 18.

sollertia, -ae, *f.* [sollers, skillful], skill, expertise; ingenuity.

sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, 1.

sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sollicitus, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, 11.

sōlum, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. I, 12.

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlius (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. I, 18.

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; with or without **nāvēs**, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, 23.

sonitus, -ūs, *m.* [*cf.* sonō, sound], sound, din.

sonus, -ī, *m.* [*cf.* sonō, sound], sound.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, 18.

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. I, 50.

Sotiatēs, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). III, 20.

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I, 7.

- speciēs**, -ēī, *f.* [speciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretence. I, 51; II, 31.
- spectō**, 1, *tr.* [freq. of speciō, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, 1.
- speculātor**, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. II, 11.
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [speculātor, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, 26.
- speculor**, 1, *intr.* [cf. speciō, look], spy. I, 47.
- spērō**, 1, *tr.* [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, 3.
- spēs**, -ei, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. I, 5.
- spīritus**, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. I, 33; II, 4.
- spoliō**, 1, *tr.*, strip, despoil.
- spontis**, *gen.* and **sponte**, *abl.* (*obsolete nom.*, spōns), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. I, 9.
- stabilīō**, 4, *tr.* [stabilis, firm], make firm, fix.
- stabilitās**, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, 33.
- statim**, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. I, 53; II, 11.
- statiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; *in statiōne esse*, be on guard. II, 18.
- statuō**, statuere, statui, statūtum, *tr.* [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, 11.
- statūra**, -ae, *f.* [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II, 30.
- status**, -ūs, *m.* [stō, stand], standing, condition, status; position.
- stimulus**, -ī, *m.*, goad; stake with barbed iron point set in the ground as a defence.
- stipendiārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. I, 30.
- stipendium**, -dī, *n.*, tax, tribute. I, 36.
- stipes**, -itis, *m.*, log, trunk; stake.
- stīps**, -pis, *m.*, stem, stock; race.
- stō**, stāre, steti, stātum, *intr.*, stand; abide by.
- strāmentum**, -ī, *n.*, covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.
- strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, 11.
- studeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. I, 9.
- studiōsē**, *adv.* [studiōsus, eager], eagerly, zealously.
- studium**, -dī, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, 19.
- stultitia**, -ae, *f.* [stultus, foolish], foolishness, folly.
- sub**, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) *of time*, during, within; *in compounds*, *sub* or *subs*, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, 7.
- subāctus**, *see* subigō.
- subdolos**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dolos, deceit], subtle, crafty.
- subdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; *with nāvēs*, haul up, beach. I, 22.
- subductiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [subdūcō, beach], beaching.
- subeō**, -īre, -īi, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, 5.
- subesse**, *see* subsum.
- subiciō**, -icere, -lēci, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, 26.
- subigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, lead, drive], subdue, reduce.
- subitō**, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, 39; II, 19.

subitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, 7.

sublātus, *see tollō*.

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, 16.

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. IV, 17.

subluō, -luere, —, -lūtum, wash, flow around the base.

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, 40; III, 25.

submitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, 6.

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, 25.

subruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, 6.

subsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II, 11.

subsidiū, -di, *n.* [subsideo, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, 52; II, 6.

subsido, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [sedeō, sit], sit down, remain.

subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, 15.

subsum, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. I, 25.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I, 44.

subvectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [subvehō, convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I, 16.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.

succedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance,

be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, 24.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.* [cf. candeō, shine], set on fire below, kindle, burn.

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, *tr.* [sub+caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, 19.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cf. cubō, lie], sink under; yield.

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *m.* [sub+currō, run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake.

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, Suēbi (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bī), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. I, 37; IV, 1.

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiōnes (swēs'i-ō'nēs), II, 3.

sufficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *intr.* [sub+faciō, make], be sufficient.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossū, *tr.* [sub+fodiō, dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, 12.

suffrāgium, -gi, *n.*, vote, ballot.

Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). IV, 16.

suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage, tribunal.

sui, **sibi**, **sē**, or **sēsē**, *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; *inter sē*, *see inter and App. 166*. I, 1.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I, 21.

Sulpicius, -ci, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'lī-ūs sūl-pish'yūs ruf'ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV, 22.

sum, **esse**, **fui**, (App. 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; *with gen. in predicate*, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; *with dat. of possessor*, have. I, 1.

summa, -ae, *f.* [summus, highest], the

- main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperi**, the chief command. I, 29.
- summus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of superus*, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I, 16.
- sūmō**, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, *tr.*, [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with labor, spend. I, 7.
- sūmptuosus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sūmptus**, expense], expensive.
- sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.* [**sūmō**, spend], expense. I, 18.
- sūmptus**, *see sūmō*.
- super**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over, on.
- superbē**, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. I, 31.
- superior**, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of superus*, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. I, 10.
- superō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super**, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vitā superāre**, survive. I, 17.
- supersedō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II, 8.
- supersum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I, 23.
- superus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**super**, 'above'], over, above; *comp.*, *see superior*; *sup.*, *see summus*.
- suppetō**, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *intr.* [**sub+petō**, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I, 3.
- supplémentum**, -ī, *n.* [**suppleō**, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.
- supplex**, -icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant. II, 28.
- supplicātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**supplex**, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. II, 35.
- suppliciter**, *adv.* [**supplex**, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I, 27.
- supplicium**, -ci, *n.* [**sub+plicō**, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. I, 19.
- supportō**, 1, *tr.* [**sub+portō**, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I, 39; III, 3.
- suprā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) as *adv.*, before, previously; (2) as *prep. with acc.*, above; before. II, 1.
- suscipio**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [**su(b)s+capio**, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. I, 3.
- suspectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**suspicio**, suspect], suspected, distrusted.
- suspicio**, -ōnis, *f.* [**suspicio**, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I, 4.
- suspisor**, 1, *tr.* [**suspicio**, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. I, 44; IV, 6.
- sustentō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of sustineō*, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II, 6.
- sustineō**, 2, *tr. and intr.* [**su(b)s+teneō**, hold], hold up from below; hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I, 24.
- sustuli**, *see tollō*.
- suus**, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj.* referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a), [**sui**, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua**, *n. pl. as noun*, one's property; **sui**, *m. pl. as noun*, their men (friends or countrymen). I, 1.
- .T.
- T.** *abbr. for Titus* (tītūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 10.
- tabernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, tent. I, 39.
- tabula**, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. I, 29.
- tabulātum**, -ī, *n.* [*cf. tabula*, board], flooring of boards; story.
- taceō**, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep

silent, pass over in silence; *tacitus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. I, 17.
tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.
tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, such^a; such a great; so great a.
tam, *adv.*, so, so very. I, 14.
tamen, *adv.* (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, 7.
Tamesis, -is, *m.* (Acd), the river Tamesis (tām'ē-sīs), better, the Thames.
tametsi, *conj.* [tamen, however+etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. I, 30.
tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis*, as *quid tandem*, what, pray? what then? I, 25.
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum, *tr.*, touch, border on.
tantopere, *adv.* [tantus, so great+opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, 31.
tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dim. of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. II, 30.
tantum, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much, so, so far; only, merely.
tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, 5.
tantundem, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much or so far.
tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; *quantō . . . tantō*, with comparatives, see *quantō*. I, 15.
Tarbelli, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bēl'i). III, 27.
tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly; *comp.* tardius, too slowly. IV, 23.
tardō, 1, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, 25.
tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. II, 25.
Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tār'ū-sā'tēz). III, 23.
Tasgetius, -ti, *m.*, Tasgetius (tās-jē'shyūs), a chief of the Carnutes.
taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.
Taximagulus, -ī, *n.*, Taximagulus (tāk'-'sī-māg'ū-lūs), a king of Kent.

taxus, -ī, *f.*, yew-tree, yew.
Tectosagēs, -um, *m.* (Ede), the Tectosages (tēk-tōs'a-jēs).
tēctum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], covering, roof; house. I, 36.
tēctus, see tegō.
tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering. II, 21.
tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.
tēlum, -ī, *n.*, a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.
temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.
temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, 40; IV, 20.
temeritās, -tātis, *f.* [temerē, rashly], rashness, indiscretion.
tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). IV, 33.
temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. I, 19.
temperō, 1, *intr.*, restrain or control one's self, refrain; *temperātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. I, 7.
tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [tempus, time], time, season; weather, usually bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12.
temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, 14.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division or section of time, a time, time (in general); occasion, crisis; omni tempore, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; unō tempore, at the same time, at once. I, 3.
Tencteri, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-rī). IV, 1.
tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum or tēnsium, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. II, 13.
tenebrae, -arum, *f. pl.*, darkness.
tenēō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memoriā tenēre, remember. I, 7.
tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. II, 17.

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

tenuitās, -tātis, *f.* [tenuis, thin], thinness, poverty.

tenulter, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. III, 13.

ter, *num. adv.* [cf. trēs, three], three times. I, 53.

teres, -etis, rounded; tapering.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; **terga vertere**, to flee; **post tergum** or **ab tergō**, in the rear. I, 53; III, 19.

ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; **terrae** (*pl.*) and [orbis terrarum, the world. I, 32; III, 15.

Terrasidius, -dī, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī'tūs tēr'ā-sīd'ī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra, earth], of earth. I, 43.

terreō, 2, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

territō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of terreō, frighten], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [terreō, frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [ter, thrice], third. I, 1.

testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], will. I, 39.

testimōnium, -nī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.

testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. I, 14.

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. II, 6.

Teutomatus, -ī, *m.*, Teutomatus (tū-tōm'a-tūs), son of Ollovico, king of the Nitobroges; later king himself.

Teutoni, -ōrum or **Teutonēs**, -um, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) or Teutones (tū'tō-nēs). I, 33; II, 4.

tēxi, see tegō.

tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. IV, 17.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, Tigurini

(Gg), the Tigurini (tīg'u-rī-nī). I, 12.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. I, 14.

timidē, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25.

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.

timor, -ōris, *m.* [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, 22.

Titūrius, -rī, *m.*, see Sabinus.

tolerō, 1, *tr.* [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with famem*, appease, alleviate. I, 28.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; sublātus, *pf. part as adj.*, elated. I, 5.

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. III, 20.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tōl'ō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.

tormentum, -ī, *n.* [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, *tr.*, scorch, burn.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. III, 10.

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen. tōtius* (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. I, 2.

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. II, 29.

tractus, see trahō.

trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum, *tr.* [trāns + dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.

trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns + dūcō, lead], lead across, lead

over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I, 11.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I, 26.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. I, 53.

trāciō, -icere, -lēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [trāns + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV, 21.

trānō, I, *intr.* [trāns + nō, swim], swim across. I, 53.

tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. III, 15.

trāns, *prep.* with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. I, 1.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb over; board. III, 15.

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. I, 5.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over, transfer.

transfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [fīgō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfix. I, 25.

trānsodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. II, 19.

trānsitus, -ūs, *m.* [trānseō, go across], crossing, passage.

trānslātus, *see* trānsferō.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.

trānsmisus, -ūs, *m.* [trānsmittō, send across], sending across; passage.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send across.

trānsportō, I, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry

across or over, bring over, convey, transport. I, 37; IV, 16.

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānsrhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. IV, 16.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam, thwart. III, 13.

trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trāns-vertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II, 8.

Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Trebōnius, -nī, *m.* (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā'yūs trē-bō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight.

trecentī, -ae, -a (COC), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. IV, 37.

trepidō, I, *intr.*, hurry about in alarm; *pass.*, be disturbed or in confusion.

trēs, tria, *gen. trium* (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. I, 1.

Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* Trēverī (Bīgh), the Treveri (trēv'ā-rī). I, 27; 24.

Triboci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). I, 51; IV, 10.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. I, 39; II, 26.

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.* [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, 13.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [tribuō, render, pay], tribute, tax.

trīdium, -ī, *n.* [trēs, three + diēs, day], three days. I, 26.

triennium, -nī, *n.* [trēs, three + annus, year], three years. IV, 4.

trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [trēs, three], thirty. I, 26.

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. I, 53.

Trinovantēs, -um, *m.* (Ad), the Trinovantes (trīn'ō-vān'tēz).

tripertitō, *adv.* [trēs, three+partior, divide], in three parts or divisions.

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three+plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. I, 24.

triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, triangular.

tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. I, 32.

tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. I, 32.

Troucillus, -i, *m.*, see **Valerius**.

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk of trees. IV, 17.

tū, **tui** (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. II, 20.

tueor, **tuēri**, **tūtus sum**, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. IV, 8.

tuli, see **ferō**.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-līn'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

Tullius, -li, *m.*, see **Cicerō**.

Tullus, -i, *m.*, see **Volcācius**.

tum, *adv.*, then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also; cum . . . **tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, 17.

tumultuor, 1, *intr.* [tumultus, disorder], make a disturbance; *impers.*, there is a disturbance.

tumultuōsē, *adv.* [tumultus, disorder], with confusion or noise.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, 40; II, 11.

tumulus, -i, *m.* [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. I, 43; II, 27.

turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalymen. IV, 33.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū'rō-ni). II, 35.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, 33; IV, 2.

turpiter, *adv.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. II, 27.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. II, 12.

tūtō, *adv.* [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. III, 13.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, 5.

tuus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [tū, you], your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv.* (1) of place, in which place where; (2) of time, when, whenever: as soon as; **ubi primum**, as soon as. I, 5.

Ubii, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bi-i). I, 54; IV, 3.

ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.

ulciscor, **ulciscī**, **ultus sum**, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllius** (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. I, 7.

ulterior, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as noun, those in the rear. III, 27.

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. I, 48.

ultrō, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.

ultus, see **ulciscor**.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, shriek.

umerus, -i, *m.*, the shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **ne . . . umquam**, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.

ūnā, *adv.* [ūnus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place. (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. I, 28.

undecim (XI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+decem, ten], eleven.

undecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [undecim, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.

ūndēvigintī, *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+dē, from+vigintī, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.

undique, *adv.* [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one+

vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass. II, 33.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* ūnius (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. I, 1.

urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [urbs, city], of or in the city.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; especially, the city, Rome. I, 7.

urgeō, urgēre, ursi, —, *tr.*, press, press hard. II, 25.

ūrus, -i, *m.*, wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, the Usipetes (ū-sīp/-ē-tēz). IV, 1.

ūsītātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūsitor, use often], ordinary, familiar.

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with *ad*, until. I, 50; III, 15.

ūsus, see ūtor.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsui esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venīre, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

ut and **utī**, *adv. and conj.*, (1) as *interrog. adv.*, how? (2) as *rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; inasmuch as; as if: (3) as *conj.* (a) with *ind.*, when, after; (b) with *subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; after words of fearing, that not. I, 2.

uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* utrius (App. 32), *adj.* (1) as *interrog.*, which one or which of two; (2) as *rel.*, the one who, of two, whichever. I, 12.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two. either of two; both. I, 34; II, 8.

utī, see ut.

ūtī, see ūtor.

ūtīlis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

ūtīlītās, -tātis, *f.* [ūtīlis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use of,

employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; ūsus, *pf. part.* often translated with. I, 5.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

utrum, *conj.* [uter, which of two], whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or; utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not. I, 40.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. I, 18.

V.

V, sign for *quinque*, five.

Vacalus, -i, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'-a-lūs) river, now the Waal. IV, 10.

vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, 12.

vadum, -i, *n.*, ford, shallow. I, 6.

vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

valeō, 2, *intr.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence or strength; plūrimum valēre, be very powerful. I, 17.

Valerius, -rī, *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs trū-sīl'-ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I, 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (see (1) flāk'ūs), Governor of Gaul 83 B.C. I, 47. (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (see (1) kabū'rūs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I, 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Procillus (see (1) prō-sīl'ūs), son of No. 3. I, 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs vā-lē'rī-ūs prēk'ō-nī-nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. III, 20. (6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (see (1) dōm'nō-taw'rūs), son of No. 3.

Valetiācus, -i, *m.*, Valetiacus (vāl'ō-shī-ā'kūs), a nobleman of the Haedui.

valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [valeō, be strong], health, poor health.

vallēs, -is, *f.*, vale, valley. III, 1.

vallum, -i, *n.* [vālūs, palisade], wall

- or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I, 26.
- vállus**, -i, *m.*, stake; palisade.
- Vangionēs**, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (văn-jī'ō-nēz). I, 51.
- varietās**, -tātis, *f.* [varius, diverse], diversity, variety.
- varius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. II, 22.
- vāstō**, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, 11.
- vāstus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. III, 8.
- vāticinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, 50.
- ve**, *conj.*, enclitic=vel, or.
- vectigal**, -ālis, *n.* [vectigālis, tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. I, 18.
- vectigālis**, -e, *adj.* [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III, 8.
- vectōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō, carry], for carrying; **vectōria nāvis**, a transport.
- vehementer**, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.
- vehō**, **vehere**, **vexī**, **vectum**, *tr.*, carry; bring along. I, 43.
- vel**, *conj. and adv.* (1) as *conj.*, or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or; (2) as *adv.*, even. I, 6.
- Velānius**, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwīn' tūs vē-lā' nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.
- Veliocassēs**, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē'lli-ō-kās' ēz). II, 4.
- Vellaunodūnum**, -i, *n.* (Be), Vellaunodunum (vē-law'nō-dū'nūm or vēllaw-nō-dū'nūm), a town of the Senones.
- Vellāvī**, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Vellavī (vē-lā' vī-i).
- vēlōcitās**, -tātis, *f.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftness, speed.
- vēlōciter**, *adv.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.
- vēlōx**, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. I, 48.
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. III, 13.
- velut**, *adv.*, as, just as. I, 32.
- vēnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.
- vēnātor**, -ōris, *m.* [vēnor, hunt], hunter.
- vēndō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [vēn-um, sale+dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.
- Venelli**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nēl'i). II, 34.
- Veneti**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vēn' ē-tī). II, 34.
- Venetia**, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'shyā), the country of the Veneti. III, 9.
- Veneticus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetian. III, 18.
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor; pardon.
- veniō**, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venire**, have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, as **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. I, 8.
- ventitō**, 1, *intr.* [freq. of **veniō**, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 3.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind. III, 13.
- vēr**, **vēris**, *n.*, the spring.
- Veragri**, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vēr' a-grī). III, 1.
- Verbigenus**, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bij-ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I, 27.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; **verba facere**, plead. I, 20.
- Vercassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, Vercassivellaunus (vēr-kās' i-vē-law'nūs).
- Vercingetorix**, -īgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (vēr' sīn-jēt' ō-rīks), an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls.
- vereor**, **verērī**, **veritus sum**, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.
- vergō**, -ere, —, *intr.*, look or lie towards, be situated; slope. I, 1.
- vergobretus**, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vēr' gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.
- veritus**, *see* vereor.
- vērō**, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.
- versō**, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as*

deponent, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.

versus, *adv.* [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.

versus, -ūs, *m.* [vertō, turn], turning; verse.

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, Vertico (vēr'tī-kō), one of the Nervii.

vertō, *vertere*, **verti**, *versum*, *tr.*, turn, turn around; *terga vertere*, flee. I, 53; III, 19.

Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (vēr'ū-klō'shyūs), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. I, 7.

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *n. as noun*, the truth; **vērī similis**, likely, probable. I, 18.

verūtum, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin.

Vesontio, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf.), Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. I, 38.

vesper, -eri, *m.*, evening; **sub vesperum**, towards evening. I, 26.

vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [vōs, you], your, yours.

vēstīgium, -gī, *n.* [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, 2.

vestiō, 4, *tr.*, clothe, cover.

vestis, -is, *f.* [cf. **vestiō**, clothe], clothing.

vestitus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe], clothing. IV, 1.

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. I, 24.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. II, 20.

vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; *with militēs*, veteran. I, 13.

vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag, standard. II, 20.

vexō, 1, *tr.* [intensive of **vehō**, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. I, 9.

viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. IV, 5.

vicēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [cf.

vigintī, twenty], twenty each, twenty.

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [cf. **vigintī**, twenty], twentieth.

viclēs, *num. adv.* [cf. **vigintī**, twenty], twenty times.

vicinītās, -tātis, *f.* [vicinus, near], neighborhood; *pl.*, neighbors.

vicis, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; *only in the adv. phrase in vicem*, alternately, in turn. IV, 1.

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim; a sacrificial animal.

victor, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. I, 31; II, 24.

victōria, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. I, 14.

victus, *see* **vincō**.

victus, -ūs, *m.* [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, 31.

vicus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. I, 5.

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visum**, *tr.*, *see*, perceive, observe, examine, understand; *see to*, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, 6.

Vienna, -ae, *f.* (Df), Vienna (vī-ēn'a), modern Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I, 12.

vigintī (XX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., twenty. I, 13.

vimen, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, 33.

vinciō, **vincire**, **vīnxī**, **vincitum**, *tr.*, bind. I, 53.

vincō, **vincere**, **vicī**, **victum**, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail, have one's way or desire. I, 25.

vinctus, *see* **vinciō**.

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, 4.

vindico, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, 16.

vīnea, -ae, *f.* [vīnum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II, 12.

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. II, 15.

violō, 1, *tr.*, harm, injure; devastate.

vir, viri, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. **homō**, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II, 25.

virēs, see vīs.

virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.

virgultum, -i, n., thicket, brush, brushwood. III, 18.

Viridomārus, -i, m., Viridomarus (vīr'-i-dō-mā'rūs), a chief of the *Haedui*.

Viridovix, -icis, m., Viridovix (vī-rīd'-ō-vīks, a chief of the *Venelli*. III, 17.

virītim, adv. [vir, man], man by man, to each one, individually.

Viromandui, -ōrum, m. (Be), the *Viromandui* (vīr'-ō-mān'dū-i). II, 4.

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.

vīs, vīs (App. 27), f., force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; pl., **virēs**, strength, force; **vim facere**, use violence. I, 6.

vīsus, see videō.

vīta, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.

vītō, 1, tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, 20.

vitrum, -i, n., woad, a plant used by the *Britons* for dyeing blue.

vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, intr., live; subsist on. IV, 1.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living.

vix, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, 6.

Vocātes, -ium, m. (Dcd), the *Vocates* (vō-kā'tēz). III, 23.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., Voccio (vōk'shyō), a king of *Noricum*. I, 53.

voce, 1, tr. [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m. (Df), the *Vocontii* (vō-kōn'shyi). I, 10.

Volcācius, -ci, m., Gaius Volcācius Tullus (gā'yūs vōl-kā'shyūs tūl'ūs), a young man in *Caesar's* army.

Volcae, -ārum, m. (1) Volcae Are-

comici (Eef), the *Volcae Arecomici* (vōl'sē ār'ē-kōm'i-si). (2) *Volcae Tectosagēs* (Ede) (vōl'sē tēk-tōs'a-jēz).

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82), tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet**, what did he intend or mean? I, 7.

voluntārius, -a, -um, adj. [voluntās, will], willing; pl. as noun, volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I, 7.

voluptās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, 53.

Volusēnus, -i, m., Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs kwa-drā'tūs), a tribune of *Caesar's* army, afterward commander of cavalry. III, 5.

Vorēnus, -i, m., Lucius Vorenus (lū'shyūs vō-rē'nūs), a centurion in *Caesar's* army.

vōs, see tū.

Vosegus, -i, m. (BCg), the *Vosegus* (vōs'-ē-gūs), better, the *Vosges* Mountains. IV, 10.

voveō, vovēre, vōvi, vōtum, tr., vow.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; pl., words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, 32; II, 13.

Vulcānus, -i, m., Vulcanus (vūl-kā'nūs), better *Vulcan*, the god of fire.

vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, 39; II, 1.

vulgus, -i, n., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, 20.

vulnerō, 1, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. I, 26.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. I, 25.

vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. I, 39.

X.

X, sign for decem, ten.

INDEX

TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix.

A

Ablative:

- absolute, **150**: I, 2, 2; 3, 21; 8, 6: II, 1, 6; 2, 2; 7, 7.
- of accompaniment, **140**: I, 1, 10; 3, 5; 10, 11: II, 3, 5; 5, 6; 11, 11: III, 11, 14.
- of accordance, **142**, *a*: I, 4, 1; 8, 8; 14, 3: II, 4, 21; 13, 11; 19, 4.
- of agent, **137**: I, 3, 11; 7, 13; 14, 17: II, 1, 7; 5, 3; 10, 1✓
- of attendant circumstance, **142**, *b*: I, 18, 22; 22, 15: II, 1, 14; 23, 13.
- of cause, **138**: I, 2, 6; 9, 5; 14, 11: II, 1, 10; 4, 7; 9, 10.
- of comparison, **139**: I, 15, 14; 22, 2; 41, 11: II, 3, 1; 7, 10.
- of degree of difference, **148**: I, 5, 1; 6, 6; 14, 3: II, 7, 8; 20, 4; 30, 7.
- with deponent verbs, **145**: I, 2, 5; 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10.
- descriptive, **141**: I, 6, 11; 7, 15; 18, 6: II, 6, 10; 15, 3; 18, 4.
- with **dignus** and **indignus**, **149**, *a*.
- duration of time, **152**, *a*: I, 26, 13.
- of manner, **142**: I, 7, 2; 10, 8; 25, 10: II, 6, 2; 7, 8; 11, 1.
- of material, **136**: III, 13, 6.
- of means, **143**: I, 1, 2; 2, 7; 8, 1: II, 1, 2; 3, 7; 8, 3.
- with **opus est**, **146**: I, 42, 19: II, 22, 6.
- for partitive genitive, **101**, *b*: II, 6, 11.
- of penalty, **108**.
- of place from which, **134**, *a*: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10.
- of place in which, **151**: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17.
- with prepositions, **153**.

- of separation, **134**: I, 1, 13; 2, 8; 8, 11: II, 6, 6; 9, 13; 11, 15.
- of source, **135**: II, 4, 3; 29, 10: IV, 12, 13.
- with special verbs and adjectives, **143**, *a*: I, 13, 16; 53, 4: II, 27, 2: III, 9, 12; 21, 1.
- of specification, **149**: I, 1, 3; 2, 5; 5, 4: II, 4, 13; 8, 6; 13, 6.
- of time, **152**: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12, 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3.
- of the way, **144**: I, 6, 1; 9, 1; 16, 5: II, 19, 21: III, 1, 5: IV, 35, 7.
- absum**, 78.
- Accent, **10-12**: in gen. of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 16, *c*.
- Accusative:
 - with adjectives and adverbs, **122**, *b*: I, 46, 2; 54, 3: III, 7, 7: IV, 9, 3.
 - adverbial, **128**, *b*: I, 42, 19: II, 4, 2; 17, 13: IV, 1, 14.
 - cognate, **128**: I, 38, 1.
 - with compound verbs, **127**: I, 12, 5: II, 5, 12; 10, 2.
 - direct object, **124**: I, 1, 1; 2, 15; 5, 11: II, 1, 4; 2, 1; 7, 2.
 - duration of time, **130**: I, 3, 11: II, 29, 14.
 - in exclamations, **129**.
 - extent of space, **130**: I, 2, 16; 8, 4: II, 6, 2; 11, 12; 16, 1.
 - inner, **125**, *b*; **128**, *a*.
 - with passive verbs, **125**, *c*; **127**, *a*: II, 4, 3.
 - place to which, **131**: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
 - as subject of infinitive, **123**: I, 1, 14; 2, 15; 7, 1: II, 1, 3; 2, 7; 6, 13.

- two accusatives, **125-127**: I, 16, 1; 16, 12; 34, 6; 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3.
- Accusing*, verbs of, constr., **108**.
- Acquitting*, verbs of, constr., **108**.
- ac si**, with subjunctive, **261**.
- Active voice, **181**.
- Adjectives:
- for adverb, **159**.
- agreement of, **157**: I, 2, 1; 3, 6; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1.
- attributive, defined, **156**; agreement of, **157**, *a*, 1.
- comparison, **39-45**.
- declension, 1st and 2nd, **31, 32**; 3rd, **33-38**.
- meaning of comp. and sup., **161**.
- numeral, **47**.
- with partitive meaning, **160**: I, 22, 1; 24, 3; 27, 12: II, 7, 1; 15, 13; 18, 5.
- predicate, **156**: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1.
- as predicate acc., **126**: II, 2, 7.
- used substantively, **158**.
- Adverbs, formation and comparison, **46**.
- Adversative clause, **239; 246, 247**: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4: III, 9, 16: V, 4, 13.
- Agent, see Dative and Ablative of.
- agger**, 33, 34.
- aliquis**, **62; 175**.
- amplius**, 139, *b*: I, 38, 10; 41, 11.
- annōn**, **214**.
- Answers, **215**.
- antequam**, with ind., **236**, *a*; with subj., **236**, *b*; as two words, **236**, *c*.
- Appositives, **95, b**: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 3, 11; 9, 11.
- aquila**, 26; Plate I, 6.
- Arar**, declension of, **25**, *a*.
- Armor and Arms of legionary soldiers, **24**.
- Army, **23-38**.
- Artillery, **35, 36**.
- Asking*, verbs of, with double acc., **125**, *a*: I 16, 1; 18, 4; with substantive purpose clause with **ut** omitted, **228**, *a*: I, 20, 13.
- assuēfactus** and **assuētus**, with abl., **143, a**.
- Attempted action, **191, a**.
- Attraction, **274**: I, 19, 2; 48, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 22, 5.
- Attributive, adjectives, **156**; agreement of, **157**, *a*, 1; genitive, **98-102**.
- B**
- balteus**, 25.
- Base, **14, a**.
- ballista**, 35; Plate II, 5.
- Batavi, island of, IV, **10, 2**.
- Battle, 31, 32; line of, 32.
- bonus**, comparison of, **42**.
- bōs**, declension of, **27**.
- C**
- Caesar: early years, and choice of party, 11; overthrow of his party, 11; weakness of opposite party, 12; revival of his party, 12; development of his powers, 12; his first military command, 13; his consulship, 13; his command in Gaul, 14; outbreak of civil war, 14; weakness of the constitutional government, 14; master of Rome, 15; as statesman, 15; assassination, 16; chronological table of his life, 17.
- Calendar, Roman, **297-300**.
- Calends, **298**.
- Camp: fortifications of, 29; gates, 30; location and form, 28; plan, 29; **val-lum** and **fossa**, 30.
- Capture of towns: blockade, 33; sudden assault, 33; formal siege, 33.
- Cardinals, **32; 47-49**.
- Cases, function of, **92, 93**. See also Abl., Acc., Dat., Gen., and Loc.
- cassis**, 24.
- Catapult, 36.
- causā**, position, **99, a**; with gen. to express cause, **138, a**; with gerund and gerundive, to express purpose, **291**.
- Causal clauses, **239; 243-245; cum**, **239**: I, 2, 5; 9, 2: II, 3, 3; 11, 2; 22, 4; **quod**, **244**: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12: II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; relative, **245**: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14.
- Cavalry, 28; German, IV, 2, 12.
- cavē**, **219**.
- centuriō**, 26; Plate, II, 3.
- Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of Gaul, **21**.
- Civil War, 14, 15.
- Characteristic, clause of, **230**: I, 6, 1; 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3.

Clauses: coördinate, 222; coördinate relative in ind. disc., 269, *a*: II, 17, 11; subordinate, in ind. disc., 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 14: II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13; see also, Adversative, Causal, Characterizing, Comparison, Conditions, Determining, Generalizing, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Parenthetical, Result, Substantive, and Temporal.

coepī, 86.

cognōvī, use of tenses, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*.

Commands: in 1st person pl., 217; in 2nd person, 218; in 3rd person, 220; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10. For negative commands see Prohibitions.

Comparatives, declension, 34; occasional meaning, 161.

Comparison, of adj., 39-45; of adverbs, 46; clauses of, 261: I, 32, 11.

Complementary infinitive, 275.

Condemning, verbs of, 108.

Conditions, 249-259:

connectives, 250.

undetermined present or past, 253: I, 31, 44; 34, 6; 40, 24: III, 22, 5.

present or past contrary to fact, 254: I, 34, 5.

more vivid future, 256: I, 31, 7; 35, 12; 40, 9.

less vivid future, 257: I, 44, 25.

mixed, 258.

omitted or implied, 259.

in indirect discourse, 272: I, 34, 5.

cōnfidō, with abl., 143, *a*: I, 53, 4: III, 9, 12.

Conjugation of verbs: four regular, 67-70; four regular, how distinguished, 63; *caplō*, 71: *sum*, 66; irregular, 77-85; deponents, 73; semi-deponents, 74; defective, 86; periphrastic, 75, 76; impersonal, 87.

cōnsuēvī, use of tenses, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*.

Consonants, sounds of, 6; doubled, 6, *a*; division of, into syllables, 8.

cōnsulō, constr., 114, *b*.

Contracted verb forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12: II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6.

Convicting, verbs of, constr., 108.

Coördinate relative clause, 173, *a*: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4, in indirect discourse, 269, *a*: II, 7, 11.

Council of war, 26: III, 3, 5.

cum, uses as conj., 238-242; causal or adversative, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4; temporal, rules, 240; indic. temporal, 241: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7: VI, 12, 1; subjunctive temporal, 242: I, 4, 8; 7, 1; 12, 13; 25, 7: II, 1, 1; 2, 4; 6, 8.

cum primum, 237.

D

Dates, method of reckoning, 299; method of expressing, 300: I, 2, 2.

Dative:

with adjectives, 106, *b*; 122: I, 1, 9; 3, 14; 9, 6: II, 2, 5; 3, 2; 9, 6.

of agent, 118: I, 11, 13; 31, 47; 35, 6: II, 17, 21; 20, 1.

double, see Purpose.

with *fidem habere*, 115, *a*: I, 19, 15; 41, 11.

indirect object with compound verbs, 116: I, 2, 5; 5, 13; 10, 7; 42, 16: II, 6, 5; 9, 10; 14, 6.

indirect object with intr. verbs, 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9; 9, 8: II, 1, 11; 10, 18; 16, 5.

indirect object with tr. verbs, 114: I, 3, 15; 4, 1; 10, 1: II, 2, 5; 4, 8; 10, 19.

with passive verbs, 114, *c*; 115, *d*; 116, II, *c*: I, 4, 1; 22, 8.

of possessor, 117: I, 7, 9; 10, 1; 11, 12; 34, 5: II, 6, 9; 15, 9; 16, 9.

of purpose, 119: I, 13, 27; 25, 5; 33, 2: II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 6.

of reference, 120: I, 3, 6; 5, 8; 20, 20; 31, 4: II, 11, 17; 26, 14; 31, 9.

Declensions, of nouns, how distinguished, 14; nouns, 15-30; adjectives, 31-38; pronouns, 51-62; cardinals, 48-49.

Defective verbs, 86.

Deliberative questions, 7.

Demonstratives, declar 58; uses, 168-171.

Deponent verbs, 73; with *abl.*, see abl.

Desire, subjunctive of, 184, *a*; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

Determining clause, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11.

deus, declension of, 16.

dexter, comparison of, 42.

diēs, gender, 30, *a*: I, 4, 3.

dignus with abl., 149, *a*.

Diphthongs, sounds of, 5.

Direct discourse, 265.

dissimilis, comparison of, 41; with gen., 106, *b*; with dat., 122.

Distributives, 47.

dō, 85.

domus, declension and gender, 29, *a*; 29, *d*.

dōnec, with ind., 234, *b*; 235, *a*; with subj., 235, *b*.

dōnō, constr., 114, *a*.

doubting, expressions of, with subj., 229, *d*.

Druids, VI, 13, 7.

dubitō, with subj., 229, *d*: II, 2, 8.

dum: ind. temporal clauses, 234; 235, *a*: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1; subj. temporal clauses, 235, *b*: IV, 13, 4; 23, 10; proviso clauses, 260.

dummodo, with subj., 260.

duo, 49.

E

Emotion, verbs of, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.

Enclitics, effect on accent, 12; **cum**, with pers. pron., 51, *c*; **cum**, with reflex. pron., 52, *a*: I, 5, 5; **cum**, with rel. pron., 60, *b*: I, 1, 10; **cum**, with interrog. pron., 61, *b*; **nam**, with interrog. pron., 61, *a*.

enim, 243.

eō, conj. of, 84.

eō . . . **quō**, 148, *a*: I, 14, 3.

etenim, 243.

etsi, with ind., 246.

Exhortation 217: VII, 77, 19.

F

Fearing, expressions of, 228, *b*: I, 19, 11; 27, 9; 39, 24: II, 1, 7; 26, 5.

ferō, 81.

fīdō, with abl., 143, *a*.

Filling, verbs and adj. of, with abl., 143, *a*.

fīō, 83.

Fleet, 36, 37.

fora ut, for future inf., 205, *b*: I, 42, 8.

Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.

frētus, with abl., 143, *a*: III, 21, 1.

frucor, with abl., 145; use of gerundive, 289, *I, a*.

fungor, with abl., 145; use of gerundive, 289, *I, a*.

Future tense, 192; use, 199.

Future perfect tense, 195; equivalent to future, 195, *a*; use, 199.

G

galea, 24.

Gallic campaigns, importance, 9; effect, 9, 10.

Gauls, first appearance in history, 20; decline of their power, 20; invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni, 21; their civilization, 22.

Gaul factions, 22; geographical divisions in Caesar's time, 21.

Gender, general rules, 13; exceptions, 15, *a*; 16, *a*; 29, *a*; 30, *a*; of 1st declension, 15, *a*; of 2nd declension, 16, *a*; of 3rd declension, 28; of 4th declension, 29, *a*; of 5th declension, 30, *a*.

Generalizing, relative, 60, *a*; **cum** clauses, 241, *b*; 242, *b*: I, 25, 7: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7; relative clauses, 250.

Genitive:

with adj. 106: I, 14, 4; 18, 8; 21, 9: III, 21, 9.

appositional, 97, *a*.

with **causā** and **grātiā**, 99, *a*.

descriptive, 100; 104: I, 5, 7; 8, 4; 25, 11: II, 5, 20; 10, 2; 15, 12.

of material, 102: I, 24, 4.

objective, 98: I, 2, 2; 4, 3; 14, 8; 30, 3: II, 4, 7; 7, 4; 21, 4.

partitive, 101: I, 1, 5; 3, 3; 7, 5: II, 2, 4; 4, 19; 10, 5.

possessive, 99; 103: I, 1, 13; 2, 7; 10, 15: II, 1, 9; 2, 11; 7, 8: IV, 5, 4.

subjective, 98: I, 30, 3: II, 1, 3; 4, 5; 11, 15.

of value, 105: I, 20, 14.

with verbs, 107-111: I, 3, 22; 13, 11; 14, 7: II, 5, 5: IV, 5, 9.

Gerund, 287; 289-294: I, 2, 3; 3, 2; 7, 18: II, 7, 4; 9, 3; 10, 10.

Gerundive, 285, II; 288-294: I, 3, 6; 5, 7; 7, 16; 44, 9; II, 7, 5; 9, 13; 10, 8; III, 4, 12; 6, 4; IV, 13, 14.

gladius, 24.

grātiā, position, 99, *a.*

H

hic, declension, 54; uses, 168; 170, *a.*

hindering, verbs of, 228, *c.*

Historical, tenses, 203; present, 190, *a*: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1; II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12, 14; infinitive, 281: I, 16, 2; II, 30, 6; III, 4, 3.

Hollow square (*orbis*), 32.

hoping, verbs of, 280, *c.*

Hostages, (*obsidēs*), I, 9, 10.

I

i, consonant and vowel, 5-7.

iaciō, in composition, 7.

iam diū, etc., with pres., 190, *b*; with impf., 191, *b*: I, 31, 10; III, 5, 1.

idem, 58.

Ides, 298.

idōneus, constr., 122, *a.*

ille, declension, 56; use, 170, *a.*

Imperative mood, 185; in commands, 218; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10; 26, 17.

Imperfect tense, of repeated action, 191, *a*: I, 43, 14; III, 3, 10; with *iam diū* etc., 191, *b*: I, 31, 10; III, 5, 1.

imperō, constr., 115, *b.*

Impersonal verbs, 87; with substantive clauses of result, 229, *b*: I, 2, 12; II, 11, 5; 17, 11; with infinitives, 278; gen. with, 109: IV, 5, 9.

Implied indirect discourse, 273: I, 16, 1; 16, 14; 22, 9; 23, 8; II, 2, 6.

Indefinite pronouns, declension, 62; uses of, 174-178: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2; II, 14, 13; 32, 5.

Indicative mode, 183; in statements, 206; in questions, 209; in relative clauses, 231; 232; in causal clauses, 244; in adversative clauses, 246; in temporal clauses, 234; 235, *a*; 236, *a*; 237; 241; in conditions, 253; 254, *a*; 256.

indignus, constr. with, 149, *a.*

Indirect discourse:

discussion of, 265: I, 13, 7.

conditional sentences in, 272: I, 34, 5.

coördinate relative clauses in, 269, *a*: II, 17, 11.

declarative sentences in, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1; II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

imperative sentences in, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 11; 26, 17.

interrogative sentences in, 268: I, 8, 13; 14, 8; 44, 24.

subordinate clauses in, 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 4; II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13.

Indirect questions, 262-264: I, 8, 13; 12, 3; 15, 4.

Infantry, 27.

Infinitive, 186; 275-281; tenses of, 205: I, 31, 11; 31, 36; 35, 18; complementary, 275; historical, 281: I, 16, 2; II, 30, 6; III, 4, 3; as subject, 276; clause, 186; 277-280; in indirect discourse, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1; II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

Intensive pronoun, (*ipse*), declension, 59; use, 172.

interest, with genitive, 110: II, 5, 5.

Interrogative pronoun, declension, 61; uses 212; 264, *a.*

Interrogative particles, 213; 264, *b.*

ipse, declension, 59; use, 172.

Irregular verbs, conjugation, 66; 77-85.

is, declension, 57; use, 171.

iste, declension, 55; use, 169.

Iuppiter, declension, 27

J

Judicial action, verbs of, 108.

L

laccessō, constr., 143, *a.*

lēgātus, 25; Plate II, 2.

Legion, number of men in, 23; baggage of, 27; officers of, 25, 26; organization of, 23; standards and signals of, 26.

Legionary soldiers, clothing and arms, 24; baggage, 25. See also Plate I, 3.

Locative, of 1st declension, 15, *b*; of second declension, 16, *b*, used to express place, 151, *a*: I, 18, 13; 20, 4; 28, 6.

lōrica, 24.

M

magis, comparison with, 45.

magnus, comparison, 42.

mālō, 82.

malus, comparison, 42.

March line of, 31; length of, 31.
mare, declension, 25, *a*.
maximē, comparison with, 45.
memini, conjugation, 86; with gen., 107.
metuō, constr., 114, *b*.
mille, *mīlia*, 48.
minus, constr., 139, *b*: II, 7, 8.
misereor, constr., 109.
miseret, constr., 109.
modo, with subj., 260.
Modes, 182-185. See also Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.
multus, comparison, 42.
mūsculus, 34, 35.
Musical instruments, 27.

N

nam, 243; see also Enclitics.
-ne, 213, *a*; 264, *b*.
nē, 188, *b*; conj.: with purpose clause, 225, *b*: I, 4, 7; II 5, 7; with substantive purpose clause, 228: I, 19, 11; 27, 9; II, 1, 7; 26, 5; in commands and prohibitions, 216-220.
nē . . . quidem, 188, *b*.
necne, 264, *c*.
Negatives, 188.
neque, 188, *a*.
nesciō quis, 178.
nēve, with subjunctive of desire, 188, *b*.
nisi, 250.
nītor, constr., 143, *a*: I, 13, 16.
nōll, or **nōlite**, to express prohibition, 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23.
nōlō, 82.
• Nominative, as subject, 96; in predicate, 95, *a*: I, 1, 3; 2, 1.
nōn, 188, *a*.
Nones, 298.
nōnne, 213, *b*.
Nouns, 1st declension, 15; 2nd declension, 16; 3rd declension, 17-27; 4th declension, 29; 5th declension, 30; gender of, 13; 15, *a*; 16, *a*; 29, *a*; 30, *a*; predicate, 95, *a*: I, 1, 3; appositive, 95, *b*: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 3, 11; 9, 11.
nōvī, translation of tenses 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*.
num, 213, *c*; 264, *b*.
Numerals, 47-50.

O

Object, direct, see accusative; indirect, see dative.
obliviscor, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.
ōdī, 86.
onager, 36; Plate III, 4.
Optative subjunctive, 184, *a*. See also wishes.
opus est, with abl., 146: I, 42, 19. II, 22, 6.
Ordinal numerals, 47.
ōs, declension, 27.

P

paenitet, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.
Parenthetical relative clauses, 232.
Participles, used attributively, 157; used predicatively, 157; used substantively, 158; tenses of, 205; used for clause 283: I, 4, 3; future active, 285, I; future passive, 285, II: I, 13, 2; 19, 3: III, 11, 10: IV, 22, 18: V, 1, 4; 23, 9; see also Periphrastic; perfect passive 286: I, 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 38: II, 4, 9; present, 284; see also Ablative absolute.
parvus, comparison, 42.
Passive voice, 181; intransitive verbs in, 115, *d*; dative retained with, 114, *c*: 115, *d*; 116, II, *c*: I, 4, 1; 22, 8; constr. of passive verbs of saying, 279, *a*.
Perfect tense, with force of pres., 193, I, *a*; historical, 193, II.
Periphrastic conj., 75, 76; active, 285, I; passive, 285, II, *a*: I, 11, 13; 14, 7; 23, 4: II, 17, 21; 20, 1; 31, 8; with dat. of agent, 118; with abl. of agent, 118, *a*.
Personal pronouns, declension, 51; uses, 162; as partitive or objective genitives, 51, *b*; with **similis** and **dis-similis**, 106, *b*.
persuādeo, constr., 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9: II, 10, 18; 16, 5.
Phalanx, I, 24, 11.
pīlum, 24.
pīget, with gen., 109.
Place, from which, 134, *a*: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10; in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17; to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4, 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
plēnus, with gen., 106, *a*.

Pluperfect tense, 194; with force of imperfect, 194, *a*: III, 1, 6; in narration, 197, 198.

plūs, declension, 34, *a*; constr., 139, *b*. Pompey, 14.

Possessive pronouns, declension, 53; used for possessive gen., 99; position with *causā* or *grātiā*, 99, *a*; with *interest*, 110; omission of, 167.

possum, 80.

postquam, with ind., 237: I, 24, 1; 27, 5: II, 5, 12; as two words, 236, *c*.

Potential subjunctive, 184, *b*; 208; 209.

potior, with abl., 145: I, 2, 5; with gen., 111: I, 3, 22; use of gerundive, 289, I *a*: III 6, 4.

praefectus fabrum, 25.

praesertim, 245.

Predicate, accusative, 126: I, 16, 12; 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3; adjectives, 156; 157, *a*, 2; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1; noun, 95, *a*; 126; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: I, 1, 3.

Prepositions, with abl., 153, *a*; with acc., 155; with acc. or abl., 154; verbs compounded with, 116, I; 124, *c*; 127.

Present tense 190; historical present, 190, *a*: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12, 14; with *iam diū* and *iam pridem*, 190, *b*; with *dum*, 234, *a*: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1.

Principal parts of verbs, 65.

Principal tenses, 203.

priusquam, with ind., 236, *a*; with subj. 236, *b*: II, 12, 1: III, 10, 9; 18, 15: IV, 14, 2: VII, 71, 1; as two words, 236, *c*: III, 26, 8.

Prohibitions negative in, 216; expressed by subj., 217; 220; expressed by *nōli* or *nōlite* with inf., 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23; in indirect discourse, 287: I 26, 17.

Pronouns, 51-62; 162-178; in indirect discourse, 271; see also Demonstrative, Generalizing Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, and Relative.

Pronunciation, 1-12; of proper names, I, 1, 1.

proptior, comparison of, 43, with acc., 122, *b*.

propius, with acc., 122, *b*: I, 46, 2: IV, 9, 3.

prōsum, 79.

Proviso clause 260.

prōvincia, 9.

proximus, with acc., 122, *b*: I, 1, 9; 54, 3: III, 7, 7.

proximē, with acc., 122, *b*.

pudet, with gen., 109.

Purpose clauses, 225: I, 3, 4; 4, 7; 5, 14: II, 2, 3; 5, 7; 9, 4; 17, 15: V, 3, 18; substantive, 228: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 19, 11; 28, 9; 31, 24; 39, 24: II, 2, 6; 10, 19.

Q

Quaestor, 25.

quam, with comparatives, 139, *a*; with superlatives 161, *a*.

quam diū, with ind., 234, *b*.

quam sī, with subj., 261.

quamquam, with ind., 246.

quamvis, with subj., 247.

quandō, in causal clause, 244.

Quantity, of syllables, 9; of vowels. 1-3.

quasī, with subj., 261.

Questions, introductory words, 212, 213; modes in, 209; deliberative, 210: I, 40, 6: III, 14, 9; double, 214; indirect, 262-264: I, 12, 3; 15, 4; 20, 17; 53, 20: II, 4, 2; 8, 3; 11, 6; double indirect, 264, *c*: I, 40, 43; 50, 12: IV, 14, 5; rhetorical, 211.

quī, relative, 60; indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61. See also Relative.

quia, in causal clause, 244.

quicumque, 60, *a*.

quidam, 62, *b*.

quilibet, 62.

quin, in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, *c*: I 33, 15; 47, 6: II, 3, 14: IV, 7, 5; in substantive clauses of result, 229, *d*: I, 31, 15.

quis, indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61; with *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, 174: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2: II, 14, 13; 32, 5.

quispiam, 62; 176.

quisquam, 62; with negatives, 177: III, 22, 7: IV, 1, 20.

quisque, 62.

quisquis, 60, *a*.

quīvis, 62.

quō, in purpose clauses, 225, *a*; 2: I, 8, 6: II, 17, 15: V, 3, 18.

quoad, with ind., 234, *b*; 235, *a*; with subj., 235, *b*.

quod, in causal clauses, 244: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12; 16, 14: II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; 30, 7; in substantive clauses, 248; 248, *a*: I, 14, 8; 19, 2; 25, 6; 36, 14; 40, 36: II, 10, 18; 17, 12; 20, 10.

quōminus, with substantive clause of desire, 228, *c*: I 31, 24: IV, 22, 16.

quoniam, in causal clause, 244.

R

Reciprocal expression, 166.

rēfert, constr., 110.

Reflexive pronouns, declension, 52; use, 163; to express reciprocal idea, 166; direct reflexive, 164: I, 30, 6; 33, 14; 40, 11; indirect reflexive, 165: I, 30, 3; 33, 11; 40, 5.

Relative clauses, adversative, 247: V, 4, 13; causal 245: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14; characteristic, 230: I, 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3; conditions, 250; coördinate, 173, *a*: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; coördinate in indirect discourse, 269, *a*: II, 7, 11; determining, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11; parenthetical, 232; of purpose 225, *a*, 1: I 6, 14: II, 2, 3; result, see Characterizing.

Relative pronouns, declension, 60; agreement of, 173; see also Relative clauses.

reminīscor, constr. 107: I, 13, 11.

Repeated action, 191, *a*.

repraesentātiō, 270, *a*: I, 14, 14; 31, 26; 40, 20: II, 14, 11.

Result clauses 226: I 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; sequence of tenses in, 204, *a*: II, 21, 12; V, 15, 3; substantive, 229: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4; 31, 51; 33, 15: II, 3, 14; 4, 8; 17, 11.

Rhetorical question, 211.

S

scorpiō, 36.

scūtum, 24.

*Semi-deponent verbs, 74.

senex, declension, 27.

Sentences, defined, 88; simple, 88; complex 91; compound, 90.

Separation, see Dative and Ablative.

Sequence of tenses, 202, 203: I, 12, 2; 13, 7; 19, 1: II, 12, 14; 17, 2; exceptions to, 204: II, 21, 12: V, 15, 3.

sī, in conditions, 250, see also Conditions; meaning to see whether, 264, *b*.

signum, 27.

similis, with gen. 106, *b*; with dat., 122; comparison of, 41.

simul ac, with ind., 237.

sīn, with conditions, 250.

Spain, Caesar's idea of location, V, 13, 5.

Subjunctive:

by attraction, 274: I, 19, 2; 48, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 22, 5.

of desire, 184, *a*; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

of contingent futurity, 184, *b*; in conclusion of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257; 259; in questions, 209; in characterizing clauses, 230, *a*, *b*.

of fact, 184, *c*; in result clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 229; in characterizing clauses, 230, *a*, *b*.

See also **ac**, **sī**, **antequam**, **cum**, **dōnec**, **dum**, **dummodo**, **modo**, **nē**, **nēve**, **priusquam**, **quam sī**, **quamvis**, **quasi**, **quā**, **quō**, **quoad**, **quōminus**, **tamquam**, **ut**, and **ut sī**.

Subordinate clauses, see Clauses.

Substantive clauses, see Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, Purpose, **quod**, and Result.

Substantives, agreement of, 95.

Sulla, 11, 12.

sum, conjugation, 66; compounds of, 77-80.

Supine, acc., 295: I, 11, 4; 18, 17; 30, 2; abl., 296: IV, 30, 6.

suus and **sui**, declension, 52; reflexives, 163-168.

Syllables, 8; quantity of, 9.

T

taedet, with gen., 109.
tametsi, with ind., 246.
tamquam, with subj., 261.
 Temporal clauses, 233-242; see **cum**,
dum, **postquam**, **priusquam**,
quoad, **ubi**, **ut**.

Tenses, stems of, 64; of ind., 190-199; of
 subj., 200, 201; of infinitive and parti-
 ciple, 205; sequence of, 202-204; see
 also Sequence of tenses, Present, Im-
 perfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect,
 and Future perfect.

testūdō, 33; Plate III, 3.

testūdō arietaria, 35; Plate III, 2.

Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of, 21.

Time, at which, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12,
 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3; duration of,
 130; 152, a: I, 3, 11; 26, 13: II, 29, 14;
 see also Temporal clauses.

trēs, declension, 49.

Tower, 33; Plate III, 1.

tribūnus, 26.

Triumvirate, 13; IV, 1, 1.

tū, 51.

U

ubi, with ind., 237: I, 16, 9; II, 6, 6; 10,
 9.

ūllus, 177.

ūnus, declension, 32.

ut, in purpose clause, 225, a, 1: I, 3, 4;
 II, 9, 4; in result clause, 226: I, 6, 4;
 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; in
 substantive clauses of purpose, 228, a,
 b: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 39, 24; in sub-
 stantive clauses of result, 229, b: I,
 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4: II, 4, 8; 17, 11; in
 adversative clause, 247: III, 9, 16;
 omitted, 228, a: I, 20, 13: III, 11, 2.

ut nōn, in result clauses, 226; in sub-
 stantive result clauses, 229.

ut si, with subjunctive, 261.

utinam, with subjunctive of desire, 221.

ūtor, with abl., 145: I, 5, 9; 16, 5: II,
 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10; gerundive of, 289,
 I, a.

utrum . . . an, 214.

V

vāgīna, 24.

velut, with subj., 261.

velut si, with subj., 261: I, 32, 11.

Verbs, 1st conj., 67; 2nd conj., 68; 3rd
 conj., 69; 3rd conj., in -iō, 71; 4th
 conj., 70; irregular, 66; 77-85; de-
 ponent, 73; semi-deponent, 74; de-
 fective, 86; impersonal, 87; act. peri-
 phrastic, 75; pass. periphrastic, 76;
 principal parts, 65; three stems of, 64;
 agreement of, 179, 180; voices of, 181;
 modes, 182-185; tenses, 189-205; con-
 tracted forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12:
 II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6; singular with
 plural subject, 180, b: I, 1, 5; intransi-
 tive in passive voice, 115, d: I, 33,
 18; 40, 7: III, 14, 2.

Verbal adjective, 187.

Verbal nouns, 187.

vēscor with abl., 145; gerundive of, 289
 I, a.

vīnea, 35.

vīs, declension, 27.

Vocative, 132.

Voices, 181; see Active and Passive.

Volitive subjunctive, 184, a.

volō, 82.

Vowels, sounds of, 4; quantity of, 1-3.

W

Wishes, subjunctive in, 221; introduced
 by **utinam**, 221.

Wall, Gallic, 32, 33.



A CAESAR COMPOSITION BOOK

BY

H. F. SCOTT

INSTRUCTOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL

AND

CHARLES H. VAN TUYL

ASSISTANT PRINCIPAL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO NEW YORK

Copyright, 1910

BY SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

INTRODUCTION

This book is prepared in the belief that the principles of syntax, which are illustrated by the exercises in composition will be more easily and more firmly fixed in the mind of the student if placed before him in clear statement in connection with the material for translation. Further, there seems little occasion for requiring the purchase of a grammar by students who are to take but two years of Latin, a class which includes a considerable proportion of the students of Caesar in most public high schools. This text can be used without the employment of a grammar, though references are provided for those who prefer to have the grammar in the hands of students in the second year.

The illustrative phrases and sentences are taken from the chapters of the Caesar text on which the respective lessons are based, and the vocabulary is closely limited to the chapter to which the lesson is referred or to the chapters immediately preceding. In the last nine lessons it has seemed desirable to employ constructions for drill which are not found in the chapters on which these lessons are based, and consequently no illustrations are given.

A number of lessons contain reviews of forms which require special attention on the part of the average student. For a study of these, reference is made to the pages from the Appendix of *Bellum Helveticum* which are printed at the end of this volume.

ABBREVIATIONS

References to Latin Grammars are made thus:

A = Allen and Greenough

B = Bennett

H = Harkness

H-B = Hale and Buck

W = Grammatical Appendix to Walker's Caesar

CAESAR COMPOSITION

LESSON I

(BOOK I, CHAPTER 1)

1. Predicate Nominative

2. Ablative of Specification

1. *Passive forms of verbs meaning to name, call, appoint, choose, and the like, and forms of sum, may be followed by a predicate noun in the same case as the subject.*

Gallī ipsōrum linguā *Celtae* appellantur.

2. *The ablative may be used with verbs, adjectives, or nouns, to specify in what respect something is true.*

Reliquōs Gallōs *virtūte* praecedunt.

1. The Helvetians were called Celts. 2. This river is called the Rhone. 3. The Aquitanians surpassed the Belgians in culture. 4. The Gauls and Germans differed from each other in customs and laws. 5. Caesar waged war with the Helvetians. 6. The rest of the Gauls are also very brave.

7. The Belgians who are the farthest distant from the province are the bravest of the Gauls. 8. The river Rhine separates them from the Germans, and their country also touches the ocean. 9. They often wage war with the Germans.

1. A. 284; B. 168; H. 401, 1; H-B. 317, III; W. 95, *a*.

2. A. 418; B. 226; H. 480; H-B. 441; W. 149.

LESSON, II

(CHAPTER 2)

1. Ablative of Accompaniment

2. Dative with Special Verbs

1. *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative, usually with cum. But cum may be omitted, especially in military phrases, when the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.*

Ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent.

2. *Many verbs meaning to favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites, also many verbs meaning to believe, persuade, command, serve, resist, obey, envy, spare, pardon, and the like, take the dative, when the English idiom would suggest a direct object:*

Civitātī persuāsit.

1. The Helvetians went forth from their country with a great number (*multitūdō*) of men. 2. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians easily, because they were desirous of war (*use gerund*). 3. The Germans did not wage war with the Aquitanians. 4. The consuls were not able to persuade the multitude. 5. These men were called Belgians. 6. The Helvetians did not surpass the Germans in courage.

7. The country of the Helvetians extends from Lake Geneva to the river Rhine. 8. It is bounded on one side by the Jura mountains (*singular*) which separate the Helvetians from the Sequani. 9. The Helvetians are very brave, but they do not often make war on their neighbors.

1. A. 413; B. 222; H. 473, 1; H.-B. 418, 420; W. 140.

2. A. 367; B. 187, II a; H. 426; H.-B. 362 ft. n. 3; W. 115.

LESSON III

(CHAPTER 3)

1. Dative of Indirect Object

2. Accusative of Duration of Time

1. *The indirect object is put in the dative case.*

Eī filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

2. *Duration of time is expressed by the accusative.*

Cuius pater rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat.

1. The neighboring (nearest) tribes (*cīvītās*) did not give the Helvetians grain. 2. The father of Casticus had been king for many years. 3. The Helvetians had not given Orgetorix royal power. 4. This man has held the leadership in the state for three years. 5. Diviciacus will set out with the army. 6. The senate will not be able to persuade these tribes.

7. The father of Casticus the Sequanian had been a friend of the Roman people for many years. 8. But his son, who was popular with (acceptable to) the common people made a conspiracy with Orgetorix. 9. He tried to seize the royal power among the Sequanians, but this was not very easy to accomplish.

1. A. 361; B. 187; H. 424; H.-B. 365; W. 113.

2. A. 423, 2; B. 181; H. 417; H.-B. 387; W. 130.

LESSON IV

(CHAPTER 4)

1. Ablative of Time

2. Ablative of Means

1. *Time when or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Diē cōstitutā Orgetorix ad iūdicium familiam coēgit.

2. *Means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Cum cīvitās armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur.

1. On that day Orgetorix was compelled to plead his case in chains. 2. The magistrates asserted their rights by [force of] arms. 3. In the year appointed, the Helvetians set out. 4. The state compelled him by punishment to plead his case. 5. The death of Orgetorix was reported to Caesar. 6. These men had been clients of Orgetorix for many years.

7. On the day appointed for the trial (for pleading the case) Orgetorix escaped by the help of (*per*) his clients and debtors whom he had collected. 8. The magistrates, aroused by this occurrence (*rēs*) attempted to collect an army and to assert their rights by arms. 9. According to their custom they collected a large number of men from the fields.

1. A. 423, 1; B. 230; H. 486; H.-B. 439; W. 152.

2. A. 409; B. 218; H. 476; H.-B. 423; W. 143.

LESSON V

(CHAPTER 5)

1. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs

2. Enclitic use of *cum*

1. *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds govern the ablative case.*

Eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō.

2. *With ablative forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns governed by cum, and usually also with relatives and interrogatives, the preposition is added to its object as an enclitic.*

Quod sēcum portātūrī erant.

1. The Helvetians used the grain which they had collected (*cōnferre*). 2. Each man took with him a three months' supply of meal. 3. The Rauraci will also adopt (use) this plan. 4. The Tulingi, with whom the Helvetians set out from home, were their neighbors. 5. The Boii and the Helvetians set out from home in the same year. 6. The Helvetians were hemmed in (*continēre*) by mountains and rivers.

7. After the death of Orgetorix, the Helvetians set out from their country. 8. They burned their towns and villages, and took with them a three-months' supply of meal. 9. The Rauraci adopted the same plan and set out with them.

1. A. 410; B. 218 1; H. 477; H.-B. 429; W. 145

2. A. 150 *d*; B. 142 4; H. 175 7, 182 2; H.-B. 418 *a*; W. 51 *c*.

LESSON VI

(CHAPTER 6)

1. Ablative of Route

2. Ablative Absolute

1. *The ablative is used to express the way by which a person or thing goes.*

Quibus itineribus exire possent.

2. *The ablative absolute consists of a noun or pronoun and a participle, adjective, or another noun or pronoun used in the ablative case, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.*

Omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt.

1. The Helvetians could leave home by two roads. 2. When everything was prepared (*Do not use a clause*), they all assembled. 3. The wagons will be taken (*dūcere*) by this road. 4. In the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius the Helvetians and the Boii set out from home. 5. The Gauls used this bridge. 6. Caesar brought (led) one legion with him.

7. The river which flowed between the Helvetians and the Allobroges was crossed in several places by fording. 8. At that time a bridge also extended from the country of the Helvetians to a town of the Allobroges. 9. This bridge could be crossed by wagons.

1. A. 429 a; B. 218 9; H. 476 (last two ex.); H.-B. 426; W. 144.

2. A. 419; B. 227; H. 489; H.-B. 421; W. 150.

LESSON VII

(CHAPTER 7)

1. ⁶¹ Infinitive with Subject Accusative
2. Apposition

1. *The infinitive with its subject in the accusative case is used with verbs and phrases of knowing, thinking, remembering, saying, hearing, perceiving, and the like.*

Caesar quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum (esse).

2. *A noun or pronoun used without a connecting verb to explain the meaning of another noun or pronoun meaning the same thing, is called an appositive, and is put in the same case as the word it modifies.*

L. Cassium cōnsulem.

1. It was reported to the Helvetians that Caesar was setting out from the city. 2. The army of Cassius, the consul, was defeated. 3. The envoys said that the bridge was broken down. 4. Nammeius, an envoy of the Helvetians, was of unfriendly disposition toward the Romans. 5. The soldiers cannot go by this road. 6. When the consul had been killed (*abl. abs.*) the army was sent under the yoke.

7. When Caesar's arrival was reported to the Helvetians, envoys were sent to him. 8. These envoys said that the Helvetians would refrain from injury and harm, and they asked that it be allowed them to go through our province.

1. A. 459; B. 331; H. 613; H.-B. 589; W. 279.

2. A. 282; B. 169, 2; H. 393; H.-B. 319, I; W. 95, b.

LESSON VIII

(CHAPTER 8)

1. Ablative of Place Whence

2. Reflexive Pronouns

1. *Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with a preposition. But the preposition is omitted with names of towns and small islands, and with domō and rūre.*

Quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant.

2. *The reflexive pronoun is used to refer to the subject of the sentence.*

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat.

1. The soldiers have assembled from the province. 2. Caesar had with him the tenth (*decima*) legion. 3. The Helvetians had assembled from their towns. 4. Caesar said that he fortified redoubts. 5. The Rhone, a large river, separates the Helvetians from our province. 6. The Helvetians made a large number of (*complūrēs*) rafts.

7. The soldiers fortified redoubts and constructed a wall and a ditch from Lake Geneva to the Jura mountains. 8. When this work had been completed and garrisons stationed (*abl. abs.*) the Helvetians tried to cross the river by night, but the soldiers drove them back with their weapons.

1. A. 426 1; B. 229; H. 462, 1; H.-B. 409; W. 134, a.

2. A. 299; B. 244, I, II; H. 503, 504; H.-B. 262; W. 163.

LESSON IX

(CHAPTER 9)

1. Ablative of Cause

2. Objective Genitive

1. *The ablative is used to express cause.*

Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne plūrimum poterat.

2. *The genitive may be used with nouns or adjectives to express the object of the action implied.*

Cupiditāte rēgnī.

1. Dumnorix desired a revolution because of his eagerness for (of) royal power. 2. He undertook this affair because of his eagerness for popularity. 3. These men are very influential because of their lavish giving. 4. Envoys came to Dumnorix from the Helvetians. 5. The Helvetians and Sequani gave hostages to each other (*not dative*). 6. The Sequani did not hinder the Helvetians from their march.

7. The Helvetians were unable to cross (could not cross) the Rhone and go through the Roman province on account of the fortifications which Caesar had made. 8. Envoys were then (*deinde*) sent to the Sequani, but they could not persuade these, and so Dumnorix, the Aeduan, who was friendly to the Helvetians, undertook the affair.

1. A. 404; B. 219; H. 475; H.-B. 444; W. 138.

2. A. 347; B. 200; H. 440 2; H.-B. 354; W. 98, 106.

LESSON X

(CHAPTER 10)

1. Dative with Compounds

2. Complementary Infinitive

1. *The dative is used after many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum.*

Eī mūnītiōnī T. Labiēnum praefēcit.

2. *The infinitive may be used to complete the meaning of another verb, on which it directly depends.*

Īre contendit.

1. The Roman people placed Caesar in command of the province. 2. Caesar hastened to lead his army into the country of the Vocontii. 3. Titus Labienus had been placed in command of the fortifications. 4. The legion will try to reach (arrive in) the country of the Allobroges on the seventh day. 5. Dumnorix was always very powerful because of his popularity. 6. There were many causes of war.

7. Two legions were levied in Italy by Caesar and three which were wintering around Aquileia were led out of winter quarters. 8. Labienus, whom Caesar had placed in command of the fortifications, had one legion. 9. With these six legions Caesar marched (made a march) into the country of the Allobroges and from there into the country of the Segusiavi, who are outside the province.

1. A. 370; B. 187 III; H. 429; H.-B. 376; W. 116.

2. A. 456; B. 328; H. 607; H.-B. 586, a; W. 275.

LESSON XI

(CHAPTER 11)

1. Clauses of Result with *ut*2. Causal Clauses with *cum*1. Result clauses introduced by *ut* take the subjunctive.

Ut oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.

2. Causal clauses introduced by *cum* take the subjunctive.

Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent.

1. Since the Helvetians were laying waste their lands, the Aeduans sent envoys to Caesar. 2. The Allobroges have so deserved of (*dē*) the Roman people that Caesar ought to defend them. 3. Since the Helvetians have led their forces through the pass, the Aeduans will ask aid. 4. The lands of the Aeduans were so laid waste that they could not easily keep the [force of] enemy from their towns. 5. The Helvetians made war on (*bellum inferre*) the Allobroges. 6. Their children have been carried away into slavery.

7. Envoys were sent to Caesar by the Aeduans whose towns had been stormed. 8. Since they had been allies of the Roman people, Caesar sent them aid. 9. Also the lands of the Allobroges had been devastated and their towns burned (*incendere*). 10. The Helvetians had not yet (*nōndum*) arrived in the country of the Santoni.

1. A. 537; B. 284, H. 570; H.-B. 521, 2; W. 226.

2. A. 549; B. 286 2; H. 598; H.-B. 523; W. 239.

LESSON XII

(CHAPTER 12)

1. Two Accusatives with Compounds of *trans*

2. Place From Which with Special Words

1. *Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take two objects, one governed by the preposition, the other by the force of the simple verb.*

Trēs partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse.

2. (For the ablative denoting place whence, see Lesson VIII.)

Cum domō exisset.

1. The Helvetians led their forces across that river.
 2. The Tigurini had set out from home in the memory of our fathers.
 3. Caesar had not yet led the army across the Saone.
 4. The Romans will attack that division (*pāgus*) which has set out from home.
 5. Since Caesar came upon the Helvetians unawares, they took to flight.
 6. This river flows with such (*tam*) remarkable sluggishness, that it can be easily crossed.

7. Caesar avenged both public and (*et . . . et*) private wrongs when he attacked and cut to pieces that part of the Helvetians which had been left on this side of the Saone.
 8. For the Tigurini had killed Lucius Cassius and sent his army under the yoke, and in the same battle they had killed Lucius Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law.

1. A. 395; B. 179; H. 413; H.-B. 386; W. 127.

2. A. 427, 1; B. 229 1; H. 462, 4; H.-B. 451, a; W. 134 a.

LESSON XIII

(CHAPTER 13)

1. Time Within Which

2. Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting

1. *The ablative is used to express the time within which an act takes place.*

Id quod ipsī XX diēbus cōnfēcerant.

2. *The genitive is often used after verbs of remembering and forgetting, but the accusative is sometimes used, regularly so with forms of neuter pronouns.*

Reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

1. He will overtake the Helvetians within four days.
2. The Romans remembered this disaster. 3. Caesar crossed the river in one day. 4. The Gauls remembered the courage of their fathers. 5. The Helvetians could not lead their forces across the Rhone. 6. Divico set out from home with the rest of the Helvetians.

7. A bridge was made across (*in*) the Saone and the army was thus led across in one day. 8. The Helvetians, who had crossed this river with the greatest difficulty, were startled by the sudden approach of the Romans, and they sent an embassy to Caesar. 9. Divico, who remembered the war with Cassius (*adjective*) and the former disaster of the Romans, was leader of this embassy.

1. A. 423; B. 231; H. 487; H.-B. 439; W. 152.

2. A. 350; B. 206; H. 454; H.-B. 350; W. 107.

LESSON XIV

(CHAPTER 14)

Indirect Discourse

The use of modes in indirect discourse is as follows: A main clause expressing a statement takes its verb in the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

A main clause expressing a command takes its verb in the subjunctive.

Subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Caesar said that the Roman people had been deceived. 2. We know that this was done by the Helvetians. 3. Divico replied that hostages had not been given. 4. The Aeduans remembered (held in memory) that envoys had been sent. 5. The Romans could **not** forget the recent injuries. 6. Hostages will be sent within twenty days.

7. The envoys said that the Helvetians had inflicted injuries on the Aeduans, who were allies of the Roman people, and that they had attempted a journey through the province; 8. that Caesar, who was leader of the Roman army, was witness of this fact (thing).

LESSON XV

(CHAPTER 15)

1. Ablative of Separation

2. Indirect Question

1. *The ablative of separation is used with or without a preposition after words of privation, separation, removal, and the like.*

Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat.

2. *The verb of an indirect question is put in the subjunctive.*

Quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.

1. The enemy will not be restrained from battle. 2. The Helvetians did not see in what direction Caesar was marching (making his march). 3. The enemy cannot prevent our cavalry from foraging. 4. We do not know in what place the Romans began battle with the cavalry of the enemy. 5. The Aeduans said that four thousand horsemen had been collected. 6. The envoys replied that the cavalry which had been sent ahead could not be restrained from battle.

7. The Helvetians began battle with Caesar's cavalry, which had been sent ahead, and routed them. 8. They were elated by this battle, because five hundred horsemen had been able to rout so large a number. 9. But on the next day our men stood their ground more boldly, and prevented the enemy from foraging and plundering.

1. A. 400; B. 214; H. 461; H.-B. 408, 411; W. 134.

2. A. 574; B. 300; H. 649 II; H.-B. 537; W. 262.

LESSON XVI

(CHAPTER 16)

1. Two Accusatives with Verbs of Asking

2. Antecedent of Relative Pronoun Repeated

1. *Some verbs of asking and demanding take two accusatives, one expressing the thing asked for and the other the person of whom the request is made.*

Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre.

2. *The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes repeated in the relative clause.*

Diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus metīrī oportēret.

1. Caesar demanded cavalry of the Aeduans. 2. The enemy turned their course away from the river on which [river] Caesar was bringing his grain supplies (*frūmentum*). 3. The Romans will not demand ships of the Gauls. 4. The army will use the grain which the Aeduans are bringing. 5. The soldiers did not know on what day the enemy had moved camp. 6. The magistrates will restrain their people (*suōs*) from war.

7. The Romans undertook this war, influenced in large part by the entreaties of the Aeduans. 8. The Aeduans had promised cavalry and grain, and a large number of their leading men (*prīncipēs*) were in Caesar's camp. 9. But in so critical a situation (*tempus*) they did not assist him.

1. A. 396; B. 178 a; H. 411; H.-B. 393; W. 125.

2. A. 307 a; B. 251 3; H. 399, 1; H.-B. 284 4; W. cf. p. 62.

LESSON XVII

(CHAPTER 17)

1. Ablative of Agent

2. Use of Perfect Participle

1. *The ablative with ā or ab is used to express the agent, with a passive verb.*

Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia ēnūntiārī.

2. *The perfect participle denotes an act taking place before the time of the verb with whose subject it agrees. It may be used as a brief expression for various ideas, such as cause, time, condition, and the like.*

Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris *adductus* quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit.

1. The common people were not hindered by Liscus. 2. Influenced by the authority of these men, they did not collect the grain. 3. These things will be reported by the Gauls. 4. Compelled by the authority of the magistrate, he kept silent. 5. The magistrates had demanded grain of the common people. 6. The Gauls have not sent the cavalry which they promised.

7. There were some of the Aeduians who were more influential than Liscus. 8. By disloyal talk, they hindered the common people from bringing the grain which they had promised. 9. Liscus could not restrain them, but he disclosed their plans to Caesar.

1. A. 405; U. 216; H. 468; H.-B. 406 1; W. 137.

2. A. 496; B. 337 2; H. 638; H.-B. 604; W. 283.

LESSON XVIII

(CHAPTER 18)

1. Ablative of Price

2. Semi-deponents

1. *With verbs of buying and selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Parvō pretiō redēpta habēre.

2. *Semi-deponents have active forms in the present system and passive forms in the perfect system. The only verbs belonging to this class are audeō, gaudeō, soleō, fidō, and some compounds of the last.*

1. Dumnorix bought the taxes for a small price. 2. We do not dare to send the cavalry. 3. No one could buy the taxes for a large price when Dumnorix bid (*abl. abs.*). 4. These tribes (*civitas*) did not dare to favor the Romans. 5. Diviciacus was restored to his former position of honor by Caesar. 6. Liscus, retained by Caesar, spoke more freely.

7. Dumnorix was a man of great boldness and of great popularity. 8. He supported a large number of cavalry at his own expense, and he was very powerful among the neighboring tribes. 9. He had favored Orgetorix, because he hated Caesar and the Romans. 10. His brother, Diviciacus, did not dare disclose these things to Caesar.

1. A. 416; B. 225; H. 478; H.-B. 427; W. 147.

2. A. 192; B. 114 1; H. 224; H.-B. 161; W. 74.

LESSON XIX

(CHAPTER 19)

1. **Constructions with Verbs of Fear**2. **Subjective Genitive**

1. *Verbs and phrases expressing fear, anxiety, or danger are followed by the subjunctive introduced by ut or nē. In such sentences nē means that and ut means that...not.*

Nē Diviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur.

2. *The subjective genitive refers to the subject of the action implied in the noun on which the genitive depends.*

Dīviciācī summum in populum Rōmānum studium.

1. They feared that Dumnorix would lead the forces of the Helvetians through the country of the Sequani. 2. The Gauls knew the great devotion of Diviciacus to Caesar. 3. Diviciacus fears that the magistrate of the Aeduans will accuse his brother. 4. At the coming of Caesar envoys were sent. 5. All these things were bought for a small price. 6. The Gauls had not dared to offend Diviciacus (the mind of Diviciacus).

7. The Helvetians had been led through the country of the Sequani by Dumnorix, who had also arranged that hostages should be exchanged (given) between them. 8. He had done these things without the order of the Aeduans and he was accused by the magistrate, Liscus. 9. But Caesar feared that he would offend his brother by punishing him (by his punishment).

1. A. 564; B. 296 2; H. 567; H.-B. 502, 4; W. 228 b.

2. A. 343, n. 1 (2); B. 199; H. 440, 1; H.-B. 344; W. 98.

LESSON, XX

(CHAPTER 20)

1. Locative Case

2. Clauses of Purpose with *ut* and *ne*

1. The locative case, expressing place where, is seen in the forms *domī*, at home, *rūrī*, in the country, and a few other common nouns. Names of cities and small islands in the first and second declension, singular number, have their locative forms identical with the genitive.

Cum ipsī plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā posset.

2. The subjunctive introduced by *ut* or *nē* is used to express purpose.

Custōdēs pōnit ut quae agat scire possit.

1. Dumnorix was very influential at home. 2. Diviciacus summoned his brother in order that he might warn him. 3. They cannot avoid suspicion (*plural*) at home. 4. Caesar excused these acts (*haec*) that the state might not complain. 5. He feared that Diviciacus would be influenced by the opinion of the common people. 6. The Gauls knew that these things were true.

7. No one felt (*capere*) more regret over this than Diviciacus, because he was influenced by love for his brother (*adjective*) and by friendship for (of) Caesar. 8. But he knew these things were true, and he summoned Dumnorix. 9. Caesar comforted him, since he knew these things had not happened with his consent (*voluntās*).

1. A. 427, 3; B. 232; H. 483, 484; H.-B. 449; W. 151 a.

2. A. 531; B. 282; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 2; W. 225.

LESSON XXI

(CHAPTER 21)

1.⁶¹ Genitive with Adjectives

2. Relative Clause of Purpose

1. *The genitive may be used with adjectives expressing desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, and the like.*

Quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur.

2. *A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is sometimes used to express purpose.*

Quālis esset nātūra montis quī cognōscerent mīsit.

1. Titus Labienus was very familiar with military affairs (*not ablative*). 2. We shall send two legions to ascend (who shall ascend) the mountain. 3. The Gauls were familiar with the nature of the mountain. 4. The scouts were sent ahead to learn the nature of the road. 5. This man was considered very brave (*fortis*) at home. 6. The enemy encamped at the foot of the mountain that our men might not ascend.

7. In the third watch Titus Labienus, with two legions, was sent ahead to ascend the mountain. 8. The ascent of the mountain was easy and Labienus had with him guides who knew the road. 9. Publius Considius was also sent with scouts who were familiar with the nature of the place.

1. A. 349; B. 204; H. 450; H.-B. 354; W. 106.

2. A. 531 2; B. 282 2; H. 590; H.-B. 502, 2; W. 225.

LESSON XXII .

(CHAPTER 22)

1. Use of *ut* with Indicative2. Substantive Use of Possessives (*nostri, sui, etc.*)

1. *Ut, meaning as, or when, is followed by the indicative.*

Ut postea ex captivis comperit.

2. *Possessives are frequently used as nouns.*

Montem a suis teneri.

1. The soldiers, as Caesar had directed, refrained from battle. 2. The mountain was held by our men. 3. The Romans had moved their camp, as the enemy afterward learned. 4. Caesar ordered his men to follow the enemy. 5. The captives were very familiar with the plan of the enemy. 6. We shall send soldiers to seize the mountain.

7. At daybreak the mountain was held by Labienus, and Caesar's forces were not far away, as was afterward discovered. 8. But Considius reported that the mountain was held by the Gauls, and Caesar refrained from battle. 9. Considius had seen our (own) men whom Caesar had sent ahead with Labienus.

1. A. 543; B. 287; H. 602; H.-B. 550, 562, 563; W. cf. p. 60.

2. A. 302 d; B. 236 1; H. 494; H.-B. 250, 2; W. 158.

LESSON XXIII

(CHAPTER 23)

1. Accusative of Limit

2. Genitive with *postrīdie*

1. *Place to which is expressed by the accusative with in or ad. But names of towns and small islands, and domum and rūs omit the preposition.*

Bibracte ire contendit.

2. *The adverbs postrīdiē and prīdiē are often followed by the genitive.*

Postrīdiē eius diēi rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit.

1. Caesar set out for Bibracte with his army. 2. On the day following [this day] runaway slaves of Lucius Aemilius reported this fact to the Helvetians. 3. Envoys of the Aeduans hastened to go to Rome. 4. On the day following, the enemy seized the higher position (places). 5. The Romans turned their course (*iter*), as was reported to the Helvetians. 6. The Gauls attacked our men from the rear line.

7. Bibracte, a large town of the Aeduans, was not more than eighteen miles distant from the camp of the Romans. 8. This fact was reported to Caesar through scouts, and on the day following he turned his course. 9. The Helvetians also hastened to go to Bibracte, in order to cut off our men from grain supplies.

1. A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1 *a*; H. 418; H.-B. 385, *b*; W. 131.

2. A. 359 *b*; B. 201 3 *a*; H. 446 5; H.-B. 380 *c*.

LESSON XXIV

(CHAPTER 24)

1. Adjectives Denoting a Part

2. Construction with *iubeo*

1. The adjectives *summus*, *medius*, *imus*, *primus*, and some others are frequently used to specify a particular part of that which is expressed by the noun modified.

In colle *mediō*; in *summō* iugō.

2. *Iubeō* and *vetō* regularly take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Tōtum montem hominibus complērī iussit.

1. Four legions were drawn up half way up the hill. 2. He ordered the cavalry to withstand the attack of the enemy. 3. The auxiliaries were stationed on the top of the mountain. 4. Caesar had ordered these men to fortify the camp. 5. Caesar set out for Geneva with two legions. 6. On the day following, the Helvetians drove back our cavalry.

7. Caesar fortified the place in which the baggage was, and stationed two legions on the top of the hill. 8. The cavalry had been sent to make an attack upon (*in v. acc.*) the enemy, and the four veteran legions had been drawn up half way up the hill. 9. But the cavalry were driven back by the enemy.

1. A. 293; B. 241 1; H. 497 4; H.-B. 244; W. 160.

2. A. 563 a; B. 331, II; H. 614; H.-B. 587; W. 280.

LESSON XXV

(CHAPTER 25)

1. Dative of Purpose

2. Constructions with *mille*

1. The dative may be used to denote the purpose or end for which a thing is intended or which it serves.

Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō.

2. Mille may be used in the singular either as an adjective or as a noun. The plural form is always a noun and is followed by the partitive genitive.

Hominum milibus circiter XV.

1. The shields of the enemy were a great hindrance to our men. 2. Two thousand soldiers began to retreat. 3. This legion served as a guard (was for a guard) to the baggage. 4. Five thousand Helvetians resisted our men (*dative*). 5. The Gauls, who were on top of the mountain, saw this. 6. Caesar ordered the horses to be removed.

7. The shields of the Gauls were pierced and fastened together by the javelins of our men so that they could not fight to advantage (*satis commodē*), and many threw down their shields. 8. The Helvetians retreated to the mountains, but the Boii and Tulingi, who served as a guard to the rear line of the enemy, made an attack on the Romans and began to surround them.

1. A. 382; B. 191; H. 425 3; H.-B. 360; W. 119.

2. A. 134 d; B. 80 5; H. 168, 1; H.-B. 131 3; W. 48.

LESSON XXVI

(CHAPTER 26)

1. Adversative (Concessive) Clause with *cum***2. Pronominal Adjectives**

1. *Adversative or concessive clauses introduced by cum take the subjunctive.*

Cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.

2. *The following adjectives have the genitive ending -īus and the dative ending -ī in all genders:*

| | | |
|-------|--------|--------|
| alius | ūnus | alter |
| sōlus | tōtus | uter |
| ūllus | nūllus | neuter |

1. Although they piled up (*obicere*) their wagons as a rampart, they could not withstand our attack. 2. They captured the baggage of one legion. 3. Although the Helvetians had arrived in the country of the Lingones, Caesar followed them. 4. The attack of no part of our army could be withstood. 5. Many thousand men were killed in this battle. 6. The enemy left part of their forces as a guard to the baggage.

7. The battle lasted (*impersonal*) from the seventh hour till evening. 8. Many Roman soldiers were wounded by the javelins which the enemy hurled upon them as they came up (coming up), but they gained possession of the enemy's camp. 9. In this place they captured a son and a daughter of Orgetorix. 10. Those who escaped (*superesse*) from the battle set out for the country of the Lingones.

1. A. 549; B. 309; H. 598; H.-B. 526; W. 239.

2. A. 113; B. 66; H. 93; H.-B. 112; W. 32.

LESSON XXVII

(CHAPTER 27)

1. *Cum* Clauses of Description2. Tense Use with *dum*

1. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may be used in clauses introduced by *cum*, describing the situation or circumstances under which an act takes place.

Cum eōs suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūerunt.

2. *Dum*, meaning *while*, is regularly followed by the present indicative.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur.

1. When the Helvetians sent envoys, Caesar demanded hostages. 2. While they were awaiting our coming, six thousand men set out (*ēgredi*) from the camp. 3. They were not punished (visited with punishment) when they had given up their arms. 4. Caesar's army arrived there while the enemy were collecting the arms. 5. Although they set out at night, their flight could not be concealed. 6. Six thousand men of one division (*pāgus*) did not surrender their arms.

7. The envoys who had been sent, met Caesar on the march, and threw themselves at his feet. 8. He ordered them to collect their arms and await his coming. 9. But when he had demanded hostages they were overwhelmed (*perterritus*) with fear that they should be punished, and many fled.

1. A. 546; B. 288, B; H. 600 II; H.-B. 524; W. 240.

2. A. 556; B. 293 I; H. 533 4; H.-B. 559; W. 234 a.

LESSON XXVIII

(CHAPTER 28)

1. The Irregular Verbs *volo, nolo, malo*

2. The Ablative of Description

1. For the forms of *volō* and its compounds, see p. 109.

2. The ablative when modified by an adjective (or a genitive) may be used to describe a person or thing by expressing some quality.

Bōiōs, quod ēgregiā virtūte cognitī erant, ut in finibus suis collocārent concessit.

1. He is unwilling that the Germans shall cross (*present infin.*) the Rhine. 2. The Boii who were of unusual valor, set out with the Helvetians. 3. The leader of the Gauls is willing to give hostages. 4. The country of the Helvetians was of great extent (*lātītūdō*). 5. When the Gauls had brought back the runaway slaves, Caesar treated them as enemies (regarded them in the number of enemies). 6. While the arms were being given up, these men set out for home.

7. The Helvetians, Tulingi, and Latobrigi after surrendering their arms returned to their own country, and rebuilt (*restituere*) the towns which had been burnt. 8. The Allobroges furnished (*facere*) them a supply¹ of grain, as Caesar directed. 9. The Boii, who were of unusual valor, were located in the country of the Aeduans.

1. A. 199; B. 130; H. 295; H.-B. 192; W. 82.

2. A. 415; B. 224; H. 473 2; H.-B. 443; W. 141.

LESSON XXIX

(CHAPTER 29)

1. Numerals

2. Place Constructions with *domus*

1. (*For the list of numerals see p. 86.*)

2. *With the noun domus place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, place from which by the ablative without a preposition, and place where by the locative form domī.*

1. The Helvetians set out from home with their women and children. 2. One hundred and ten thousand returned home, as Caesar commanded. 3. The Romans found muster rolls, written in Greek characters, in the camp of the Gauls. 4. Many old men who were in the camp were not able to bear arms. 5. The Helvetians and Boii were (men) of great bravery. 6. They were willing to return home, as was ordered.

7. The records which the soldiers found in the camp of the Gauls and brought to Caesar were written in Greek characters. 8. From these records Caesar found out (*reperire*) what number of Helvetians, Boii, and Tulingi had set out from home. 9. The aggregate of all who returned home amounted to (was of) one hundred and ten thousand.

i. A. 133; B. 79; H. 163; H.-B. 130; W. 47.

2. A. 427; B. 182 1, b); H. 419, 1, 462, 4, 484, 2; H.-B. 449-451; W. 131, 134 a.

LESSON XXX

(BOOK II, CHAPTER 1)

1. Partitive Genitive

2. Gerundive Construction

1. *The genitive is used to express the whole, of which a part is denoted by the word on which the genitive depends.*

Quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus.

2. *The gerundive in agreement with a noun forms the gerundive construction which is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object.*

Ad condūcendōs hominēs.

1. Part of the Gauls were unwilling to conspire against the Roman people. 2. Caesar had resources for hiring men. 3. Our army will be led against (*ad*) this part of the Germans. 4. The more powerful (men) will have means to seize (resources for seizing) the supreme authority. 5. The Gauls because of their fickleness of mind had desired a revolution. 6. We fear that they will conspire against us.

7. Caesar who was in hither Gaul was informed by rumors that one part of Gaul was conspiring against the Romans, and Labienus also sent letters. 8. Our army had not been led against them, but they feared that we would remain (*versārī*) in Gaul. 9. Also those who had opportunities for seizing royal power feared that they could not do this under our authority.

1. A. 346; B. 201; H. 440, 5; H.-B. 346; W. 101.

2. A. 503; B. 339; H. 623; H.-B. 609, 610; W. 285 II.

LESSON XXXI

(CHAPTER 2)

1. The Subjunctive by Attraction

2. Prepositions Governing the Accusative or Ablative

1. Sometimes a verb which would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive, because its clause depends on a subjunctive or infinitive.

Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

2. The prepositions *in* and *sub* take the accusative after verbs expressing motion, and the ablative after verbs expressing rest or mere existence.

1. Caesar sent the lieutenant to bring the legion which had been levied. 2. This army will be led into Gaul. 3. The Senones set out in order that they might inform Caesar as soon as (*cum primum*) there was a supply of grain. 4. This camp was in lower (*citerior*) Gaul. 5. Part of the enemy had reached (arrived at) the country of the Gauls. 6. They have set out to collect an army (*gerundive constr. w. ad.*).

7. Two legions had been levied in lower Gaul, and Quintus Pedius had been sent with these legions into upper Gaul. 8. At this time Caesar was informed that the Belgians were collecting an army, and he did not hesitate to move his camp (*quīn w. subj.*) and set out toward the enemy. 9. He reached their country at the beginning of summer.

1. A. 593; B. 324; H. 652; H.-B. 539; W. 274.

2. A. 220, c; B. 143; H. 420, 3; H.-B. 457; W 154.

LESSON XXXII

(CHAPTER 3)

1. Contracted Perfects

2. Comparison of Adverbs

1. *In the perfect system of verbs which form their perfects in -vī, the v is sometimes lost and the vowels thus brought together contracted.*

2. *(For the comparison of adverbs see page p. 85.)*

1. The Remi said the other (*reliqui*) Belgians had conspired against the Romans. 2. The legion will arrive there sooner than any one anticipates (sooner than the expectation of all). 3. They did his commands very quickly (*superlative*). 4. The Remi had not conspired with the other Gauls. 5. They came that they might aid the Suessiones who were their kinsmen. 6. The legions which had been levied in lower Gaul came into the country of the Belgians.

7. The envoys who were sent by the Remi said that the Remi had not conspired against Caesar. 8. But the Suessiones, their kinsmen, who enjoyed (*ūtī*) the same laws, were in arms and had aided the other Belgians with grain. 9. The Germans were also ready to aid them.

1. A. 181; B. 116, 1; H. 238; H.-B. 163; W. 72.

2. A. 218; B. 76 2; H. 311; H.-B. 128 129; W. 40 b, c.

LESSON XXXIII

(CHAPTER 4)

1. The Ablative of Source

2. Passive Use of Compounds of *trans*

1. *The ablative may be used with participles expressing birth or parentage. To denote more remote origin, the preposition is used.*

Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs.

2. *When compounds of trāns governing two accusatives are used in the passive voice, the object of the verbal idea becomes the subject and the object of the preposition is retained in the accusative.*

Plērōsque Belgas Rhēnum trāductōs ibi cōnsēdisse.

1. Most of the Belgians have sprung from the Germans. 2. The army had been led across the Rhine. 3. These men have descended from the Cimbri. 4. Two legions will be led across the river. 5. The Nervii are farthest distant. 6. The Cimbri and Teutons had overrun all Gaul.

7. The Belgians, who had sprung from the Germans, had been led across the Rhine in early times, and the Gauls, who inhabited these regions, had been driven out. 8. From the memory of these events (*rēs*) the Belgians assumed great authority in military affairs.

1. A. 403; B. 215; H. 467; H.-B. 413; W. 135.

2. A. 395, note 2; B. 179, 3; H. 413; H.-B. 386, a; W. 127 a.

LESSON XXXIV

(CHAPTER 5)

1. Construction with *interest* and *refert***2. Genitive of Measure**

1. With the impersonal verbs *interest* and *refert* the genitive of nouns is used to refer to the person concerned. The ablative singular feminine form of the possessive pronoun is used instead of the genitive of personal pronouns in this construction.

Rei publicae communisque salutis intersit.

2. The descriptive genitive is sometimes used to express measure.

Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallō mūnīre iubet.

1. It is of importance to the Remi to give hostages. 2. They fortified the camp with a rampart twelve feet in height. 3. It is of importance to Caesar to send scouts. 4. The camp will be fortified with a rampart eight feet high. 5. Six cohorts were led across the river by the lieutenant. 6. The Aeduians had not sprung from the Germans.

7. After the forces of the Belgians had been collected (*perfect tense*) in one place Caesar led his army across the river Aisne and fortified his camp. 8. The Aedui had already (*iam*) led their troops into the country of the Bellovaei and were laying waste their lands. 9. This was done because it was of importance that the forces of the enemy should be kept apart.

1. A. 355; B. 211; H. 449; H.-B. 345; W. 110.

2. A. 345 b; B. 203 2; H. 440 3; H.-B. 355; W. 100.

LESSON XXXV

(CHAPTER 6)

1. Passive Forms of *coepti*

2. The Ablative Used with Preposition in Place of the Partitive Genitive

1. *The passive forms of the verb coepī are used by Caesar whenever the infinitive depending upon them is passive.*

Lapidēs iaci coepti sunt.

2. *The ablative with dē or ex is sometimes used in place of the partitive genitive, regularly so with cardinal numerals and quīdam.*

Ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī vēnerant.

1. Javelins began to be thrown by the Belgians. 2. Iccius had been one of the envoys. 3. Stones had begun to be thrown by the defenders. 4. One of the Remi sent a messenger to Caesar. 5. This wall was twenty feet in height. 6. It is of importance to Iccius that aid be sent (*infinitive*).

7. The enemy are attacking a town of the Remi which is eight miles distant from our camp. 8. They are throwing stones and javelins at the wall, and they have cleared (*nūdārē*) it of defenders. 9. Iccius, who is in command of the town, will send a messenger to Caesar when night has put (*fut. perf.*) an end to the attack.

1. A. 205 a; B. 133 1; H. 299 1; H.-B. 199 2; W. 86 a.

2. A. 346 c; B. 201 1 a; H. 444; H.-B. 346 e; W. 101 b.

LESSON XXXVI

(CHAPTER 7)

1. Participles of Deponent Verbs

2. Position of Monosyllabic Prepositions

1. *Deponent verbs have the participles of both voices. The perfect participle is sometimes active, sometimes passive.*

2. *A monosyllabic preposition governing an object modified by an adjective is frequently placed between the adjective and the noun.*

eādem dē causā.

1. The enemy came there with great hope of capturing the town. 2. After laying waste (having laid waste) the lands of the Belgians, Caesar hastened toward this town. 3. For the same reason, messengers came from Iccius. 4. Using (*perf. part.*) the Gauls as guides, we shall send aid. 5. Aid had begun to be sent. 6. One of these guides was a Gaul.

7. The Cretan archers were sent thither by Caesar about midnight as aid to the townsmen. 8. But the enemy had already laid waste the lands of the Remi and were burning their towns and villages. 9. Caesar had pitched his camp eight miles from this place, and the enemy hastened toward him.

1. A. 190 a; B. 112 a; H. 222 1; H.-B. 160; W. 73.

2. A. 599 d 2; B. 350 7 b; H. 671 5; H.-B. 627 4.

LESSON XXXVII

(CHAPTER 8)

1. Participle Translated by Clause

2. Review of Cases with Prepositions

1. *A Latin participle is often best expressed in English by a clause.*

Cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxit.

2. (*For summary of case use with prepositions see p. 112.*)

1. Caesar led out the legions and stationed them in line of battle. 2. This place before the camp was advantageous for forming a line of battle. 3. The legion which had been led out of camp was drawn up in line of battle. 4. The enemy made an attack on those who had been left in camp. 5. This camp had been pitched in a suitable place. 6. The cavalry having set out from the camp were surrounded by the enemy.

7. At first Caesar refrained from battle on account of the great numbers of the enemy. 8. But our men were not inferior in courage, and so he stationed six legions before the camp. 9. He left in camp the two legions which had been levied last, and he placed artillery so that his men might not be surrounded by the enemy.

1. A. 496 n. 2; B. 337; H. 639; H.-B. 604 1; W. 283.

2. A. 220 a, b, c; B. 141-143; H. 420, 490; H.-B. 455-457; W. 153-155.

LESSON XXXVIII

(CHAPTER 9)

1. Impersonal Use of Intransitive Verbs

2. Use of *et*, *-que*, and *atque*

1. Many intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice.

Inter duās aciēs contendēbātur.

2. Of the three conjunctions, *et*, *-que*, and *atque*, *et* merely connects, *-que* indicates a closer relation, and *atque* emphasizes what follows.

1. A battle was going on (impersonal verb) in this place. 2. Caesar led back to camp the legion and also the cavalry. 3. A battle is going on behind the camp of the Romans. 4. The enemy tried to storm the redoubt and the bridge. 5. Our men attacked the enemy, while they were impeded (participle). 6. The cavalry were between the marsh and the river.

7. The enemy did not try to cross this marsh because our men were in arms. 8. They hastened toward the redoubt and the bridge in order that they might lead part of their forces across there. 9. But Quintus Titurius, who was in command of the redoubt, prevented them.

1. A. 208 *d*; B. 138, IV; II. 518 1; II.-B. 290 *a* 1); W. 87 *d*.

2. A. 324 *a*, *b*; B. 341 1 *a*), *b*), *c*); H. 657 1; H.-B. 307, 1, 2.

LESSON XXXIX

(CHAPTER 10)

1. Genitive of Quality or Description**2. Passive Use of Verbs which Govern the Dative**

1. *The genitive when modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing by expressing some quality.*

Levis armātūrae Numidās.

2. *Verbs which govern the dative are used in the passive only impersonally; the dative is retained.*

Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat.

1. The light armed soldiers killed a great number of the enemy. 2. The enemy cannot be persuaded. 3. The Bellovaci were men of great courage. 4. The archers will not be persuaded to cross (*not infinitive*). 5. A fierce fight took place in the river. 6. Diviciacus and the Aeduans were approaching the country of the Bellovaci.

7. The cavalry and light armed Numidians were led across the river by Caesar, and a fierce fight took place. 8. A large number of the enemy were killed and the others were driven back. 9. Our men returned to camp and the Belgians who had gathered from all sides returned home.

1. A. 345; B. 203; H. 440 3; H.-B. 355; W. 100.

2. A. 372; B. 187, II, b; H. 426 3; H.-B. 364 2; W. 115 d.

LESSON • XL

(CHAPTER 11)

1. Substantive Clause of Result

2. Accusative of Extent of Space

1. A substantive clause of result is introduced by *ut* or **ut** *nōn* and takes its verb in the subjunctive. Such clauses may be **used** after words denoting accomplishment or as the subject of impersonal verbs, or with such phrases as *mōs est*, *vērūm est*, and the like.

Fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

2. The accusative is used to express extent in space.

Multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī.

1. The departure of the enemy made Caesar fear ambush (made that Caesar feared). 2. The scouts followed for three miles. 3. The confusion made the enemy seem like fugitives (*pres. participle*). 4. We shall follow for many miles. 5. The light armed Numidians attacked the cavalry. 6. The lieutenant could not be persuaded to delay (it could not be persuaded to the lieutenant, etc.).

7. When the enemy set out from camp, Caesar sent ahead the scouts to see for what reason they were leaving (*discēdere*), but he kept the army in the camp. 8. At daybreak the lieutenants were ordered to follow with three legions and the cavalry. 9. The enemy sought safety in flight (placed their protection in flight) but a large number of them were killed.

1. A. 568; B. 297; H. 571; H.-B. 521, 3; W. 229.

2. A. 425; B. 181. H. 417; H.-B. 387; W. 130.

LESSON XLI

(CHAPTER 12)

1. Anticipatory Subjunctive

2. Dative with Adjectives

1. The anticipatory subjunctive represents an act as looked forward to. Its use is especially common in clauses with *antequam*, *priusquam*, *dum*, *donec*, and *quoad*.

Priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre recipere.

2. The dative is used with many adjectives expressing attitude, similarity, equality, fitness, nearness, and the like.

Proximī Rēmīs erant.

1. Caesar pushed on to this town before the enemy could attack it. 2. The Remi are nearest the country of the Suessiones. 3. The Romans fortified their camp before the enemy assembled (*convenīre*). 4. This camp is very near (*superl.*) the town. 5. The soldiers made this town seem like a camp (made that this town seemed, etc.). 6. Caesar led the army ten miles on that day.

7. Before Caesar could capture Noviodunum, the enemy had arrived there with all their forces. 8. The Romans fortified their camp and prepared what was necessary for an assault. 9. When the rampart had been constructed and the towers set up, envoys were sent by the Gauls, who were frightened (*permovēre*) by the speed of the Romans.

1. A. 550-553; B. 292, 293 III 2; H. 603 II, 605; H.-B. 506; W. 235 *d*, 235 *b*.

2. A. 384; B. 192; II. 434; H.-B. 362 *ft.* note 3; W. 122.

LESSON XLII

(CHAPTER 13)

1. The Ablative of Accordance

2. Declension of Numerals

1. *The ablative may be used to express that in accordance with which something is or is done.*

Suō mōræ pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

2. (*For declension of numerals see p. 87.*)

1. According to their custom the Gauls sent hostages. 2. Two states begged for peace. 3. According to their custom the women and children held out their hands. 4. Caesar, with two legions, was three miles distant (*abesse*). 5. Caesar led his army into the country of the Bellovaci before the enemy assembled (*sē cōferre*) in Bratuspantium. 6. This camp was very near the wall of the enemy's town.

7. The Suessiones sent as hostages the two sons of Galba, and surrendered all their arms. 8. The Roman army was then (*deinde*) led into the country of the Bellovaci who had collected (*sē cōferre*) in Bratuspantium. 9. The old men of this town held out their hands to Caesar and made known by cries that they gave themselves up (*venire*) to his power.

1. A. 418 a; B. 220 3; H. 475 3; H.-B. 414; W. 142 a.

2. A. 134; B. 80; H. 166; H.-B. 131; W. 49.

LESSON XLIII

(CHAPTER 14)

1. Antecedent of Relative Pronoun Omitted
2. Simple Conditional Sentences, Future Time (Future More Vivid)

1. *The antecedent of the relative is sometimes omitted in Latin when the English idiom requires that it be expressed in translation.*

Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent in Britanniam prōfūgissee.

2. *Non-committal conditional sentences (sometimes called simple or fact conditions) referring to future time take their verbs in the future or future perfect indicative. In indirect discourse the verb of the conclusion becomes a future infinitive and that of the condition becomes subjunctive, the tense depending on the general rules for tense use and sequence.*

Quod sī fēcerit Aeduōrum auctōritātem amplificātūrum (esse).

1. Those who have been reduced to slavery are enduring all sorts of outrages (all outrages). 2. If Caesar dismisses the forces of the Aeduans, Diviciacus will return to him. 3. Those who brought disaster upon the state have fled to Britain. 4. If Caesar reduces the Aeduans to slavery, the Gauls will make war on the Roman people. 5. In accordance with his custom Caesar will show (use) compassion toward the Belgians. 6. These two states have made war on the Roman people.

7. The Bellovaci, influenced by their leaders, had made war on the Roman people. 8. But Diviciacus spoke on their behalf, and Caesar showed compassion toward them. 9. He did this in order that he might increase the influence of Diviciacus and the Aeduans to whom the Bellovaci had been friendly (in whose friendship the Bellovaci had been).

1. A. 307 c; B. 251 1; H. 399 4; H.-B. 284 1.

2. A. 516 a; B. 302, H. 574, 2; H.-B. 579 a; W. 256.

LESSON XLIV

(CHAPTER 15)

1. Causal Clauses with *quod*

1. *Causal clauses introduced by quod take the indicative to express a reason given on the authority of the writer or speaker, and the subjunctive to express a quoted reason.*

Quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit.

1. Caesar spared (*cōservāre*) the Belgians because they surrendered their arms. 2. The Belgians surpassed in influence and in courage. 3. The Nervii did not allow wine to be imported because they thought the courage was lessened by it. 4. Caesar said that this state was of great influence among the Gauls. 5. Those who have given themselves up to the Roman people, have laid aside their ancestral valor. 6. If the enemy surrender (*future tense*) without delay we will receive them under our protection.

7. Because the Bellovaci were of great influence among the Belgians, Caesar spared them, but demanded a large number of hostages. 8. The Nervii, who were men of great courage, taunted the Bellovaci and the Ambiani who had surrendered their arms, and said they would not send hostages.

1. A. 540; B. 286, 1; H. 588; H.-B. 535 2 a, 554, 555; W. 244.

LESSON XLV

(CHAPTER 16)

1. Construction with *plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, etc.

2. Substantive Volitive Clauses

1. *The comparatives plūs, minus, amplius, and longius, are often followed by the same construction which would be employed with plūs quam, minus quam, etc.*

Inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabinū flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum X abesse.

2. *A clause introduced by ut or nē with its verb in the subjunctive, is sometimes used as subject or object of a verb or equivalent expression denoting an action of the will.*

His utrīque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur.

1. The army is more than five miles distant from the town. 2. The Nervii persuaded their neighbors to make (that they should make) this march. 3. This river is not more than two miles from the country of the Viromandui. 4. The lieutenant persuaded the army to encamp in this place. 5. We are waiting in this place because envoys have been sent. 6. When the enemy discovered this, they collected their women in this town.

7. The Nervii, who had encamped across this river, were awaiting the coming of the Romans, together with the Viromandui whom they had persuaded to make this journey with them. 8. When Caesar learned this he pitched (*pōnere*) his camp not more than ten miles from that place.

1. A. 407 c; B. 217 3; H. 471 4; H.-B. 416 d; W. 139 b.

2. A. 563; B. 295; H. 565; H.-B. 502, 3; W. 238.

LESSON XLVI

(CHAPTER 17)

1. Substantive Clauses Introduced by *quod*2. Purpose Clauses with *quo*

1. A clause introduced by *quod*, with its verb in the indicative, is sometimes used as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive of a neuter pronoun.

Adiuvābat cōsilium eōrum *quod* Nervii effēcerant ut hae saepēs mūnimentum praeberent.

2. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are introduced by *quō* instead of *ut*.

Quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedirent.

1. It aided the plan of the Nervii, that the march of our army was hindered. 2. The enemy sent scouts that they might the more easily observe the order (*cōnsuētūdō*) of our march. 3. It will aid our plans that this place is suitable for a camp. 4. The enemy had come to this place by night that they might the more easily attack our legions. 5. The cavalry of the enemy were more than five miles away. 6. They persuaded the other Gauls to hinder (that they should hinder) our march.

7. The centurions and scouts who had been sent ahead had chosen a suitable place for a camp. 8. But between this camp and our army were hedges, by which our march was hindered. 9. Some of the Gauls, who were marching with Caesar, reported (*dēferre*) this fact (*rēs*) to the Belgians.

1. A. 572 note; B. 299 1; H. 588 3; H.-B. 552; W. 248.

2. A. 531 *a*; B. 282 1 *a*; H. 568 7; H.-B. 502 2 *b*; W. 225 2.

LESSON XLVII

(CHAPTER 18)

1. Formation of Adverbs

2. Formation of Perfect Stem

1. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by putting *-ē* in place of the genitive ending, and from adjectives of the third declension by replacing the genitive ending by *-iter* or *-ter*. Other endings, as *ō*, *tim*, *tus*, are sometimes used.

2. The different types of perfect stems may be classified as follows:

1. Perfects ending in *-vī*.
2. Perfects ending in *-uī*.
3. Perfects ending in *-sī* (*cs* and *gs* give *x*).
4. Reduplicated stems, *+ī*.
5. Stems with lengthened vowel, *+ī*.
6. Stems unchanged, *+ī*.

1. This place sloped uniformly toward our camp. 2. The enemy had pitched their camp on the top of the hill. 3. We saw a few detachments of cavalry along the river. 4. A large number of the enemy (*plural*) were kept in concealment within these woods. 5. It aided the enemy that this place was covered with woods. 6. The Gauls chose this place that they might the more easily attack (*adorīrī*) the legions.

7. The place which had been chosen for a camp was across (*trāns*) the river Sambre which has been mentioned above. 8. The enemy could not be seen (*cōnspicere*) because the hill which was opposite our men was covered with woods on the upper part.

1. A. 214; B. 76, 77; H. 306 ff.; H.-B. 126, 129; W. 46 a.

2. A. 177; B. 118; H. 248 ff.; H.-B. 173.

LESSON XLVIII

(CHAPTER 19)

1. Ablative of Manner without *cum*

2. Adjectives with Adverbial Force

1. *Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with cum. But cum may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective.*

Incrēdibilī celeritātē dēcucurrērunt

2. *Adjectives agreeing with the subject are often used in Latin when the English idiom would require adverbs.*

Interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant castra mūnīre coepērunt.

1. The enemy retreated to the forest with incredible speed. 2. The soldiers, who had come first, were fortifying the camp. 3. The Belgians hastened toward our camp with great courage. 4. The enemy made an attack on the legion which first came into camp. 5. Our men easily routed and defeated this part of the enemy. 6. In accordance with his custom Caesar will place the baggage behind the legions.

7. Caesar had sent the cavalry ahead because he was approaching the enemy, and the baggage of the entire army had been placed behind the six legions [which were] ready for action. 8. He ordered the two remaining legions to bring up (*claudere*) the rear and to serve as a guard to the baggage.

1. A. 413 a; B. 222 1; H. 474; H.-B. 420; W. 142.

2. A. 290; B. 239; H. 497; H.-B. 245; W. 159.

LESSON XLIX

(CHAPTER 20)

1. Second Periphrastic Conjugation

2. Dative of Agent

1. *The gerundive is used with forms of sum to make the second periphrastic conjugation, expressing obligation or necessity.*

Vexillum prōpōnendum (erat).

2. *With the second periphrastic conjugation, agency is regularly expressed by the dative.*

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.

1. This camp ought to be fortified by the Romans. 2. The soldiers ought to wait for Caesar's command (*use passive form*). 3. This soldier ought to have been recalled by the lieutenant. 4. When the signal had been given, the soldiers were recalled. 5. The knowledge and experience of the soldiers were helpful to the lieutenant. 6. The soldiers who were summoned came with great speed.

7. The standard was advanced and the signal was given with the trumpet in order to recall the soldiers who had gone a little too far. 8. The battle line had to be formed by the lieutenants, because they could not wait for Caesar's command, on account of the nearness and speed of the enemy.

1. A. 194 b; B. 337 7, b); H. 237; H.-B. 162; W. 285 a.

2. A. 374; B. 189; H. 431; H.-B. 373; W. 118.

LESSON L

(CHAPTERS 21 AND 22)

1. Genitive of Gerund with *causa*

2. Indefinite Pronouns

1. *The gerund or gerundive construction followed by the ablative causā is often used to express purpose.*

Cohortandī causā profectus.

2. (*For the indefinite pronouns see p. 91.*)

1. This legion set out for the purpose of fighting. 2. When the signal had been given, each man threw his javelin. 3. These legions were drawn up for the purpose of resisting. 4. Caesar saw that each man was prepared to fight (for fighting). 5. The army ought to be drawn up by Caesar. 6. The soldiers ought to put on their helmets. 7. We have before shown that these hedges hindered the view.

8. The soldiers remembered (retained the memory of) their old-time valor, and bravely resisted the enemy. 9. They had not put on their helmets or removed the covers from their shields because time was lacking. 10. The view was hindered by dense hedges, and reserves had not been stationed, but the enemy's attack was withstood bravely.

1. A. 504 b; B. 338 1 c); H. 626; H.-B. 612 I; W. 138 a.

2. A. 149, 151; B. 252; H. 185 ff.; H.-B. 142; W. 62.

LESSON LI

(CHAPTER 23)

1. Use of Perfect and Imperfect Tenses in the Indicative

1. The imperfect tense represents an action as going on in past time. It may be used to express repeated action, habitual action, or, occasionally, attempted action.

The perfect has two uses; it may be equivalent to the English present perfect with the auxiliary *have* or *has*, or it may represent an act as belonging to the past, without reference to its progress or state of completion.

1. The cohorts were driving the Atrebates from the higher position. 2. This legion crossed the river and advanced into an unfavorable position. 3. The soldiers of that cohort were brave men. 4. The Viromandui who had crossed the river were resisting this legion (*dative*). 5. The enemy hastened to this place for the purpose of crossing (*causā v. gerund.*). 6. Each part of the enemy hastened toward this place.

7. The Atrebates, exhausted by wounds, were driven from their higher position into the river, and a large part of them were killed. 8. The legions which had crossed the river advanced into an unfavorable position, and put the enemy to flight. 9. But meanwhile (*interim*) the Nervii had surrounded the camp, which was unprotected.

1. A. 470, 473; B. 260, 262; H. 534, 537; H.-B. 468 2, 4; W. 191, 193.

LESSON. LII

(CHAPTER 24)

1. Tenses of the Infinitive

2. Elliptical Use of *alius*

1. *The tenses of the infinitive represent an act as present, past, or future, with reference to the verb on which the infinitive depends*

2. *The Latin frequently employs a clause in which the adjective *alius* is twice used, the second occurrence being in a different construction from the first, where the English idiom requires two parallel clauses or phrases.*

Alii aliam in partem ferēbantur.

1. Those who were on top of the hill saw that the enemy had crossed the river. 2. The camp followers took to flight, one in one direction, another in another. 3. The light armed infantry who were routed at the first attack of the enemy retreated to camp. 4. The legions were resisting the enemy, some in one part, others in another. 5. The Treveri, whose reputation for courage was extraordinary, had sent cavalry to Caesar. 6. The Nervii had gained possession of the Roman camp. 7. When our men had crossed the river, the camp followers set out for the purpose of plundering.

8. The enemy at their first attack routed the cavalry and light-armed infantry who were with them. 9. At the same time those who were coming with the baggage fled panic-stricken, some in one direction, others in another. 10. When the Treveri saw this, they set out for home.

1. A. 486; B. 270, H. 617; H.-B. 472; W. 205.

2. A. 315 c; B. 253 2; H. 516 1; H.-B. 279 3.

LESSON LIII

(CHAPTER 25)

1. Relative Clause of Characteristic

2. Dative of Separation

1. A descriptive relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is frequently used to characterize an antecedent otherwise indefinite or incomplete. This use is regular after negative antecedents.

Neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti posset.

2. The dative is sometimes used with words expressing the idea of taking away.

Scūtō militi detractō.

1. There was no cohort which withdrew from the battle. 2. Caesar snatched a shield from this soldier. 3. There is no legion which can be sent up. 4. The soldier snatched the sword from the centurion. 5. Since the soldiers were crowded together, they could not use their swords. 6. By his coming hope was aroused in the soldiers and courage renewed. 7. The soldiers were withdrawing, some from one legion, others from another.

8. Caesar set out to the fourth cohort of the twelfth legion when he saw that all the centurions and the standard bearer of this cohort were killed. 9. His coming inspired hope in the soldiers, and the enemy were checked a little. 10. But some were withdrawing from the battle and avoiding the weapons.

1. A. 535; B. 283; H. 591 1; H.-B. 521 1; W. 230.

2. A. 381; B. 188 2 d; H. 427; H.-B. 371; W. 116.

LESSON LIV

(CHAPTER 26)

1. Construction with Verbs of Hindering

2. Dative of Reference

1. Verbs of hindering usually take the subjunctive with *quōminus*, *nē*, or *quīn*. *Quīn* is only used when a negative is expressed or implied.

2. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person (or thing) with reference to whom a statement is true or to whom it refers as a whole.

1. The tribunes could not hinder (*dēterrēre*) the legion from being surrounded (*quīn w. subj.*). 2. These two legions will serve as a guard to the baggage. 3. The enemy hindered the seventh legion from sending aid (*nē w. subj.*). 4. We shall send these cohorts as aid to the commander. 5. There are no soldiers who fear these enemies. 6. The commander snatched the weapon (*tēlum*) from the soldier.

7. The seventh legion, which was hard pressed, was resisting the enemy and fighting bravely, but the soldiers were afraid that the enemy would surround them from the rear (*āversus*). 8. Titus Labienus at this time had gained possession of the enemy's camp, and he saw in how great difficulty the soldiers were involved (*versārī*).

1. A. 558, *b*, note; B. 295, 3, H. 566, 568, 595 2; H.-B. 502, 3 *b*); W. 228 *c*.

2. A. 377; B. 188 1; H. 425 4, note; H. B. 366; W. 120.

LESSON LV

(CHAPTER 27)

1. Ablative of Material

2. Present Infinitive with *debuī*

1. *The ablative with ex or dē is sometimes used to express the material from which something is made.*

2. *The present infinitive is used with dēbuī although the English idiom suggests the perfect infinitive in translation.*

1. These javelins were made of wood (*rōbur*). 2. The Roman soldiers ought to have crossed this river. 3. Courage often makes difficulties easy (*Translate: makes easy things from very difficult things*). 4. The cavalry ought to have renewed the battle. 5. We cannot hinder the enemy from crossing. 6. Caesar will send aid for the soldiers who have crossed the river.

7. The coming of this legion made so great a change that those who had been overcome by wounds renewed the battle. 8. The enemy, however, stood upon the fallen and hurled javelins as from a mound. 9. They had not dared advance into an unfavorable position without good reason (*nēquīquam*).

1. A. 403, 2; H. 467; H.-B. 406 4; W. 136.

2. A. 486 a. B. 270 2; H. 618 2; W. 205 a.

LESSON LVI

(CHAPTER 28)

1. Dative of Possessor

2. The Superlative with *quam*

1. *The dative is often used with forms of the verb sum to denote the possessor.*

2. *The superlative with quam is often used to express the highest possible degree of the quality referred to.*

1. The Nervii had many towns. 2. The Belgians sent as large a number of hostages as possible. 3. This state has sixty thousand men who can bear arms. 4. Caesar protected the suppliants as carefully as possible. 5. By this battle the nation of the Nervii was almost exterminated (reduced to extinction). 6. Caesar ought to have spared those who surrendered.

7. Hostages were sent to Caesar by the old men of the Nervii who had been placed in the swamps and marshes, together with the women and children. 8. They thought there was no hindrance in the way of the victors (for the victors) and they wished to give themselves up to Caesar. 9. They were ordered to occupy their own towns and territories.

1. A. 373; B. 190; H. 430; H.-B. 374; W. 117.

2. A. 291 c; B. 240 3; H. 159 2; H.-B. 241 4; W. 161 a.

LESSON LVII

(CHAPTER 29)

1. Review of Possessive Pronouns

2. Agreement with Words of Different Gender

1. (*For possessive pronouns, see p. 89.*)

2. *With nouns of different gender, an attributive adjective or participle generally agrees with the nearest of the two nouns. A predicate adjective or participle is usually put in the masculine if the nouns denote persons and in the neuter if they denote inanimate objects. If one noun refers to a person and the other to a thing the adjective is sometimes masculine, sometimes neuter, and sometimes agrees with the nearest noun.*

1. We shall abandon this town and return home with all our forces. 2. Stones and beams had been placed on the wall by the Gauls. 3. The soldiers will not be able to defend your province. 4. The women and children had been left in this town. 5. The Aduatuci said that they were descendants of (sprung from) the Teutons and Cimbri. 6. This battle was announced to the Aduatuci, who were coming to aid the Nervii (as aid to the Nervii).

7. The Aduatuci, who were descendants of the Cimbri and Teutons had collected all their property in one town which was especially well fortified. 8. This town had high cliffs on all sides and was defended by a double wall on which stones of great weight had been placed.

1. A. 145; B. 86; H. 176; H.-B. 136; W. 53.

2. A. 287; B. 235 2 b) y; H. 395 2; H.-B. 323, 2; W. 157 2.

LESSON LVIII

(CHAPTER 30)

1. The Supine

2. Construction with *oportet*

1. The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. The supine in -ū is used as an ablative of specification after a few adjectives.

2. The verb *oportet* may take as subject a clause with the subjunctive, with or without *ut*, or an infinitive.

1. The Gauls thought that this was best [to do].
 2. Our small stature ought not to be a source of contempt to the Gauls. 3. The envoys came to ask (*supine of petere*) aid. 4. A tower ought to be constructed by the Romans. 5. Our men fought with the Aduatuci in slight skirmishes. 6. The Gauls saw that the Romans were constructing a mound and setting up a tower.

7. When Caesar saw that the enemy were making sorties from the town and fighting (*contendere*) with our men, he surrounded (*circummūnīre*) the town with a rampart and numerous redoubts. 8. But the enemy jeered and taunted our men because they were of so small stature.

1. A. 509, 510; B. 340; H. 633, 635; H.-B. 618, 619.; W. 295, 396.

2. A. 565, n. 3; B. 295 6, 8, 330; H. 302 1; H.-B. 513, 5, 585; W. 278

LESSON LIX

(CHAPTER 31)

1. Superlative with *quisque*

2. Commands in Indirect Discourse

1. *Quisque with a superlative adjective is frequently used when the English idiom requires "all" with a positive, e.g., Quisque fortissimus vir, "all brave men."*

2. *Imperatives of direct discourse become subjunctives in indirect. Subjunctives expressing command or exhortation in direct discourse are retained as subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

1. All brave men will defend themselves. 2. The envoys asked for one thing: (namely) that Caesar would spare (*cōnservāre*) the Aduatuci. 3. All good men have given themselves up to the power of the Romans. 4. The Gauls will ask for one thing: (namely) that the Romans will not deprive them of their arms. 5. These men ought (*oportēre*) not to be killed by their enemies. 6. We have always thought this was the best thing to do (best to be done).

7. Envoys were sent to Caesar by the Gauls, who were frightened when the tower was moved. 8. They had not thought the Romans could move forward devices of so great height. 9. The envoys begged for one thing: that he would not allow (*patī*) them to be killed by their enemies who had always envied their valor.

1. A. 313 b; B. 252 5 c); H. 515 2; H.-B. 278 2, b).

2. A. 588; B. 316; H. 642 4; H.-B. 538; W. 267.

LESSON LX

(CHAPTER 32)

1. Defective Verbs

2. Methods of Expressing Purpose

1. (*For list of defective verbs see p. 110.*)

2. *The following ways of expressing purpose are found in Caesar.*

1. *A clause introduced by ut or nē with its verb in the subjunctive.*
2. *A clause introduced by a relative pronoun with its verb in the subjunctive.*
3. *The gerund (or gerundive construction) used as the object of the preposition ad.*
4. *The genitive of gerund (or gerundive construction) with causā.*
5. *The supine in um (after verbs of motion).*

1. The Gauls began to throw their weapons from the wall. 2. They surrendered their arms that Caesar might spare them. 3. Caesar began to reply to these things. 4. They concealed these weapons for the purpose of inflicting injury on the Romans. 5. Caesar spared all the brave men. 6. The piles of arms which were thrown from the wall reached to (equaled) the top of the rampart.

7. Caesar spared the Aduatuci according to his custom, because the weapons were surrendered before the battering ram had touched (*subjunctive*) the wall. 8. He also commanded the neighboring peoples not to make war upon them. 9. But they kept part of their arms and concealed them in the town.

1. A. 205, 206; B. 133-137; H. 299-301; H.-B. 198-200; W. 86.

2. A. 533; B. 282, 338 1 c), 3, 339 6, 340 1; H. 634; H.-B. 502 2, 612 I, III, 618.

LESSON LXI

(CHAPTER 33)

1. Conditional Sentences, Future Less Vivid

1. *Future less vivid conditional sentences, or conditional sentences of the second type as they are sometimes called, take the present (occasionally the perfect) subjunctive in both clauses.*

1. If the soldiers should come out of the town, the townspeople would not suffer (*accipere*) injury. 2. If we should withdraw the guards they would close the gates. 3. The enemy concealed these weapons that they might make a sortie. 4. If these men should be killed the rest would be driven back into the town. 5. On the next day Caesar ordered the gates to be broken down. 6. The enemy fought bravely that they might defend the town (*Translate in two ways*).

7. Toward evening, when the soldiers had come out of the town, the gates were closed, but Caesar did not withdraw the guards (*praesidia*) for he feared that the enemy would make a sortie. 8. The enemy had made shields from bark and woven osiers, in order that they might make an attack on our men.

LESSON LXII

(CHAPTER 35)

1. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact

1. *Conditional sentences contrary to fact (conditional sentences of the third type) take the imperfect subjunctive to express present time and the pluperfect subjunctive to express past time.*

1. If the barbarians had been conquered (*superāre*) these nations would have sent envoys. 2. If our army were in Italy the enemy would be waging war. 3. If the hostages had been given Caesar would have set out for Italy. 4. If hostages should be given Caesar would set out for Italy. 5. These nations promised that they would obey (do) our commands. 6. Caesar will lead the legions into winter quarters in these places (*accusative*) where war has been waged.

7. The nations which live across the Rhine will send envoys to Caesar and will obey his commands because the reputation of this war has reached (been borne to) them. 8. The legions will be led into winter quarters among the tribes (states) near these places where war has been waged and Caesar will set out for Italy.

1. A. 517; B. 304; H. 579; H.-B. 581; W. 254.

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION PAPERS

PRINCETON, 1908

1. While Caesar was staying in this place for the sake of supplies, he learned that the Morini would do what he had ordered.

2. He commanded the soldiers to throw away their spears so as to be able to use their swords more easily.

3. Crassus feared that the auxiliaries, in whom he did not have much confidence, would desert him.

4. But if Catiline had remained in the city to this day, we should have had to fight with him and should never have freed the state from danger.

PRINCETON, JUNE 1909

1. On seeing the enemy, he ordered his men to close the gates (*Express the phrase "on seeing the enemy" in three ways.*)

2. Cn. Pompeius is the only man who has surpassed in valor the glory of our ancestors.

3. While this was going on, a message was brought to Caesar that the Germans had crossed the Rhine and were marching through the territory of the Haedui. Fearing that he would not be able to resist them if he waited longer for supplies, he collected his forces as quickly as possible.

SHEFFIELD SCIENTIFIC SCHOOL

JULY, 1909

When this battle had been fought, Caesar led his forces across the Rhine and had a bridge built. When the Helvetians learned that he had done this, they sent envoys to ask for peace. On the tenth day afterwards, Caesar set out for Italy with the sixth legion. The rest of the army went into winter quarters.

SEPTEMBER, 1909

The town which the Roman general began to attack was five miles distant. On the next day he crossed the river with all his cavalry and drew up in line of battle. The soldiers threw rocks at the walls in order that the defenders might be driven away. This was done before sunset.

BRYN MAWR COLLEGE

1908.—ONE AND ONE-HALF HOURS

While Caesar was discussing the question of peace with the Germans, the latter treacherously attacked the Roman cavalry, although a truce (*indutiae*) had been agreed upon for that day. Thus our men were taken by surprise and more than eighty of them were killed. In view of this Caesar thought that he ought not to listen longer to the German envoys nor wait until their forces should be still further increased. Having decided to assault the German camp at once, he drew up his men in triple line of battle and marched the eight miles to the camp so quickly that the enemy could not decide what to do. They had not even time to seize their arms before the Romans, inflamed by the treachery of the day before, burst into the camp. The resistance of the Germans was of short duration, for most of them were thoroughly frightened and sought safety in flight.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

1907

(TIME ALLOWED—ONE HOUR)

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN (marking all long vowels):

1. Caesar sent men to Ariovistus to ask him why he had come into Gaul.
 2. Although the enemy were in Geneva, a fortified town, they could not withstand the attack of Caesar's army for three days.
 3. Having taken this town Caesar marched so rapidly that he reached Bibrax in four days.
 4. If the soldiers had persuaded Caesar not to attack Ariovistus, the Germans would have remained in Gaul.
 5. If reinforcements should come we should adopt a plan for taking the city.
 6. The men used the provisions they had brought with them, because the grain in the fields was not ripe.
 7. (a) Caesar said that the enemy were fighting bravely.
(b) Caesar said that the enemy would fight bravely.
-

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

1908

(TIME ALLOWED—ONE HOUR)

WRITE IN LATIN:

1. Caesar advised his soldiers not to cross this swamp, in order that they might not be attacked in an unfavorable position.
2. If these forces had been with us, we should not have awaited your arrival, but should have attacked you of our own accord.

3. When neither army began to cross, Caesar ordered the lieutenants to lead their men back to camp.

4. The enemy had for so long a time kept within the walls, that the Romans thought they had accepted the terms of peace.

5. The soldiers are mindful of their duty to Caesar and will not forget their former valor.

6. Since everything had to be done at one time, the general persuaded the lieutenants to come to his assistance.

VOCABULARY

- Abandon, **dēserō**, -serere, -seruī, -sertum.
- able, be able, **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**.
- about, **dē**, *prep. w. abl.*
- above, **suprā**, *prep. w. acc.*
- acceptable, **acceptus**, -a, -um.
- accomplish, **faciō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**.
- according to, *expressed by ablative of accordance.*
- (account), on account of, **propter**, *prep. w. acc.*
- accuse, **accūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- across, **trāns**, *prep. with acc.*
- (action), ready for action, **expeditus**, -a, -um.
- adopt, see "use."
- advance, (*transitive*) **prōpōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum; (*intrans.*) **prōgredior**, **prōgredī**, **prōgressus sum**.
- advance into, **subeō**, **subīre**, **subīī**, **subitum**.
- advantageous, **opportūnus**, -a, -um.
- affair, **rēs**, **rei**, F.
- afraid, be afraid, **timeō**, -ēre, **timuī**.
- after, (*prep.*) **post**, *with acc.*; (*conj.*) **postquam**.
- afterward, **posteā**, *adv.*
- against, **contrā**, *adv.*, and *prep. w. acc.*
- aggregate, **summa**, -ae, F.
- aid, (*noun*) **auxilium**, -ī, N.; **subsidium**, -ī, N.; (*verb*) **iuvō**, -āre, **iūvī**, **iūtum**; **adiuvō**, -āre, **adiūvī**, **adiūtum**.
- all, **omnis**, -e.
- allow, **patior**, **patī**, **passus sum**.
- be allowed, **licet**, **licēre**, **licuit**.
- ally, **socius**, -ī, M.
- almost, **prope**, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*
- along, **secundum**, *prep. w. acc.*
- already, **iam**, *adv.*
- also, **quoque**, **etiam**, *conjs.*; **item**, *adv.*; and also **atque**, *conj.*
- although, **cum**, *conj.*
- always, **semper**, *adv.*
- ambush, **insidiae**, -ārum, F. *pl.*
- among, **apud**, *prep. with acc.*; **in**, *prep. w. abl.*
- ancestral, **patrius**, -a, -um.
- and, **et**, **atque**, **ac**, -que, *conjs.*
- and so, **itaque**, *conj.*
- announce, **nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- another, **alius**, **alia**, **aliud**.
- appoint, **cōstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum.
- approach, (*noun*) **adventus**, -ūs, M.; (*verb*) **adpropinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- archer, **sagittārius**, -ī, M.
- arms, **arma**, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
- army, **exercitus**, -ūs, M.
- around, **circum**, *prep. w. acc.*

- arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum; per-
 moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum.
 arrange, bring about, cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
 arrive, perveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum.
 artillery, tormenta, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
 as, *ut, conj.*; *prō, prep. w. abl.*
 as . . . as possible, *quam, followed by superlative.*
 ascend, ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum.
 ascent, ascēsum, -ūs, M.
 ask, rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 ask for, petō, -ere, petivī, petitum.
 assault, oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 assemble, conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum.
 assert, carry out, adsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum.
 assist, sublevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 assume, sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūptum.
 at the foot of, *sub, prep. w. acc. or abl.*
 attack, (*noun*) impetus, -ūs, M.; (*verb*) adgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum; lacessō, -ere, lacessivī, lacessitum; oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; adior, -iri, adortus sum.
 attempt, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 authority, auctōritās, -tātis, F.; imperium, -ī, N.
 auxiliaries, auxilia, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
 avenge, ulcīscor, ulcīsci, ultus sum.
 avoid, vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 await, exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 away, turn away, āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum.
 be away, absum, abesse, āfui, āfuturus.
 Baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
 barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 bark, cortex, corticis, M.
 battering ram, ariēs, arietis, M.
 battle, proelium, -ī, N.; pugna, -ae, F.
 battle line, aciēs, aciēi, F.
 be, sum, esse, fui, futurum.
 beam, trabs, trabis, F.
 bear, carry, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus; perferō, -ferre, *etc.*
 because, *quod, conj.*
 before, (*prep.*) *prō, w. abl.*; (*adv.*) *anteā*; (*conj.*) *priusquam.*
 beg, beg for, petō, -ere, petivī, petitum.
 began, coepī, coepisse.
 begin battle, proelium committere.
 (beginning), the beginning of summer, see "summer."
 (behalf), on behalf of, *prō, prep. w. abl.*
 behind, *post, prep. w. acc.*
 best, optimus, -a, -um.
 between, *inter, prep. w. acc.*
 bid, liceor, -ērī, licitus sum.
 boldly, audācter, *adv.*
 boldness, audācia, -ae, F.
 bound, contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum.
 brave, fortis, -e.
 bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
 bravery, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

break down, *rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum; refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum.*

bridge, *pōns, pontis, M.*

bring, *comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum; cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; referō, -ferre, etc.*

bring back, *reducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum.*

bring upon, *inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.*

bring up the rear, *agmen claudere.*

brother, *frāter, frātris, M.;* for (his) brother, brotherly, *frāternus, -a, -um.*

burn, *incendō, -cendere, -cendī, cēnsūm.*

but, *autem, sed, conj.s.*

buy, *redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmp-tum.*

by, *ā, ab, prep. w. abl.*

Call, *appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

camp, *castra, -ōrum, N. pl.;* camp follower, *calō, -ōnis, M.*

can, am able, *possum, posse, potuī.*

captive, *captīvus, -ī, M.*

capture, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; potior, -īrī, potītus sum; expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

carefully, *diligenter, adv.*

carry away, *abducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum.*

case, *causa, -ae, F.*

cause, *causa, -ae, F.*

cavalry, *equitātus, -ūs, M.;* equitēs, -um, *M. pl.*

centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis, M.*

chain, *vinculum, -ī, N.*

change, *commūtātiō, -ōnis, F.*

character, *littera, -ae, F.*

check, *tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

children, *liberī, -ōrum, M. pl.;*

puerī, -ōrum, M. pl.

choose, *dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēc-tum.*

city, *urbs, urbis, F.*

client, *cliēns, clientis, M.*

cliff, *rūpēs, rūpis, F.*

close, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.*

cohort, *cohors, cohortis, F.*

collect, *cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōāctum;*

conducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-

tum; cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lā-

tum.

come, come up, *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.*

come upon, *pervenire ad.*

come out, *exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum.*

comfort, *cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*

coming, *adventus, -ūs, M.*

command, (*noun*) *imperātum, -ī, N.; imperium, -ī, N.; (verb) imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

be in command of, *praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum.*

commander, *imperātor, -ōris, M.*

common people, *plēbs, plēbis, F.; vulgus, -ī, N.*

compassion, *clēmēntia, -ae, F.*

compel, *cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōāctum.*

complain, *queror, querī, questus sum.*

complete, *perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.*

conceal, *occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

concealment, in concealment, *in occultō.*

- confusion, tumultus, -ūs, M.
 consider, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
 conspiracy, coniūratiō, -ōnis, F.
 conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 construct, perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī,
 -ductum; iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iac-
 tum; exstruō, -struere, -strūxī,
 strūctum.
 consul, cōsul, cōsulis, M.
 contempt, contemptus, -ūs, M.
 country, finēs, -ium, M. *pl.*
 courage, virtūs, -tūtis, N.
 course, iter, itineris, N.
 cover, tegimentum, -ī, N.
 covered with woods, silvestris, -e.
 critical, necessārius, -a, -um.
 cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
 crowded together, cōnfertus, -a,
 -um.
 cry, vōx, vōcis, F.
 culture, cultus, -ūs, M.
 custom, institūtum, -ī, N.; mōs,
 mōris, M.; cōnsuetūdō, -dinis, F.
 cut off, interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī,
 -clūsum.
 cut to pieces, concidō, -cidere,
 -cidī, -cīsum.
 Dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
 daughter, filia, -ae, F.
 day, diēs, diēi, M. and F.
 the day following, postridiē, *adv.*
 daybreak, prima lūx.
 death, mors, mortis, F.
 debtors, obaerātī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 deceive, dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
 -ceptum.
 defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
 defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dē-
 fēnsus; mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.
 defend, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.
 delay, (*noun*) mora, -ae, F.; (*verb*)
 moror, -ārī, morātus sum.
 demand, flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
 poscō, -ere, poposci.
 dense, dēnsus, -a, -um.
 departure, profectiō, -ōnis, F.
 deprive, dēspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 descend from, orior, orirī, ortus
 sum.
 descendant of, prōgnātus, -a, -um.
 deserve, mereor, -ērī, meritus sum.
 desire, studeō, -ēre, -uī.
 desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
 detachment, statio, -ōnis, F.
 devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 device, machinātiō, -ōnis, F.
 devotion, studium, -ī, N.
 differ, differō, differre, distulī, dī-
 lātum.
 difficult, difficilis, -e.
 difficulty, periculum, -ī, N.
 with the greatest difficulty, aeger-
 rimē; *superlative adv.*
 direct, praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī,
 -ceptum; imperō, -āre, -āvi,
 -ātum.
 direction, pars, partis, F.
 disaster, calamitās, -tātis, F.
 disclose, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 discover, comperiō, -īre, comperī,
 compertum; inveniō, -venire,
 -vēnī, -ventum.
 disloyal, sēditiosus, -a, -um.
 dismiss, dimitto, -mittere, -mīsī,
 -missum.
 disposition, animus, -ī, M.
 distant, be distant, absum, abesse,
 āfui āfutūrus.
 ditch, fossa, -ae, F.

division, *pāgus*, -ī, M.
do, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*.
double, *duplex*, *duplicis*.
draw up, *instruō*, -*struere*, -*strūxī*,
-*strūctum*.
drive, *compellō*, -ere, *compulī*,
compulsum.
drive back, *repellō*, -ere, *reppulī*,
repulsum; *reiciō*, -ere, *reiēcī*,
reiectum.
drive out, *expellō*, -ere, *expulī*, *ex-*
pulsum.

Each, each man, each thing, *quis-*
que, *quidque*.

each other, differ from each other,
inter sē differre. Give to each
other, *inter sē dare*.

eagerness, *cupiditās*, -*tātis*, F.

early, in early times, *antiquitus*,
adv.

easily, *facile*, *adv.*

easy, *facilis*, -e. Very easy, *per-*
facilis, -e.

eight, *octō*, *numeral adj.*

eighteen, *duodēvigintī*, *numeral*
adj.

elate, *tollō*, -ere, *sustulī*, *sublātum*.

embassy, *lēgatiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

encamp, *cōnsidō*, -*sīdere*, -*sēdī*,
-*sessum*.

end, *fīnis*, *fīnis*, M.

endure, *perferō*, -*ferre*, -*tulī*, -*lā-*
tum.

enemy, *hostis*, *hostis*, M. and F.

entire, *tōtus*, -a, -um.

entreaty, *prex*, *precis*, F.

envoy, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.

envy, *invidia*, -ae, F.

equal, *adaequō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

escape, *sē ēripere*.

especially well, *ēgregiē*, *adv.*

evening, *vesper*, *vesperī*, M.

every, *omnis*, -e.

excuse, *condōnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

exhausted, *cōnfectus*, -a, -um.

expectation, *opiniō*, -*ōnis*, F.

expense, *sūmptus*, -*ūs*, M.

experience, *ūsus*, -*ūs*, M.

extend, *pertineō*, -*tinēre*, -*tinuī*,
-*tentum*.

extinction, *interneciō*, -*ōnis*, F.

extraordinary, *singulāris*, -e.

Fact, *rēs*, *reī*, F.

Callen, *pres. ptep.* of *iaceō*.

familiar with, *perītus*, -a, -um.

far, *longē*, *adv.*

fasten together, *colligō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*,
-*ātum*.

father, *pater*, *patris*, M.

father-in-law, *socer*, *socerī*, M.

favor, *faveō*, -*ēre*, *fāvī*, *fautum*.

fear, (*noun*) *timor*, -*ōris*, M.;

(*verb*) *vereor*, -*ērī*, *veritus sum*;

timeō, -*ēre*, -*uī*.

few, *paucī*, -ae, -a.

fickleness, *mōbilitās*, -*tātis*, F.

field, *ager*, *agrī*, M.

fiercely, *ācriter*, *adv.*

fight, *pugnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*; *con-*
tendō, -*tendere*, -*tendī*, -*tentum*.

find, *reperiō*, -*īre*, *repperī*, *reper-*
tum.

first, *primus*, -a, -um.

at first, *primō*, *adv.*

five, *quīque*, *numeral adj.*

five hundred, *quīgentī*, -ae, -a,
numeral adj.

- flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum;
perfugiō, -ere, *etc.*; profugiō,
-ere, *etc.*
- flight, fuga, -ae, F.
- flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī.
- follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum;
subsequor, -sequī, *etc.*
- following, the day following, post-
rīdiē, *adv.*
- foot, pēs, pedis, M.; at the foot of,
sub, *prep. w. acc. or abl.*
- for, (*conj.*) nam; (*prep.*) ad, w.
acc.; in, w. acc.; (*because of*)
dē, w. abl.
- foraging, pābulātiō, -ōnis, F.
- force, vīs, vīs, F.
- forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. pl.
- fording, ford, vadum, -ī, N.
- forest, silva, -ae, F.
- forget, oblivīscor, oblivīscī, obli-
tus sum.
- form, instruō, -struere, -strūxī,
-strūctum.
- former, vetus, *gen. veteris*; an-
tiquus, -a, -um.
- fortifications, mūnitiō, -ōnis, F.
- fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum;
commūniō, -īre, *etc.*
- four, quattuor, *numeral adj.*
- fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
- freely, liberē, *adv.*
- friend, amicus, -ī, M.
- friendly, amicus, -a, -um.
- friendship, amicitia, -ae, F.
- frighten, commoveō, -movēre,
-mōvī, -mōtum.
- from, ā, ab, dē, ē, ex, *preps. w. abl.*
- from each other, inter sē.
- from all sides, undique, *adv.*
- from there, inde, *adv.*
- fugitives, fugientēs, -ium, M. and
F. pl.
- Gain possession of, potior, -īrī,
potitus sum.
- garrison, praesidium, -ī, N.
- gate, porta, -ae, F.
- gather, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
-ventum.
- give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
- give up, trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum;
dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum; per-
mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
- go, eō, īre, īvī, or īī, itum; prōcēdō,
-cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
- go forth, exeō, -īre, -īvī, or -īī,
-itum.
- grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
- grain supplies, rēs frūmentāria.
- grandfather, avus, -ī, M.
- great, magnus, -a, -um.
- guard, praesidium, -ī, N.
- guide, dux, ducis, M.
- Half way, half way up, medius, -a,
-um, *in agreement with noun.*
- hand, manus, -ūs, F.
- happen, accidō, -cidere, -cidī.
- hard pressed, be hard pressed,
passive of urgeō, -ēre, ursī.
- harm, maleficium, -ī, N.
- hasten, contendō, -tendere, -tendī,
-tentum.
- hate, ōdī, ōdisse.
- have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
- he, (*esp. in oblique cases*) is, ea, id;
hīc, haec, hoc; ille, illa, illud.
- hedge, saepēs, saepis, F.
- height, altitudō, -inis, F.
- helmet, galea, -ae, F.

- helpful, *dative of ūsus, -ūs.*
 hem in, contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
 hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 high, altus, -a, -um.
 higher, superior, -ius.
 hill, collis, collis, M.
 hinder, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; impediō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.
 hindrance, impedimentum, -i, N.
 hire, condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum.
 his, suus, -a, -um; *genitive of is, ille, hic.*
 hither, citerior, -ius.
 hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum; obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
 hold out, pandō, -ere, pandī, passum.
 home, domus, -ūs, F.
 honor, honor, honōris, M.
 hope, spēs, speī, F.
 horse, equus, -i, M.
 horseman, eques, equitis, M.
 hostage, obses, obsidis, M. and F.
 hour, hōra, -ae, F.
 however, autem, *conj.*
 how great, quantus, -a, -um.
 hundred, one hundred, centum, *numeral adj.*
 hurl, coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
 If, sī, *conj.*
 impede, impediō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.
 import, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
 importance, is of importance, interest.
 in, in, *prep. w. abl.*
 in chains, ex vinculis.
 in order that, ut, *conj.*
 increase, amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 incredible, incredibilis, -e.
 infantry, peditēs, -um, M. *pl.*
 inferior, inferior, -ius.
 inflict, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
 influence, (*noun*), auctōritās, -tātis, F.; (*verb*), addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum; commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsum.
 influential, to be more influential, plūs posse. To be very influential, plūrimum posse.
 inform, certiōrem (-ēs) facere.
 inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī.
 injury, iniūria, -ae, F.
 inspire, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
 into, in, *prep. w. acc.*
 Javelin, pilum, -i, N.; tēlum, -i, N.
 jeer, inrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum.
 journey, iter, itineris, N.
 Keep, contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum; retineō, -tinēre, *etc.*
 keep away, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
 keep apart, distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
 keep silent, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
 kill, occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
 king, rēx, rēgis, M.
 kinsmen, cōnsanguineī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

know, intellegō, -tellegere, -tellēxī, -tellēctum; cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum; sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

knowledge, scientia, -ae, F.

Lack, be lacking, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī.

lake, lacus, -ūs, M.

land, ager, agrī, M.

large, magnus, -a, -um.

large number, multitudō, -dinis, F.

last, proximē, *superlative adv.*

lavish giving, largitiō, -ōnis, F.

law, lēx, lēgis, F.

lay waste, populor, -ārī, -ātus sum; dēpopulor, -ārī, *etc.*; vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lay aside, prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.

lead through, lead across, trāducō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead against, addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead out, ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.

lead back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.

leader, dux, ducis, M.

leadership, principātus, -ūs, M.

learn, cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum; invenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

leave, leave behind, relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum; (go from) exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.

lessen, make less, remittō, -mittere -misī, -missum.

letter, litterae, -ārum, F. *pl.*

levy, cōscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.

light, levis, -e.

light armed, levis armātūrae.

like, cōnsimilis, -e.

line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, F.

little, a little, paulō, paulum, *advs.*

live, incolō, -colere, -coluī.

locate, conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

love, amor, amōris, M.

lower (nearer), citerior, -ius.

Magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, M.

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

make war on, bellum inferre.

make known, significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

man, homō, hominis, M.

many, multī, -ae, -a.

march, (*noun*) iter, itineris, N.; (*verb*) iter facere.

marsh, palūs, palūdis, F.; aestuārium, -ī, N.

meal, molita cibāria.

meet, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

memory, memoria, -ae, F.

mention, nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.

midnight, media nox.

mile, mille passūs.

military, militāris, -e.

military affairs, rēs militāris.

mind, animus, -ī, M.

month, mēnsis, mēnsis, M.

more, plūs, *comp. of* multus; amplius, *comp. adv.*

most of, plērīque, -aeque, -aque.

mound, *tumulus*, -ī, M.; agger, *aggeris*, M.

mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, M.

move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.

move forward, *prōmoveō*, -*movēre*, -*mōvī*, -*mōtum*.

multitude, *multitūdō*, -*dinis*, F.

muster-rolls, *tabulae*, -*ārum*, F. *pl.*

Nation, *gēns*, *gentis*, F.; *nātiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

nature, *nātūra*, -*ae*, F.

near, *propinquus*, -*a*, -*um*.

nearest, *proximus*, -*a*, -*um*.

nearness, *propinquitās*, -*tātis*, F.

necessary, *dative of ūsus*, -*ūs*, M.

neighboring, *fīnitimus*, -*a*, -*um*.

neighbors, neighboring people, *fīnitimī*, -*ōrum*, M. *pl.*

next, *posterus*, -*a*, -*um*.

next day, *postridiē*, *adv.*

night, *nox*, *noctis*, F.; by night, *noctū*, *adv.*

no, *nūllus*, -*a*, -*um*.

no one, *nēmō*, (*no gen.*), *dat. nēminī*.
not, *nōn*, *adv.*

not yet, *nōndum*, *adv.*

number, *numerus*, -*ī*, M.; great number, *multitūdō*, -*dinis*, F.

numerous, *crēber*, *crēbra*, *crēbrum*.

Obey, do, *faciō*, -*ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

observe, *perspiciō*, -*spicere*, -*spexī*, -*spectum*.

occupy, use, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*.

ocean, *Oceanus*, -*ī*, M.

offend, *offendō*, -*fendere*, -*fendī*, -*fēsum*.

often, *saepe*, *adv.*

old, old time, *prīstinus*, -*a*, -*um*.

old man, *senex*, *senis*, M.

old men, *maiōrēs nātū*.

on, in, *prep. w. abl. or acc.*

on one side, *ūnā ex parte*.

on account of, *propter*, *prep. w. acc.*

on this side of, *citrā*, *prep. w. acc.*

one, *ūnus*, -*a*, -*um*.

one . . . another, *expressed by forms of alius*, -*a*, -*ud*.

opinion, *existimātiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

opportunity, *facultās*, -*tātis*, F.

opposite, *adversus*, -*a*, -*um*.

order, *iubeō*, -*ēre*, *iussī*, *iussum*;

imperō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*; in

order that, *ut*; without the order,

iniussū.

osier, *vīmen*, *vīminis*, M.

other, *reliquus*, -*a*, -*um*.

ought, *dēbeō*, -*ēre*, -*uī*, -*itum*.

our, *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*.

out of, *ē*, *ex*, *prep. w. abl.*

outrage, *indignitās*, -*tātis*, F.

outside, outside of, *extrā*, *prep. w. acc.*

over, (because of) *ex*, *prep. w. abl.*

overcome, *cōficiō*, -*ficere*, -*fēcī*, -*fectum*.

overrun, *vexō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

overtake, *cōsequor*, -*sequī*, -*secū-*
tus sum.

own, one's own, *suus*, -*a*, -*um*.

Panic-stricken, *perterritus*, -*a*, -*um*.

part, *pars*, -*partis*, F.

pass, *angustiae*, -*ārum*, F. *pl.*

peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, F.

people, *populus*, -*ī*, M.

persuade, *persuadeō*, -*suādēre*, -*suāsī*, -*suāsum*.

- pierce, *trānsfigō*, -figere, -fixī, fīxum.
- pile, *acervus*, ī, M.
- pitch, *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*.
- place, (*noun*), *locus*, -ī, M. (*pl. loca*, N.); (*verb*), *conlocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positum*; *coniciō*, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
- place in command of, *praeficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
- plan, *cōnsilium*, -ī, N.
- plead, *dicō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictum*.
- pleading, *dictiō*, -ōnis, F.
- plunder, *praedor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.
- plundering, *populātiō*, -ōnis, F.
- popularity, *grātia*, -ae, F.
- position, *locus*, -ī, M. (*pl. loca*, N.)
- power, *potestās*, -tātis, F.
- powerful, the more powerful, *potentiōrēs*, -um, M. *pl.*; to be very powerful, *plūrimum valēre*; *largiter posse*.
- prepare, *comparō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- prevent, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
- price, *pretium*, -ī, N.
- private, *privātus*, -a, -um.
- promise, *polliceor*, -ērī, *pollicitus sum*.
- property, *neuter plur. of suus*, -a, -um.
- protect, *cōservō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- protection, *praesidium*, -ī, N.; *fidēs*, -eī, F.
- province, *prōvincia*, -ae, F.
- public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um.
- punish, visit with punishment, *suppliciō adficere*.
- punishment, *poena*, -ae, F.; *supplicium*, -ī, N.
- purpose, for the purpose of, *causā*, preceded by *genitive*; *ut* with *subjunctive*.
- push on, *contendō*, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.
- put, (make) *faciō*, -ere, *fecī*, *factum*.
- put on, *induō*, -ere, *induī*, *indūtum*.
- put to flight, *in fugam conicere*.
- Quickly, *celeriter*, *adv.*
- Raft, *ratis*, *ratis*, F.
- rampart, *vāllum*, -ī, N.; *agger*, *aggeris*, M.; *mūrus*, -ī, M.
- reach, *see "arrive."*
- ready, *parātus*, -a, -um.
- ready for action, *expeditus*, -a, -um.
- rear, *novissimus*, -a, -um.
- rear line, *novissimum agmen*; *novissimī*. Bring up the rear, *agmen claudere*.
- reason, *causa*, -ae, F.
- recall, *revocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
- receive, *recipiō*, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
- recent, *recēns*, *recentis*.
- records, *tabulae*, -ārum, F. *pl.*
- redoubt, *castellum*, -ī, N.
- reduce, *redigō*, *igere*, -ēgī, -āctum.
- refrain, *temperō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *abstineō*, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum; *supersedeō*, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum.
- regard, *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

- region, locus, -ī, M., (*pl. loca. -ōrum, N.*).
- regret, dolor, dolōris, M.
- remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
- remarkable, incredibilis, -e.
- remember, reminiscor, reminisci.
- remove, removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum; detraho, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum.
- renew, redintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
- reply, respondeō, -spondēre, -spondi, -spōnsum.
- report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; renūntiō, -āre, *etc.*; ēnūntiō, -āre, *etc.*
- reputation, opiniō, -ōnis, F.
- reserves, subsidia, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
- resist, resistō, -ere, restiti, restitūrus.
- resources, facultātēs, -um, F. *pl.*
- rest of, reliquus, -a, -um; the rest, reliqui, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
- restore, restitūō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum.
- restrain, contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum; coerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.
- retain, retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum.
- retreat, pedem referre; sē recipere.
- return, revertor, reverti, reversus sum; redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum.
- revolution, rēs novae.
- right, iūs, iūris, N.
- river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
- road, iter, itineris, N.
- rout, pellō, -ēre, pepuli, pulsum; prōpellō, -ere, prōpuli, prōpulsum; prōturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
- royal power, rēgnum, -ī, N.
- rumor, rūmor, rūmōris, M.
- runaway slave, fugitivus, -ī, M.
- Same, idem, eadem, idem.
- say, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum.
- scout, explorātor, -tōris, M.
- see, videō, -ēre, vidi, vīsum; perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum; cōspicio, -ere, *etc.*; cōspicor, -āri, -ātus sum.
- seem, videor, -ēri, vīsus sum.
- seize, occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
- self, himself, themselves, (*reflexive*) sui, sibi, sē or sēsē.
- senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
- send, mittō, -ere, misi, missum.
- send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum.
- send up, submittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum.
- separate, dividō, -ere, divisi, divīsum.
- serve, be, sum, esse, fui futūrus.
- set out, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; egredior, -gredi, -gressus sum.
- set up, cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum.
- seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
- several, nōn nulli, -ae, -a.
- shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
- ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
- show, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum; dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
- side, pars, partis, F. On all sides, omnibus ex partibus.

signal, *signum*, -ī, N.

silent, keep silent, *taceō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

since, *cum*, *quod*, *conjunctions*.

six, *sex*, *numeral adj.*

sixty, *sexāgintā*, *numeral adj.*

slavery, *servitūs*, -tūtis, F.

skirmish, *proelium*, -ī, N.

slight, *parvulus*, -a, -um.

slope, *vergō*, -ere.

sluggishness, *lēnitās*, -tātis, F.

small, *parvus*, -a, -um.

small stature, *brevitās corporum*.

snatch, *dētrahō*, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum.

so, *ita*, *tam*, *advs.*; and so, *itaque*, *conj.*; so large, so great, *tantus*, -a, -um; so that, *ut*, *conj.*

soldier, *miles*, *militis*, M.

some, *nōn nulli*, -ae, -a; *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*.

son, *filius*, -ī, M.

soon, promptly, *celeriter*, *adv.*

sortie, *excursiō*, -ōnis, F.; *ēruptiō*, -ōnis, F.

source, source of contempt, *dative of contemptus*, -ūs, M.

spare, *cōservō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

speak, *dicō*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum*; *verba facere*.

speed, *celeritās*, -tātis, F.

spring from, *orior*, -īri, *ortus sum*.

sprung from, *prōgnātus*, -a, -um.

stand one's ground, *subsistō*, -sis-tere, -stiti.

stand upon, *instō*, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum.

standard, *vexillum*, -ī, N.

standard bearer, *signifer*, -erī, M.

startle, *commoveō*, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum.

state, *civitās*, -tātis, F.

station, *dispōnō*, -pōnere, -posui, -positum; *conlocō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *cōstituō*, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum.

stature, *statūra*, -ae, F.

stone, *lapis*, *lapidis*, M.; *saxum*, -ī, N.

storm, take by storm, *expugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

sudden, *repentinus*, -a, -um.

suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um.

summer, *aestās*, -tātis, F.; at the beginning of summer, *initā aestāte*.

summon, *adhibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *arcessō*, -ere, -ivī, -itum.

suppliant, *supplex*, *supplicis*, M. and F.

supply, *cōpia*, -ae, F.

support, *alō*, *alere*, *alui*, *altum*.

supreme authority, *rēgnum*, -ī, M.

surpass, *praecēdō*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; *praestō*, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum.

surrender, *trādō*, -dere, -didī, -ditum; *dēdō*, -dere, -didī, -ditum; *sē dēdō*, etc.

surround, *circumveniō*, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum.

suspicion, *suspiciō*, -ōnis, F.

swamp, *palūs*, *palūdis*, F.

sword, *gladius*, -ī, M.

Take, *portō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

take to flight, *sē fugae mandāre*.

talk, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, F.

taunt, *increpitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

- tax, vectigal, vectigālis, N.
 ten, decem, *numeral adj.*
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
 territories, finēs, -ium, M. *pl.*
 than, quam, *adv.*
 that, (*demonstrative*) is, ea, id;
 (*conjunction*) ut.
 that not, nē, *conj.*
 their, *genitive plur. of is*, hīc, or
 ille; suus, -a, -um.
 then, deinde, *adv.*
 there, eō, ibi, *advs.*
 thing, rēs, rei, F.
 think, existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
 third, tertius, -a, -um.
 this, hīc, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
 thither, eō, *adv.*
 thousand, mille, *numeral adj. (pl.*
 mīlia, -ium noun).
 three, trēs, tria.
 through, per, *prep. w. acc.*
 throw, prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iec-
 tum; iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum;
 adigō, -igere, -ēgī, āctum.
 throw down, manū ēmittere.
 thus, ita, *adv.*
 ten, decem, *numeral adv.*
 till, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
 time, tempus, temporis, N.
 to, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
 together, ūnā, *adv.*
 top, the top of, summus, -a, -um *in*
 agreement with noun.
 touch, attingō, -ere, attigī, attāc-
 tum.
 toward, in, ad, sub, *preps. w. acc.*
 tower, turris, turris, F.
 town, oppidum, -ī, N.
 townsmen, townspeople, oppidānī,
 -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 transport, subvehō, -vehere, -vexī,
 -vectum.
 tribe, civitās, -tātis, F.
 tribune, tribūnus, -ī, M.
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
 true, vērus, -a, -um.
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.
 try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
 turn, convertō, -vertere, -vertī,
 -versum.
 turn away, āvertō, -vertere, -vertī,
 -versum.
 twelfth, duodecimus, -a, -um.
 twelve, duodecim, *numeral adj.*
 twenty, vīgintī, *numeral adj.*
 two, duo, duae, duo.
 Unawares, inopināns, -antis.
 under, sub, in, *preps. w. acc. or abl.*
 undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
 -ceptum.
 unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um.
 unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um.
 uniformly, aequālīter, *adv.*
 unprotected, nūdātus, -a, -um.
 unusual, ēgregius, -a, -um.
 unwilling, be unwilling, nōlē,
 nōlle, nōluī.
 upon, in, *prep. w. acc. or abl.*
 upper, superior, -ius.
 upper Gaul, Gallia ulterior, Gal-
 liae ulteriōris.
 use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.
 Valor, virtūs, -tūtis, F.
 very, often expressed by putting
 the word it modifies in the super-

lative, e. g., very brave, **fortissimus**, -a, -um.

very easy, **perfacilis**, -e.

veteran, **veterānus**, -a, -um.

victor, **victor**, -ōris, M.

view, **prōspectus**, -ūs, M.

village, **vīcus**, -ī, M.

visit with punishment, **supplicio**
adficere.

Wage, **gerō**, -ere, **gessi**, **gestum**.

wagon, **carrus**, -ī, M.

wait, wait for, **exspectō**, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

wall, **mūrus**, -ī, M.

war, **bellum**, -ī, N.; carry on war,
bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; to make
war on, **bellum inferre**.

warn, **moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

waste, lay waste, **populor**, -ārī,
-ātus sum; **vāstō**, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

watch, **vigilia**, -ae, F.

weapon, **tēlum**, -ī, N.

weave, **intexō**, -texere, -texuī, -tex-
tum.

weight, **pondus**, **ponderis**, N.

what, **quis**, **quid**; **quī**, **quae**, **quod**.

when, **cum**, *conj.*; **ubi**, *adv.*

who, which, **quī**, **quae**, **quod**.

while, **dum**, *conj.*

willing, be willing, **volō**, **velle**,
voluī.

wine, **vīnum**, -ī, N.

winter, spend the winter, **hiemō**,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum.

winter quarters, **hiberna**, -ōrum,
N. *pl.*

wish, **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**.

with, **cum**, *prep. w. abl.*

withdraw, (*intransitive*) **excēdē**,
-cēdere, -cessī, -cessum; (*transi-*
tive) **dēdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi,
-ductum.

within, **in**, *prep. w. abl.*

without, **sine**, *prep. w. abl.*

withstand, **sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī,
-tentum.

witness, **testis**, **testis**, M. and F.

woman, **mulier**, **mulieris**, F.

woods, **silva**, -ae, F.

work, **opus**, **operis**, N.

wound, (*noun*) **vulnus**, **vulneris**,
N.; (*verb*) **vulnerō**, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

written, made out, **cōfectus**, -a,
-um.

wrong, **iniūria**, -ae, F.

Year, **annus**, -ī, M.

yoke, **iugum**, -ī, N

DATE DUE

LIBRARY
ST. MARY'S UNIVERSITY
SAN ANTONIO TEXAS

ST. MARY'S UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
M PA6236 .W3 1907
Caesar's Gallic war, books I-IV



33525000799871

DISCARD

2079

PA 6236 .W3 1907
Caesar, Julius
Caesar's Gallic war,

